A FRENCH GRAMMAR FOR HIGH SCHOOLS AND COLLEGES

Roble Hall
P. O. Box

2-

A FRENCH GRAMMAR FOR HIGH SCHOOLS AND COLLEGES

RECENT BORZOI FRENCH TEXTS

CONTEMPORARY FRENCH STORIES
OF MYSTERY AND FANTASY
Edited by H. STANLEY SCHWARZ

DES HISTOIRES DRÔLES
POUR LA JEUNESSE
By MAX and ALEX FISCHER
Edited by GINO A. RATTI

MADAME CORENTINE
By RENÉ BAZIN
Edited by EDWIN B. PLACE

FRENCH ELOQUENCE
Edited by WILLIAM WALLACE WHITELOCK
AND JAMES HERBERT WILSON

A FRENCH GRAMMAR FOR HIGH SCHOOLS AND COLLEGES

OLIVER M. JOHNSTON
PROFESSOR OF ROMANIC LANGUAGES
STANFORD UNIVERSITY

AND

JEFFERSON ELMORE
PROFESSOR OF LATIN
STANFORD UNIVERSITY

NEW YORK · ALFRED A. KNOPF · MCMXXIX

COPYRIGHT 1926, BY ALFRED A. KNOPF, INC.
SET UP, ELECTROTYPED, PRINTED AND BOUND
BY THE PLIMPTON PRESS, NORWOOD, MASS.
PAPER SUPPLIED BY S. D. WARREN & CO.
BOSTON, MASS.

ALL RIGHTS RESERVED INCLUDING THE RIGHT TO REPRODUCE
THIS BOOK OR PARTS THEREOF IN ANY FORM

MANUFACTURED IN THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA

PREFACE

In the section on pronunciation we have given the sounds in the ordinary spelling before introducing the phonetic alphabet. This is done in order to avoid confronting the beginner too abruptly with the unfamiliar phonetic symbols and to give him some background for understanding and using them. The section furnishes a preliminary survey and may be worked over with profit at the outset.

We have endeavored to give systematic practice in learning the grammatical forms, especially those of the verb. This is too often a mere matter of memory. As a better way we have made use of the Drill Exercise, one purpose of which is to familiarize the learner with the mechanism of the verb forms from direct observation of the paradigms and to enable him to construct and indentify independently the corresponding forms of other words. The aim is to reinforce memory with reasoned knowledge which can be applied to new cases. This method, which is applicable to other than verb forms, is useful in rendering intelligible certain changes in irregular verbs.

For vocabulary we have employed groups of words pertaining to special topics, one of which is illustrated in the exercises of each lesson. These groups, comprising words in common use both in daily life and in literature, furnish a practical basis for reading, writing, and speaking the language. They also afford unusual opportunity for oral work, which progressive teachers rightly regard as of very great importance. The group vocabulary, with the exercises on special subjects which it makes possible, seems to us a distinct advance in method.

As to syntax, we have made special effort to state the essential usages clearly and correctly, and as simply as possible. We have devoted several lessons to the more frequent uses of the subjunctive mood in order that the learner may have the knowledge requisite for intelligent reading, not to mention writing and speaking. The subjunctive is often unduly neglected.

Instead of the conventional names of the tenses, we have adopted (with minor changes) those recommended by the Committee on Grammatical Nomenclature. The form usually called the Conditional, which has given rise to much confusion, has been taken in what seems to be its true meaning, as both a mood and a tense. Originally it was a past future, a function it has retained in dependent clauses after verbs of past time. It developed, however, a secondary usage in both independent and dependent clauses, that of denoting an imagined future situation from the standpoint of the present (as well as of the past), thus taking over an important field of the Latin subjunctive. For this modal use we retain the old name Conditional, which is not wholly inadequate, and reserve the term Past Future for the tense.

The lessons are each planned for a single recitation, but in some cases they may prove to be too long. With the varying maturity and ability of classes, it is hardly feasible to attempt a mechanical adjustment to their daily needs. We have therefore put our trust in the discretion of the teacher to use at each recitation such portions of the subject-matter as will best serve the interests of the class. It will probably be found desirable, especially with pupils of high school age, to divide the lessons on the irregular verbs, which are so arranged that a division can easily be made. The material of the book, which is purposely made plentiful, and which we hope is also not uninteresting, will be found adequate for the requirements of the first year in college or of the first two years in high school. It may not be amiss to emphasize the fact that the needs of students beginning French in college or university have been amply provided for.

Collaboration from the Latin and French points of view, respectively, has enabled us to avoid some current errors and to put several matters in a clearer light. Historical connections, which in themselves have a wealth of instruction for the teacher, can be indicated but sparingly in a book of this character.

For helpful criticisms and suggestions we are under obligation to Professor James L. Barker of the University of Utah, to Mr. John A. Sellards and Professor Frederick Anderson of Stanford University, to Professor H. Stanley Schwarz of New York University, and to Professor Henry Haxo of the University of North Dakota. We are

also indebted to Mr. Joseph Brunet for help in preparing the work for the press. Our special thanks are due to Professor Stanley A. Smith of Stanford University, who has read the entire manuscript and given us invaluable assistance. We wish also to take the opportunity of recording our indebtedness to Mr. Paul B. Thomas, of Alfred A. Knopf, Inc., from whose critical judgment we have profited greatly.

O. M. J.
J. E.

CONTENTS

PAGE

PREFACE . . . . . v–vi

Sounds and Symbols:

Quality of Vowels 1

Quantity of Vowels 8

Consonants 9

Phonetic Alphabet 11

Letters of French Alphabet 13

Syllabic Division 14

Liaison 15

Marks and Signs 16

Capitals 16

Punctuation 17

LESSON

I. Introductory: Word and Group Stress; Inflection; The Infinitive; Moods and Tenses; Regular and Irregular Verbs; Conjugations; Origin of the French Language 17

II. Present Indicative of **parler, finir, vendre.** Subject Pronouns 20

III. Imperative of **parler, finir, vendre.** Gender of Nouns. Definite and Indefinite Article 22

IV. Present Indicative and Imperative of **être** and **avoir.** Article with **à** and **de.** Nouns with **à** and **de.** Plural of Nouns . . 24

V. Possessive Adjectives. The Sentence Negative 27

VI. Interrogative Present Indicative of **être, avoir, finir. Est-ce que** Introducing Questions 29

VII. Definite Article with Inclusive Noun. Use of Article after **de** with Names of Countries. Article in Distributive Sense. Present Tense of **aller** 31

VIII. Partitives in English and French. Article Expressed. Article Omitted. *Some* and *Any* 35

IX. Number, Gender, Agreement, and Position of Adjectives . . 37

X. Demonstrative Adjective. Object Pronouns. Cardinal Numerals 41

XI. Present Perfect of **parler, finir, vendre.** Agreement of Past Participle. Uses of Present Perfect 44

LESSON PAGE

XII. Present Perfect with Auxiliary **être**. Object Pronouns of the First and Second Persons. Verbs Requiring **être** as Auxiliary. Use of **depuis** with Present to Render English Present Perfect 47

XIII. Present Indicative of Reflexive Verbs. Agreement of Past Participle. Reciprocal Sense of Reflexives. Reflexive Conjugation as Substitute for Passive Voice 50

XIV. Past Descriptive of **parler, finir, vendre.** Meaning of the Past Descriptive. Position of Object Pronouns 54

XV. Past Absolute of **parler, finir, vendre.** Sphere and Function of Past Absolute. Place *Where* 58

XVI. Forms and Uses of Infinitive. Present Tense of **faire.** **Faire** with Infinitive 61

XVII. **Y** and **en.** As Adverbs. As Pronouns. Indefinite Subject **on** 65

XVIII. Disjunctive Personal Pronouns. **Soi** and Other Reflexives of Third Person 68

XIX. Future Indicative of **parler, finir, vendre.** Uses of Future Tense. **Aller** with Infinitive. **Par** and **à** in Distributive Time Phrases. Present Tense of **vouloir** and of **lire** 72

XX. Comparison of Adjectives. **De** after **plus** and **moins.** Disjunctive Pronouns with Verb Understood 76

XXI. Relative Pronouns 80

XXII. Demonstrative Pronouns **ce, ceci,** and **cela.** Uses of **même.** Present Indicative of **écrire** and of **dire** 84

XXIII. Interrogative Pronouns. Days of the Week 89

XXIV. Interrogative Phrases. Dating. Names of the Months . . . 93

XXV. The Conditional. Demonstrative Pronoun **celui.** Indefinite Pronouns **personne** and **rien.** Past Future 97

XXVI. Vocabulary. Exercises 101

XXVII. Indefinite Pronouns. Indefinite Pronominal Adjectives. Present Participle. Gerund. Participial Nouns and Adjectives . . 103

XXVIII. Vocabulary. Exercises 107

XXIX. Possessive Pronouns. Possessives as Nouns 109

XXX. Present Subjunctive of **parler, finir, vendre.** Range and Character of the Subjunctive. Independent and Dependent Subjunctive of Will and Wish 113

XXXI. Conditional Sentences 118

XXXII. Past Subjunctive of **parler, finir, vendre.** Purpose Clauses. Clauses of Result 122

LESSON PAGE

XXXIII. Present Subjunctive of **avoir** and **être**. Subjunctive after Verbs of Fearing. After other Verbs of Emotion. After Verbs of Approval and Disapproval 128

XXXIV. Past Subjunctive of **avoir** and **être**. Subjunctive in Relative Clauses. Characterizing Subjunctive 132

XXXV. Impersonal Verbs. So-called Impersonals. Subjunctive in Time Clauses 136

XXXVI. Irregular Verbs in General: Infinitive Endings; Variations in Form; Changes in Stems; Principal Parts; Synopsis . . . 139

XXXVII. Irregular Verbs **aller, asseoir.** Compound Tenses. Position of Adverbs 142

XXXVIII. Irregular Verbs **devoir, pouvoir, vouloir.** Use with Infinitives. How Time of Day is Expressed. Past Conditional 147

XXXIX. Irregular Verbs **savoir, valoir, voir.** Past Infinitive. Past Active Participle. Uses of **devoir** 153

XL. Irregular Verbs **acquérir** and **ouvrir.** Passive Voice. Agent with Passive Verbs. Use of **par** and **de** with Agent 158

XLI. Irregular Verb **tenir.** Cardinal Numerals 163

XLII. Irregular Verbs **conduire, écrire, plaire.** Ordinal Numerals . 169

XLIII. Irregular Verbs **boire, dire, faire.** **Faire** with Infinitive. Numerals in Dates and Titles 174

XLIV. Irregular Verbs **connaître, coudre, vivre.** Subjunctive after **douter** and **il se peut.** Subjunctive in Implied Doubt or Possibility 179

XLV. Irregular Verbs **craindre, mettre, vaincre.** Use of **oui** and **si.** **Non** as Negative. English *how* in French 185

XLVI. Adverbs: Position; Form; With Suffix **-ment**; Special Forms; Meaning 189

APPENDIX 195

Conjugation of **parler, finir, vendre** 195

Conjugation of **avoir, être** 202

Orthographic Peculiarities of Certain Verbs 207

Synopsis of Irregular and Defective Verbs 210

French–English Vocabulary 241

English–French Vocabulary 263

INDEX 283

FRENCH GRAMMAR FOR HIGH SCHOOLS AND COLLEGES

PRONUNCIATION

Sounds and Symbols

1. French pronunciation differs in manner from English in being more distinct and precise. To the beginner it seems also more rapid, until he makes progress in understanding the spoken language. In French words the sounds are sharply defined, and follow each other in quick and abrupt transition. To produce sounds having this character and related in this way, the vocal apparatus as a whole — jaw, tongue, lips, etc. — must be used much more energetically than in English.

2. In order to pronounce French correctly the learner must practice the sounds individually, in combination, and in transition from one to another. Some of these are similar, though not precisely equivalent, to English sounds, and others do not occur in English. In general, the sounds of a language are peculiar to it and give it a special character.

3. In the spoken language, sounds are recognized by being heard; but in reading and writing, they are represented by letters of the alphabet. The French alphabet is the same as the English except that it has the compound letter **œ** and that the letters **k** and **w** occur only in words borrowed from other languages.

4. Letters are signs which recall certain sounds to the mind. They may not be the same in number as the sounds to be represented, so that a single letter, as English **o** in *not* and *note*, may stand for more than one sound. This is the case in French, some letters, as in English, having more than one sound. The French sounds are treated in the following paragraphs, being arranged alphabetically for the sake of convenient reference.

Quality of Vowels

5. The French vowels, which are denoted in ordinary spelling by the letters **a, e, i, o, u,** and **y,** may also occur in groups, as in **autre,**

peur, roi. When a vowel is uttered, the tongue, lips, and other speech organs assume (and retain during the utterance) a certain position, which the beginner should become acquainted with and learn to reproduce. As a preliminary exercise it will be useful to practice familiar English sounds, as *a* in *hat* and *e* in *met*, and observe what takes place when they are uttered.

6. a. The letter **a** has two sounds. (For nasal **a**, see **24.**)

Medial **a**. The tongue remains practically flat, the middle being slightly raised with the tip touching the lower teeth. The mouth is opened wide, and the corners of the lips are slightly retracted. This vowel should not be confused with English *a* in *cat*, the tongue for the latter being higher and more forward: **page, sage, rage, la, déjà, animal, donna.**

Velar **a**. This sound is similar to *a* in *far* and *father*. The mouth is opened wide, the tongue being slightly drawn back and the lips a little rounded: **passion, nation, pas, blason, gaz.**

Circumflexed **â**, except in verbal endings, is velar: **mâtin, châsse, mât, pâte.** In verbal endings it is medial: **donnâmes, donnâtes.**

7. e. The letter **e** has three sounds. (For nasal **e**, see **25, 26.**)

1. Open **e**. When long, this sound is similar to *ai* in *pair*, or *ea* in *bear*, *tear*. When short (see **37**), it resembles *e* in *pet*, *bet*. In open **e**, the jaw angle is greater, and the lip tension is less than for close **e**. The blade of the tongue is also a little lower: **fête, bête, forêt, amère, fidèle, terre, bel, avec.** (In these examples the final **e** is not pronounced.)

Note. In the formation of a close vowel, the tongue is raised higher than for the corresponding open vowel. The distance between the tongue and the palate or roof of the mouth is thus not so great for a close vowel as for an open one. The distinction between open and close vowels is of much importance in French pronunciation and should be carefully observed by the student.

Grave **è** is open. Circumflexed **ê** is also open.

2. Close **e**. This sound is similar to *a* in *mate*, *fate*, except that the English vowel tends to end in an **i**-glide, while French **e** is pronounced more tensely and without glide. In the production of close **e** the angle between the jaws is smaller and the tongue is higher than for open **e**, and the corners of the lips are drawn back: **thé, été, blé, nez, assez, donner.** Acute **é** is usually close.

NOTE. With respect to glides, single vowels in English are more or less diphthongized, the articulative effort being continuous and the position of the vocal organs gradually shifted. In French a vowel is taken definitely, held for a certain length of time without change in the position of the vocal organs, after which a quick transition is made to the following sound.

3. Neutral **e**. This sound is similar to unaccented *e* in English, as in *the boy, the man,* or to the final vowel in words like *Anna, sofa,* with the exception of the fact that the lips are rounded for the French sound.

Neutral **e** is always unstressed. In general, it is pronounced:

a. In monosyllables containing only one vowel: **me, te, le, se, de, ne.**

NOTE. When forms like **me, le, de, ne** are closely connected with other words, the **e** is frequently silent: **pas d(e) sonnette; je l(e) dis.**

b. In a group of three consonant sounds: **parlerai, autrement, tremblement.** Forms like **donneriez, donnerions, chapelier,** come under this rule, since **i** in such cases has the value of English *y*.

c. In an initial syllable when followed by a single consonant sound or by a consonant + **r** or **l**: **debout, mener, tenir, cela, repris, reclus, reflet, redresser.**

Neutral **e** is silent:

a. When it follows the accented vowel: **chose, bonne, donne, donnes, donnent.**

NOTE. In cases such as **peuple sauvage,** the final **e** of **peuple** is sounded. In phrases like this, the **e** occurs in a group of three consonants (see *b* above).

b. In general, when it occurs in a group of two consonants: **amusement, sapement, sauvetage.**

8. i. The sound of French **i** is close and resembles that of *i* in *machine, ravine, marine; ea* in *treat, seat, repeat; ee* in *keep, sleep, deep.* The mouth is almost closed, the tip of the tongue touching the lower teeth; the corners of the lips are drawn back, forming a long narrow opening. English open *i,* as in *wit, bit,* does not occur in French: **dire, rire, cire, île, épître, haïr, naïf.**

9. o. The letter **o** has two sounds. (For nasal **o,** see **27.**)

1. Open **o.** For this sound, there is no exact English equivalent. The back of the tongue is raised and the lips are more rounded than for velar **a**: **or, fort, école, noce, poste, donner, corder, bord.** Open *o* is usually open in the following cases:

a. When unaccented: **moment, objet, occuper, obliger.**

b. When accented and followed by a pronounced consonant: **cor, forte, porte, parole, robe.**

2. Close **o.** This sound is like that of English *o* in *note, wrote, vote,* except that the English *o* tends to end in a **u**-glide, (*noute*), (*wroute*), (*voute*), which should be carefully avoided. In the French sound, the tongue is drawn back and raised higher than for open **o.** The lips are also more rounded: **écho, zéro, mot, sot, gros, dévot, ôter, vôtre.**

Circumflexed **ô** is usually close: **côté, hôte, diplôme, tôt.**

10. u. This sound has no English equivalent. It is produced by rounding the lips as for English long *u* in *rude, rule, super,* while the tongue and jaws have the same position as for French **i**: **sur, mur, pur, reçu, plus, tulipe, dur.**

11. y. When used as a vowel, **y** has the same sound as **i** (see **8** above): **style, lycée, cycle, cycliste, cynique.** For **y** as a semi-consonant, compare **31.**

12. The following words for practice illustrate the sounds of the foregoing vowels.

1. Medial **a. Bague, vague, cave, page, sage, animal, dame, lac, la, papa, chat, sale, à, ma, sa, ta, rat, patte, là, ça, façade, malade, mal, pal, par, parade, parc, malle, bal, balle, car.**

2. Velar **a. Âge, pâte, mâle, pâle, pas, âme, mât, cas, bas, basse, grasse, classe, tasse, grâce, âpre, bât, câble, lasse, cassé, gras, repas, vase, base, âcre.**

3. Open **e. Tel, bref, bec, met, fer, vert, sec, paquet, sommet.**

4. Open **e** = **è. Lève, mène, chère, mère, père, trève, crème, fidèle, amère, père, espère, frère.**

5. Open **e** = **ê. Fête, bête, tête, forêt, fenêtre, être, même, blême, crêpe, crête, frêle, frêne, gêne, grêle.**

6. Close **e. Blé, été, céder, vérité, nez, assez, parler, avez, thé, pré, donné, aimé, bonté, répété, rez, gré, clef, donner, léger, casser, donnez, passez, trouver, causer.**

7. Neutral **e. Je, me, te, se, de, le, ce, ne, cela, fera, sera, retard, retour, secours, velours, venir, venu, tenir, tenu.**

8. **i. Fini, ici, rire, vive, pipe, midi, pris, dit, lime, si, finir, rive, mine, dîner, mil, mie, cri, pli, nid, lit, bride, bise.**

9. Open **o. Cor, encore, bord, corps, fort, porte, parole, école, notre, votre, robe, noble, comme, donne, col, fol, bonne, porter,**

homme, or, pomme, étoffe, brosse, donner, folle, opiner, opter, oral, sort, port, poli, alors.

10. Close **o**. **Mot, sot, pot, gros, nos, vos, zéro, tôt, trône, côte, hôte, tome, rose, glose, zone, clos, héros, dos, trot, dévot, pôle, prose, oser, alto, clos, dépôt, prévôt.**

11. **u. Mûr, sûr, sur, mur, plume, plus, allumer, azur, nul, brume, cru, rude, truffe, sucre, tulipe, tribune, cuve, dur, musique, murmurer.**

12. **y. Style, styler, stylet, styliste, syllabe, syllabus, type, système, gymnase, crypte, cynique, cyprès.**

13. French vowels are also denoted by groups of letters representing a single sound, as indicated below.

14. ai. In verb endings, when graphically final, and in a few isolated words, **ai** equals close **e**: **donnai, j'ai, sais, sait, gai, quai, geai.** In the different forms of the verb **faire** and those derived from it, unaccented **ai** is usually pronounced as neutral **e**: **faisant, faisais, faisable, faiseur.** In most other cases, it is pronounced as open **e**: **palais, paix, taire, plaire.**

15. ay. Pronounced usually as open **e**: **Bellay, Épernay, Launay.** When **y** is followed by another vowel it is equivalent to two i's, as in **payer** (= **paiier**), **essayer** (= **essaiier**).[1]

16. au. Pronounced usually as close **o**: **haut, hauteur, autre, faut.** Before **r, au** equals open **o**: **maure, taure, laurier, saure.**

17. eau. Pronounced as close **o**: **beau, chapeau, trousseau, oiseau.**

18. ei. Pronounced as open **e**: **neige, reine, peine, baleine, seigle, haleine.**

19. ey. Pronounced usually as open **e**: **Ney, jockey, trolley, Leyde.** **Y** is here also equivalent to two i's when followed by a pronounced vowel, as in **asseyez** (= **asseiiez**) and **grasseyer** (= **grasseiier**).

20. eu. This group has two sounds.

1. Close **eu.** The tongue and jaws are in the position for close **e** and the lips rounded for close **o**: **mieux, peu, feu, meute, nœud.**

2. Open **eu.** The tongue and jaws are in the position for open **e** and the lips rounded as for open **o**: **heure, peur, sœur, seul, feuille, peuple, fleuve, neuf.**

21. ou. This sound is similar to English *u* in *ruby, rue, rule,* to *oo* in *boot, root,* and to *o* in *do,* but the lips are rounded much more

[1] The second **i** has the sound of English **y** (see **31**).

energetically than in the English sound. The back of the tongue is raised higher than for close **o** and the lips more rounded: **tout, bout, jour, boule, boue, goût.**

22. The following words for practice illustrate the foregoing groups of vowels.

1. **ai** = close **e**. **J'ai, je donnai, je porterai, je donnerai, je trouvai, je trouverai, j'allai, j'irai, je sais, tu sais, gai, quai.**

ai = open **e**. **Paix, palais, faire, maître, laide, donnais, aimer, air, balai, je trouverais, mais, craie, plaire, taire, graine, graisse, frais, fraise, caisse, avait, affaire.**

2. **ai** = neutral **e**. **Faisant, faisions, faisons, faiseur, faiseuse, malfaisant, malfaisance, faisable.**

3. **ay** at end of word = open **e**; between two vowels **y** = **ii** (**ai** being pronounced as open **e** and **i** as English *y*). **Bellay, Épernay, payer, essayer, essayeur, balayer, balayette, balayeur, layer, layette, payeur, rayer, rayeur, rayèrent.**

4. **au** = close **o**. **Autre, il vaut, il faut, paume, épaule, aube, vautour, étau, défaut, faute, saule, sauf, saulaie, saut, saute, sauter, sauver.**

5. **eau** = close **o**. **Beau, beaucoup, beau-frère, beauté, peau, épeautre, seau, taureau, tonneau, berceau, bateau, bedeau, cabaneau, casseau, cordeau.**

6. **ei** = open **e**. **Peine, peiner, pleine, reine, reinette, seigle, seine, seize, treize, veine, veiner.**

7. **ey** at the end of word or before consonant = open **e**; between vowels **y** = **ii** (**ei** being pronounced as open **e** and **i** as English *y*). **Grasseyer, grasseyeuse, asseyez, seyant, Ney, Leyde.**

8. Close **eu**. **Feu, peu, gueux, œufs, meute, feutre, pleutre, veut, peut, ceux, queue, neutre, creuser, creuse, deux, bleu, bleuet.**

9. Open **eu**. **Seul, peur, heure, neuf, beurre, peuple, meuble, cœur, sœur, bœuf, veuve, épreuve, fleur, ardeur, hauteur, leur, honneur, peuvent, œuvre, aveugle.**

10. **ou**. **Tout, pour, tous, amour, louve, goût, nous, vous, trouver, loup, lourd, tournée, tourner, coup, coucou, coude, coudée, coudre, couler, cour, courbe, courir, court, couvrir, couvert.**

23. Vowels are nasalized in pronunciation by lowering the soft palate and allowing part of the air to pass through the nose and part through the mouth. Nasalized vowels occur before final **m** or **n**, or

m or **n** followed by one or more consonants. Except in a few special cases, vowels followed by **mm** or **nn** are not nasalized.

24. Nasal velar **a**. This is velar **a** produced under the special conditions of nasalization indicated above: **blanc, banc, gant, galant, quand, tant.** This sound is also indicated by **em** and **en**, which become confused with **am** and **an**, and do not represent nasalization of **e**: **cent, temps, en, prend, tente, dent.**

25. Nasal **e**. The soft palate is lowered and part of the air passed through the nose as in all nasalization. The tongue is also lower and the mouth wider open than is the case for the simple open **e**. This is the nasalized form of a sound between open **e** and medial **a**: **examen, Vendéen, Européen.**

26. The nasal **e** sound is also represented by the spellings **in, yn, im,** and **ym**: **brin, chemin, gamin, médecin, pin, vin, syntaxe.**

NOTE. The combinations **ai, ei**, when nasalized, have the same sound as nasal **e**: **faim, main, pain, plein, sein.**

27. Nasal **o**. This is the nasalized form of a sound between open and close **o**.

NOTE. To illustrate the difference in quality between open **o** and nasalized **o**, compare **bonne** and **bon, sonne** and **son.**

28. Nasal open **eu**. This sound can be learned by pronouncing nasal **e** (as in **25**) with the lips rounded and protruded. It is represented in ordinary spelling by **un, um,** and **eun**: **un, brun, chacun, parfum, jeun, lundi, emprunt.**

29. *Read the following words aloud, with special attention to the nasal sounds.*

Banc, gant, galant, tant, quand, tante, blanc, sang, grande, an, plante, rampe, camper, camp, vendre, vent, cent, enfant, en, dent, temps, temple, tempête, son, fond, conte, monte, ronde, nom, ton, son, compte, rompre, comble, bon, pont, long, brun, un, lundi, emprunter, emprunteuse, main, fin, pin, vin, simple, limpide, immense, syntaxe, nymphe, bain, mainte, faim, plein, sein.

Semi-consonants

30. In the so-called French diphthongs, the second element bears the stress, while the first vowel, being unaccented, becomes a semi-consonant.

31. i. When the letter **i** is unaccented and stands immediately before a vowel that is pronounced, it has two sounds.

1. Ordinarily, it has the sound of English *y* in *yet, yes:* **pied, piano, hier, mieux, miel, miette.**

2. After **b, c, d, f, g, p, t, v,** plus **l** or **r,** it is pronounced **i: sembliez, crier, client, friand, grianneau, prier, plier, quatrième, février, madrier.**

32. oi. The so-called diphthong **oi** has the sound of *wa,* the **a** being velar in some cases and medial in others: **poisson, soir, moi, roi, trois, bois, fois.**

33. ou. When unaccented and followed by a vowel, **ou** has two sounds:

1. The sound of English **w,** as in **douane, fouace, oui, babouin.**

2. After **b, c, d, f, p, t,** followed by **l** or **r,** it has a sound similar to that of English *u* in *rude, rule:* **brouette, clouer, flouer, prouesse, trouer.**

34. u. To pronounce **u** before another vowel the tongue and teeth are in the same position as for **u,** but the opening between the lips is smaller: **fruit, lui, nuit, muet, bruit, suis.**

35. y. When initial and coming before a vowel, **y** is like English **y: yeux, yole, yeuse, yacht.**

36. *Pronounce the following words aloud, identifying the semiconsonants.*

Piano, pied, lier, hier, dieu, lieu, violon, reliure, prier, ouvrier, sanglier, pion, fier, yeux, soulier, roi, moi, toi, noir, étoile, foi, bois, oui, douane, fouace, évanouir, clouer, brouette, prouesse, lui, nuit, suis, puis, fruit, yole, yeuse.

Quantity of Vowels

37. Vowels have both quality and quantity. Quality relates to the character of the sound, as in open and close vowels. This difference of quality has been illustrated in preceding sections. Vowels also have quantity, which relates to the time taken in pronunciation. They are long, half-long, and short, but it will be sufficient to recognize the two quantities, long and short. The former may be indicated by the sign ː placed after the long vowel.

1. Accented vowels are long before **v** (**caːve**), **g** when pronounced like *s* in *measure* (**rouːge**), **z** when sounded (**treiːze**), **il** with a sound

similar to English *y* (**conse:il**), and phonetically final **r** (**fe:r**). Observe that **a, o, au, eu,** may be long also before other consonants: **mira:cle, espa:ce, to:me, zo:ne, au:ne, meu:le.**

2 Accented nasal vowels are long before a consonant which is sounded: **ente:ndre, ve:ndre, gra:nde.**

3. Accented vowels, if circumflexed, are usually long when followed by a consonant which is sounded: **â:me, â:ge.**

4. Unaccented vowels are generally short: **concentrer, concorde.**

5. Final vowel sounds, whether directly final or followed by a silent consonant, are short: **enfant, la, fini, coup, fin.**

Consonants

38. Most final consonants are silent, as in **pied, bras.** Final **f, c, l,** are generally pronounced, as in **vif, sec, avec, tel, mortel.** Final **r** is also sounded as a rule, except in verbs of the first conjugation and in the termination **ier** in words of more than one syllable: **donner, altier.**

39. b is similar to *b* in *bid, bird:* **bref, bon, banc, bal.**

40. c equals *k* in *keep* before **a, o, u;** also when final, and before all consonants except **h:** **car, corps, bac, lac, crédit, crapaud.**

C equals *s* in *seem* before **e, i, y:** **ciel, cet, céder, cent, cire, cygne.**

Ch equals *sh* in *shall:* **chose, chambre, chapeau.**

In **chr, chl,** and a few other cases, **ch** equals **k:** **chronique, chlore.**

41. d. The tip of the tongue is farther forward than for **d** in *do:* **docteur, divin, dire.**

42. f equals *f* in *fine:* **fatigue, farine, former, formel.**

43. g. The sound of **g** is similar to that of *g* in *go* when it occurs before **a, o, u,** or before consonants: **gant, garde, gond, gomme, grand, glace.** Before **e, i, y,** it approximates the sound of *s* in *measure, pleasure:* **gilet, geste, gymnase.** Compare the sound of **j** in section **45.**

44. h. French **h** is either mute or aspirate. In standard French where this letter is almost always silent, the terms mute and aspirate are misleading. The distinction between them at present is that linking (see **70**), and elision (see **74**), cannot take place before the so-called aspirate **h**:[1] **l'homme, l'habitude, l'habit;** but, **la hache, la harpe, le hasard.**

[1] Aspirate *h* is indicated in the vocabularies by *'h* (**'hache, 'harpe, 'hasard**).

45. **j.** The sound of **j** is similar to that of *s* in *pleasure*: **jour, jeu, jeudi, joujou.**

46. **k** is similar to *k* in *kind* or *c* in *come:* **kilo, képi, kilomètre.**

47. **l.** Not exactly equivalent to English **l.** The tip of the tongue is pressed against the upper teeth, while the back of the tongue is lowered: **malle, sel, selle, bal, belle.** The main difference between the English and the French l is in the movement of the tongue. In French it is sudden and produces a curve of considerable amplitude, while in English it is slow and gradual, producing a curve of slight amplitude. Practice first the sound of initial l in words like **le, leçon, lettre, lent, légume,** and then without changing the position of the tongue, pronounce final l in **tel, fil, sel, bal, col.**

48. **il, ill.** This l is called palatal l or l *mouillée.* These terms are misleading since the l is no longer pronounced. The sound of **ill, il,** is like that of *y* in *yes, your:* **conseil, conseiller, travail, travailler.**

Note that in certain words **ill** and **il** are pronounced **il: ville, village, tranquille, avril.**

49. **m** equals *m* in *mother:* **mon, main, mur.**

50. Dental **n.** In the formation of this sound, the tip of the tongue is placed against the upper teeth, while in English **n** it is against the gums: **nom, nord, nos, noir.**

Palatal **n.** The tip of the tongue is against the back of the lower front teeth and the blade against the middle of the hard palate. The sound is usually represented by **gn: ligne, digne, signe, agneau, montagne.**

51. **p** is similar to *p* in *pet:* **père, porte.** **ph = f: phare.**

52. **q** and **qu** equal *k* in *kite* or *c* in *can.* **Q** is followed by **u** except when final: **que, coq, cinq, quand, chronique.**

53. **r.** French **r** has two sounds, lingual and uvular, either of which may be used. In lingual **r,** the tip of the tongue vibrates against the upper teeth. In uvular **r,** the uvula vibrates against the back of the tongue: **rare, gare, rat, rapporter, parler, paraître, être, prendre, rapprocher.**

54. **s.** The letter **s** has two sounds. It is like *s* in *see* when initial and before or after consonants: **son, sœur, passion, espérer, esquisse.** It is like *s* in *nose, pose, prose,* when between vowels: **rose, poser, oser, base, épouser.**

55. **t.** In this sound the tip of the tongue is against the upper teeth,

whereas in English **t** the tongue rests against the gums: **tante, trente, tout, tour, trois.** **Th** (as in **thé**) has the same sound.

56. **v** equals *v* in *vine*. **Vif, voir, vous.**

57. **w** occurs only in words borrowed from other languages. It has the sound of **v** as in **wagon-lit** and also the sound of **w** as in **tramway, waterproof.** In the latter sound the lips are more rounded than in the English **w.**

58. **x.** This letter has four sounds, indicated as follows:

x = *ks:*	**luxe, lexique, boxe**
x = *s:*	**soixante, Bruxelles**
x = *z:*	**deuxième, dixième**
x = *gz:*	**examen, exister, Xénophon**

59. **z** equals **z** in **zéro, zone, zoologie.**

60. *Pronounce aloud the following words with special attention to consonants.*

Bateau, bon, battre, cadet, car, café, cent, ciel, ce, chambre, chose, chat, cheval, clair, classe, cuvée, dame, date, datif, de, dire, force, fort, franc, gant, garçon, goût, gêne, gilet, gîte, gland, gorge, habit, habitant, halle, haricot, homme, jamais, jardin, jambe, jouer, jouir, juste, labour, laine, lit, loi, main, maintenant, mâle, manger, navette, neuf, neige, pain, palais, pair, pleuvoir, quel, queue, quinze, rat, racine, parler, rue, sac, sablon, oser, chose, rose, tant, tante, temps, nation, patience, vendre, yeux, zéro, zoologie, signe, agneau, trouver, luxe, deuxième, examen, exister.

Phonetic Alphabet

61. The symbols of French sounds so far considered are the twenty-six letters of the alphabet, but owing to the fact that some letters have more than one sound, and others are silent, the ordinary spelling does not always indicate the correct pronunciation. This has led to the device of a phonetic alphabet, which has a letter for each of the sounds of the French language, and which, when used in the spelling of a word, shows the correct pronunciation. The learner who masters the phonetic symbols has only to look at a word spelled in this way to know how it should be pronounced.

62. The phonetic alphabet, with the sounds which the characters respectively represent, is as follows:

Vowels

a	= medial **a** in **page, la** [paɪʒ, la]	see **6**
ɑ	= velar **a** in **âme, âge** [ɑɪm, ɑɪʒ]	see **6**
ɑ̃	= nasal velar **a** in **tante, trente** [tɑ̃ɪt, trɑ̃ɪt]	see **24**
ɛ	= open **e** in **père, bête** [pɛɪr, bɛɪt]	see **7, 18**
ɛ̃	= nasal **e** in **bien** [bjɛ̃], **sien** [sjɛ̃]	see **25, 26**
e	= close **e** in **thé, assez** [te, ase]	see **7, 2**
ə	= neutral **e** in **le, me** [lə, mə]	see **7, 3**
i	= close **i** in **dire, rire** [diːr, riːr]	see **8**
ɔ	= open **o** in **fort, donner** [fɔɪr, dɔne]	see **9, 1**
ɔ̃	= nasal **o** in **pont, rond** [pɔ̃, rɔ̃]	see **27**
o	= close **o** in **ôter, mot** [ote, mo]	see **9, 2; 16, 17**
y	= **u** in **mur, plus** [myɪr, ply]	see **10**
ø	= close **eu** in **peu, feu** [pø, fø]	see **20, 1**
œ	= open **eu** in **peur, heure** [pœɪr, œɪr]	see **20, 2**
œ̃	= nasal **eu** in **un, brun** [œ̃, brœ̃]	see **28**
u	= **ou** in **tout, jour** [tu, ʒuɪr]	see **21**

Semi-consonants

j	= **i** in **pied** or **y** in **yeux** [pje, jø]	see **31, 1**
w	= **ou** in **oui** [wi]	see **32, 33, 1**
ɥ	= **u** in **nuit, lui** [ɥi, lɥi]	see **34**

Consonants

b	= **b** in **bon, bal** [bɔ̃, bal]	see **39**
d	= **d** in **donner, dire** [dɔne, diːr]	see **41**
f	= **f** in **farine, fenêtre** [farin, fənɛɪtr]	see **42**
g	= **g** in **gant, grand** [gɑ̃, grɑ̃]	see **43**
k	= **c** in **comme** [kɔm], or in English *can*	see **40, 46**
l	= **l** in **malle, belle** [mal, bɛl]	see **47**
m	= **m** in **mon, mot** [mɔ̃, mo]	see **49**
n	= **n** in **nom, non** [nɔ̃, nɔ̃]	see **50**
ɲ	= **gn** in **signe, ligne** [siɲ, liɲ]	see **50**
p	= **p** in **pont, prendre** [pɔ̃, prɑ̃ɪdr]	see **51**
r	= **r** in **rendre, prendre** [rɑ̃ɪdr, prɑ̃ɪdr]	see **53**
s	= **s** in **son, six** [sɔ̃, sis]	see **54**

ʃ = **ch** in **chose, chapeau** [ʃoːz, ʃapo] see **40**
t = **t** in **ton, tante** [tɔ̃, tɑ̃ːt] see **55**
v = **v** in **vin** [vɛ̃], or English *virtue* see **56**
z = **z** in **zéro** [zero], or in English *zealous* see **59**
ʒ = **j** in **jardin, je,** or **g** in **gibier** [ʒardɛ̃, ʒə, ʒibje] see **45**

63. In phonetic spelling the names of the French alphabet are as follows:

Letters	French Names	Pronunciation of Names	Letters	French Names	Pronunciation of Names
a	*a*	[ɑ]	**n**	*enne*	[ɛn]
b	*bé*	[be]	**o**	*o*	[o]
c	*cé*	[se]	**p**	*pé*	[pe]
d	*dé*	[de]	**q**	*ku*	[ky]
e	*e*	[e]	**r**	*erre*	[ɛːr]
f	*effe*	[ɛf]	**s**	*esse*	[ɛs]
g	*gé*	[ʒe]	**t**	*té*	[te]
h	*ache*	[aʃ]	**u**	*u*	[y]
i	*i*	[i]	**v**	*vé*	[ve]
j	*ji*	[ʒi]	**w**	*double vé*	[dublə ve]
k	*ka*	[kɑ]	**x**	*iks*	[iks]
l	*elle*	[ɛl]	**y**	*i grec*	[i grɛk]
m	*emme*	[ɛm]	**z**	*zède*	[zɛd]

64. The words below are given in both ordinary and phonetic spelling. Analyse them into component sounds (e.g., **avancer** [avɑ̃se] medial a + v + nasal velar a + c (= s) + close e).

Terre [tɛːr], **bord** [bɔːr], **neuve** [nœːv], **heureuse** [œrøːz], **soleil** [sɔlɛːj], **battre** [batr], **bâtiment** [bɑtimɑ̃], **bateau** [bato], **bijoux** [biʒu], **pied** [pje], **prier** [prie], **procès** [prɔsɛ], **priser** [prize], **nation** [nɑsjɔ̃], **naître** [nɛːtr], **nager** [naʒe], **nerveux** [nɛrvø], **noir** [nwaːr], **niveau** [nivo], **noix** [nwɑ], **neige** [nɛːʒ], **main** [mɛ̃], **maison** [mezɔ̃], **maître** [mɛːtr], **maintenir** [mɛ̃tniːr].

65. Pronounce the following phonetically spelled words: rəkœːj, grənuːj, prəmje, vu, istwaːr, sɔlɛːj, pɛːr, mɛːr, frɛːr, famiːj, ʒødi, aprɛ, ʒuːr, pɔm, sœl, pœːr, fœːj, ekɔl, arbr, rɛːn, boku, ruːʒ, rulo, fø, lɛtr, matɛ̃, fam, garsɔ̃, pɛ̃, dɑ̃, dəmɛ̃, mwɛ̃, amerik, ardamɑ̃, pur, kɔ̃ːbl, pje, pwasɔ̃, swaːr, bjɛ̃, pwaːr, lwɛ̃, pjano, mɛːtr, liːvr, dyre, nɔ̃, mɔ̃, tɑ̃ːt, ləsɔ̃.

66. Write the words in the preceding section in ordinary spelling.

Syllabic Division

67. Inasmuch as the syllables of French words, (excepting those containing neutral **e**), are clearly marked in pronunciation, it is important to understand the rules for syllabic division. These are chiefly as follows:

1. Two contiguous independent vowels form two syllables: **na-ïf, né-ant.**

2. A single consonant, other than **x**, belongs to the second vowel: **pou-voir, bâ-tir, de-main.** French **x** is usually equivalent to **ks**; in syllabic division **k** belongs to the first syllable and **s** to the second: **Mexique** [mɛk-sik], **taxer** [tak-se].

3. The combinations **ch, gn, ph, th** belong to the following vowel: **bai-gner,** [bɛ-ɲe], **co-chon** [kɔ-ʃõ], **pa-thé-ti-que** [pa-te-tik], **pro-phé-tie** [prɔ-fe-si].

4. Combinations of two consonants where **b, c, d, f, g, p, t,** or **v** is followed by **l** or **r,** go with the following vowel: **a-grê-gé, dé-cla-rer, ou-vra-ge, ca-pa-ble, qua-tre.**

5. Other combinations of two consonants and doubled consonants are divided: **ré-dac-teur, ad-mis, par-tir, par-tout, al-ler, bon-té, es-poir, jar-din.**

68. Groups of three consonants are divided as follows:

1. The combinations **ch, ph, th, gn** are never separated: **cher-cher, or-phé-on, or-tho-gra-phie.**

2. A consonant, followed by any one of the combinations indicated under 4, goes with the preceding vowel, and the other two consonants of the group go with the following vowel: **bat-tre, mon-trer, on-glade, am-bler, com-pro-mis.**

3. Other combinations of three consonants are divided between the second and the third letter: **onc-tion, comp-tant, domp-teur.**

Note 1. In the spoken word, double consonants are usually treated as a single consonant: **aller** [ale], **patte** [pat], **ballon** [balõ].

Note 2. In phonetic syllabication, a consonant preceded by **n** or **m** is treated as if intervocalic: **raconter** [rakõte], **chanter** [ʃãte].

69. *Divide the following words into syllables, making use of the rules given above*: **avoir, pouvoir, devenir, continuer, peuple, consulteur, bercer, berger, beurre, aller, belle, chanter, bassiner, bateau, sembler, fléau, réel, cacher, baigner, vigne, déclarer, capable, après,**

fenêtre, acteur, partir, jardin, frapper, quatre, fonction, combler, ouvrage.

Liaison

70. A final consonant, whether or not ordinarily pronounced, is often sounded when standing before a word beginning with a vowel or a silent **h**, as in **deux arbres** [døz arbr], **les hommes** [lez ɔm]. This is called liaison or linking. When thus linked to the following word, some consonants change their sound: **s, x = z: les arbres** [lez arbr], **deux amis** [døz ami].

c, g, q = k: un long hiver [œ̃ lɔ̃k ivɛːr], **franc étrier** [frɑ̃k etrie], **cinq amis** [sɛ̃k ami].

d = t: un grand homme [œ̃ grɑ̃t ɔm].

f = v: only in the word **neuf; neuf ans** [nœv ɑ̃], **neuf heures** [nœv œːr].

71. Linking occurs only between words closely connected in thought.

1. Between an article or adjective, and a noun: **vos amis** [voz ami], **six hommes** [siz ɔm].

2. Between a pronoun and a verb, whether the pronoun precedes the verb, or follows it, or is connected with it by a hyphen.

Vous avez [vuz ave], **ils ont** [ilz ɔ̃], **dit-il** [dit il], **donne-t-on** [dɔntɔ̃].

3. Between an adverb and a participle or an adjective: **fort instruit,** [fɔrt ɛ̃strɥi], **trop aimable** [trɔp ɛmabl].

4. Between an auxiliary verb and the past participle or infinitive. **Nous sommes arrivés** [nu sɔmz arive], **il est arrivé** [il ɛt arive].

5. Between a preposition and a following word: **dans une semaine** [dɑ̃z yn səmɛn].

6. Between the verb **être** and a predicate adjective or noun: **il est américain** [il ɛt amerikɛ̃], **il est avocat** [il ɛt avɔka].

7. In certain phrases: **de mieux en mieux** [də mjøz ɑ̃ mjø], **petit à petit** [pətit a pəti].

8. When **n** is linked the preceding vowel may lose part or all of its nasal quality: **son ami** [sɔ̃n ami] or [sɔn ami].

Note 1. Final **m** is never linked: **pronom indéfini** [prɔnɔ̃ ẽdefini].

Note 2. The **t** of **et** is never linked.

Note 3. The **n** of **selon** is never carried over: **selon elle** [səlɔ̃ ɛl].

NOTE 4. The aspirate **h** (see **44**) prevents linking: **le hasard** [lə azaːr].

NOTE 5. Linking does not usually take place when a singular adjective follows the noun it qualifies: **de l'argent américain** [də l arʒɑ̃ amerikɛ̃].

Marks and Signs

72. The marks, ´ ` ^, usually called the acute, grave, and circumflex accents, respectively, are not accents in the proper sense of the word, which signifies stress of voice. They are referred to in this book without relation to accent, as acute, grave, circumflex (e.g., circumflex **ê**; grave **è**; acute **é**). They have different uses. The circumflex may denote the loss of an original letter (as in **être** from **estre**), or differentiate words otherwise alike in form (as **dû** = *due* from **du** = *of the*). They may also indicate the quality of the vowel, acute **é**, for example, being close, and grave **è** and circumflex **ê** open.

73. The cedilla (¸), French **cédille,** indicates that **c** has the sound of **s** before **a, o, u**: **leçon, ça, reçu.** The diæresis (¨), French **tréma,** indicates that the vowel upon which it appears is separate in pronunciation from the preceding vowel: **naïf** [naif], **noël** [nɔɛl]. In words like **aiguë** [egy], the diæresis over the **e** shows that the **u,** which is generally silent in such combinations, is here sounded.

74. The apostrophe ('), French **apostrophe,** indicates the omission of a vowel. **J'avais** (= **je avais**), **l'arbre** (= **le arbre**), **l'homme** (= **le homme**). The hyphen (-), French **trait-d'union,** is used as in English: **arc-en-ciel.**

Capitals

75. Capitals (**lettres majuscules**) are omitted in French in some instances where they are commonly employed in English, *e.g.:*

1. in titles before proper names: **Voici le professeur Thomas.** Here is Professor Thomas.

2. in titles of books after the first noun: **Histoire de la littérature française,** History of French Literature.

3. in proper adjectives: **Un livre italien.** An Italian book. **Un journal français.** A French newspaper.

4. in names of months and days: **Il est arrivé lundi.** He arrived Monday. **Il est parti le premier mai.** He set out on the first of May.

5. in the use of the personal pronoun of the first person: **Voici pourquoi je suis content.** This is why I am glad.

Otherwise, the practice is the same in French as in English.

Punctuation

76. The punctuation marks used in French are:

.	**point**	*period*
,	**virgule**	*comma*
;	**point et virgule**	*semi-colon*
:	**deux points**	*colon*
?	**point d'interrogation**	*interrogation point*
!	**point d'exclamation**	*exclamation point*
-	**trait-d'union**	*hyphen*
—	**tiret,** *or* **tiret de séparation**	*dash*
« »	**guillemets**	*quotation marks*
. . .	**points de suspension,** *or* **points suspensifs**	*dots*
( )	**parenthèse**	*parenthesis*
[ ]	**crochets**	*brackets*
{	**accolade**	*brace*
*	**astérisque**	*asterisk*

Observe that the punctuation marks used in French are the same as those used in English. However, the **tiret** is frequently used instead of the **guillemets** to denote a change of speaker. **Combien ces cravates, monsieur? — Trois francs seulement — Je prendrai celle-ci.**

LESSON I

Introductory

77. Word and Group Stress. Stress (or accent) denotes the greater force with which a syllable may be spoken, the effect being to render it more audible as compared with the others.[1] In French words all the syllables except those containing neutral **e** are pronounced; they are uttered carefully and distinctly and with uniform intensity, except that in words taken singly the final syllable has a somewhat greater emphasis, and that in words of three or more syllables there are certain secondary stresses which can be best learned from hearing them. Thus, **allez, avons, charité, possible, innocence, Canada, Niagara.** In ordinary speech, words are not pronounced singly but in groups, those closely connected in meaning or requiring a certain

[1] This refers to words having two or more pronounced syllables. Accent is also used in reference to words having only one pronounced syllable and to certain monosyllables (see **37**).

amount of breath being taken together. For purposes of pronunciation these groups are treated as single long words; the final syllable is made more prominent and the secondary stresses receive their value. Following are some examples:

Pierre est allé ce matin | chez son professeur | pour y prendre sa leçon [pjɛːretalesəmatɛ̃ | ʃesɔ̃prɔfesœːr | puriprɑ̃ːdrəsaləsɔ̃]

J'ai tout perdu, | mon temps | et mon amour [ʒetuperdy | mɔ̃tɑ̃ | emɔ̃namuːr]

Nous sommes allés | nous promener | en automobile ce matin [nusɔmzale | nuprɔmne | ɑ̃notɔməbilsəmatɛ̃]

When it is desired to emphasize the meaning of single words in stress groups, or syllables of single words, the stress may be shifted from the natural position to the emphatic syllable or word.

Il y en a **beau**coup [iljɑ̃naboku] There are *many* of them.

Il ne **veut** pas étudier [ilnəvøpazetydje] He does not *want* to study.

Ce n'est pas de l'**ar**gent qu'il me faut [sənepɑdəlarʒɑ̃kilməfo] It is not *money* that I need.

D'une part il a **ga**gné, de l'autre il a **per**du [dynparilagɑɲe | dəlotrilapɛrdy] On the one hand he has *gained*, on the other, *lost*.

In general, the difference between accented and unaccented syllables is much less marked in French than in English.

78. Inflection. French differs from English in that it is more highly inflected, indicating numerous relations by special forms or by terminations. This will be illustrated by the manner of denoting number and gender, by the special case forms of certain pronouns, and by the endings of verbs for the first, second, and third persons, and for the singular and plural numbers. When these latter forms are brought together with the subject pronouns, they form the inflection of some part of the verb, as for example, the present tense.

79. The Infinitive. When a verb occurs in a vocabulary or is otherwise referred to, it is usually given in the form of the present infinitive, as **parler,** *to speak;* **finir,** *to finish;* **rompre,** *to break.* This infinitive gives the meaning of the verb without regard to person or number.

80. Moods and Tenses. There are four moods in French, the indicative, the imperative, the conditional, and the subjunctive. The indicative and imperative are used as in English; the conditional and the subjunctive require special explanation, which will be given on the first occurrence of these forms. The use of tenses also varies in several respects from the English usage.

81. Regular and Irregular Verbs. Verbs are either regular or irregular, the two classes depending on differences in tense forms. In this book the regular verbs are treated first, with the exception of **être** and **avoir** and certain other irregular verbs in common use.

82. Conjugations. Verbs are divided into classes called conjugations according to the terminations of the present infinitive. The infinitive endings of the regular verbs are **–er, –ir,** and **–re.** Verbs in **–er** belong to the first conjugation, those in **–ir** to the second, and those in **–re** to the third.

EXERCISE

83. 1. The following verbs are given in the present infinitive.

trouver [truve] to find
bâtir [batiːr] to build
punir [pyniːr] to punish
tomber [tõbe] to fall
entendre [ãtãːdr] to understand
rompre [rõːpr] to break
finir [finiːr] to finish
descendre [desãːdr] to descend
perdre [pɛrdr] to lose
ramasser [ramɑse] to pick up
remplir [rãpliːr] to fill
montrer [mõtre] to show
vendre [vãːdr] to sell
rendre [rãːdr] to render
penser [pãse] to think
mûrir [myriːr] to ripen
porter [pɔrte] to carry, wear
fermer [fɛrme] to close
regarder [rəgarde] to look at
réussir [reysiːr] to succeed
guérir [geriːr] to cure
demander [dəmãde] to ask
répondre [repõːdr] to answer
jouir [ʒwiːr] to enjoy

2. Divide the words of the foregoing list into syllables according to the rules already given (see **67–68.**).

3. How is correct syllabication an aid to pronunciation?

4. Practice the pronunciation of the words in the list, pointing out the open and close vowels.

5. Write the words from dictation.

6. Learn the meaning of the words so that on hearing the French you can give the English equivalent, and vice versa.

NOTE. In origin the French language, like Italian, Spanish and other Romance tongues, is an outgrowth of Latin, which after the Roman conquest of Gaul in the middle of the first century B.C. superseded the Celtic of the native inhabitants. The process was gradual and was probably not completed before 400 A.D. The Latin itself was the popular as distinguished from the literary form of the language; it adapted itself to new conditions and requirements and so underwent many changes. This disintegration in both form and syntax was hastened by the Teutonic invasions of the fourth and fifth centuries, with the result that the spoken language diverged more and more from the written language and finally

became a separate medium of expression. It was later used for literary purposes, as in the French epics of the eleventh and twelfth centuries, this stage of the language being known as Old French. Various dialects arose in different districts, such as the Lorrain, the Picard, the Norman, and the Burgundian, but that of the Isle de France, the speech of Paris, became ascendant and gave form to modern French. The latter has been subjected to many influences, but in vocabulary as well as in forms and syntax it is essentially Latin.

LESSON II

84. Present Indicative of *parler, finir, vendre.*

		Endings
je parle [ʒə parl]	I speak, am speaking, do speak	**–e.**
tu parles [ty parl]	you speak, are speaking, do speak	**–es.**
il (elle) parle [il (ɛl) parl]	he (she) speaks, is speaking, does speak	**–e.**
nous parlons [nu parlõ]	we speak, are speaking, do speak	**–ons.**
vous parlez [vu parle]	you speak, are speaking, do speak	**–ez.**
ils (elles) parlent [il (ɛl) parl]	they speak, are speaking, do speak	**–ent.**
je finis [ʒə fini]	I finish, am finishing, do finish	**–s.**
tu finis [ty fini]	you finish are finishing, do finish	**–s.**
il (elle) finit [il (ɛl) fini]	he (she) finishes, is finishing, does finish	**–t.**
nous finissons [nu finisõ]	we finish, are finishing, do finish	**–ons.**
vous finissez [vu finise]	you finish, are finishing, do finish	**–ez.**
ils (elles) finissent [il (ɛl) finis]	they finish, are finishing, do finish	**–ent.**
je vends [ʒə vã]	I sell, am selling, do sell	**–s.**
tu vends [ty vã]	you sell, are selling, do sell	**–s.**
il (elle) vend [il (ɛl) vã]	he (she) sells, is selling, does sell	
nous vendons [nu vãdõ]	we sell, are selling, do sell	**–ons.**
vous vendez [vu vãde]	you sell, are selling, do sell	**–ez.**
ils (elles) vendent [il (ɛl) vã:d]	they sell, are selling, do sell	**–ent.**

DRILL EXERCISE

85. 1. The present tense is made up of the part of the verb called the stem and the endings for the different persons, for example, **donn + e.** To find the stem, drop the personal ending.

2. What is the stem of **parler?** Drop the endings of both singular and plural. Does the stem in both cases remain the same?

3. What is the stem of **vendre?** Is it the same in the singular and the plural?

4. Drop the endings of **finir** and note the stems, **fini–** in the singular, and **finiss–** in the plural.

5. To form a tense, you add the personal endings to the stem (or

stems). Using this rule, write the present tense of the following: **porter,** *to carry,* and **fermer,** *to close* (like **donner**); **perdre,** *to lose,* and **entendre,** *to hear* (like **vendre**) [1]; **bâtir,** *to build,* and **punir,** *to punish* (like **finir**).

6. Which of the endings are alike for each of the three verbs? Learn all the personal endings.

7. Which of the personal endings are not pronounced? When the ending is not pronounced, how do you know which person is meant?

8. Notice in conjugating verbs that the subject pronouns are expressed as in English: **je,** *I;* **tu,** *you;* **il,** *he* or *it;* **elle,** *she* or *it;* **nous,** *we;* **vous,** *you;* **ils,** *they;* **elles** (feminine), *they.* In the third person **ils** and **elles** may also refer to things, taking the gender (masculine or feminine) of the preceding substantive.

86. **VOCABULARY**

bâtir [batiːr]	to build
défendre [defɑ̃ːdr]	to forbid, defend
donner [dɔne]	to give
écouter [ekute]	to listen, listen to
entendre [ɑ̃tɑ̃ːdr]	to hear
marcher [marʃe]	to walk, go
punir [pyniːr]	to punish
regarder [rəgarde]	to look, look at
remplir [rɑ̃pliːr]	to fill
répondre [repɔ̃ːdr]	to answer
toucher [tuʃe]	to touch

EXERCISES

87. 1. Je bâtis, vous bâtissez, ils bâtissent, tu bâtis. 2. Nous écoutons, vous écoutez, elles écoutent. 3. Tu défends, nous défendons, vous défendez, il défend, je défends. 4. J'entends, elle entend, vous entendez, ils entendent. 5. Il marche, je marche, elle marche, vous marchez, ils marchent. 6. Nous répondons, je réponds, vous répondez, ils répondent. 7. Nous regardons, vous regardez, il regarde, elles regardent. 8. Vous finissez, elle finit, nous finissons. 9. Vous rompez, nous rompons, il rompt, tu romps. 10. Vous entendez, nous entendons, ils entendent. 11. Tu finis, vous finissez, elles finissent. 12. Vous parlez, nous parlons, tu parles, elle parle. 13. J'entends, vous écoutez, elle répond. 14. Vous regardez, il écoute, nous répondons. 15. Nous marchons, nous écoutons, nous regardons. 16. Je donne, vous donnez, nous donnons.

[1] Note that **vendre** has no personal ending in the third singular. **Rompre,** *to break,* and its compounds, have **t** (e.g., **il rompt,** he breaks).

88. 1. I am building, he builds, they build. 2. I listen, they listen, you are listening. 3. She hears, they hear, you are hearing. 4. You are walking, they (fem.) are walking, I walk, they walk. 5. We are looking, she is looking, I look, you look. 6. I answer, you are answering, she answers, we are answering, they answer. 7. I am touching, we touch, you touch, they touch. 8. I forbid, they forbid, we do forbid, you forbid, they are forbidding. 9. I give, I am giving, you give, they give. 10. He punishes, we punish, I punish, you punish. 11. I look, I listen, I hear, I answer. 12. They hear, they fill, they walk, they build. 13. He looks, he walks, he builds. 14. I look, you listen, they answer, I fill, you build. 15. We look, they listen, you answer, they fill, we build.

LESSON III

89. Imperative of *parler, finir, vendre.*

		Endings
parle [parl]	speak	**–e**
parlons [parlõ]	let us speak	**–ons**
parlez [parle]	speak	**–ez**
finis [fini]	finish	**–s**
finissons [finisõ]	let us finish	**–ons**
finissez [finise]	finish	**–ez**
vends [vã]	sell	**–s**
vendons [vãdõ]	let us sell	**–ons**
vendez [vãde]	sell	**–ez**

DRILL EXERCISE

90. 1. Compare the imperative forms with the second person singular, second person plural, and first person plural of the present indicative.

2. Do you notice any difference?

3. Give the imperative forms of **écouter, entendre, bâtir.**

91. Gender. There are two genders in French, masculine and feminine. Names of males are masculine, of females, feminine, as in English. Names of things without life are either masculine or feminine. Thus, **arbre,** *tree,* **blé,** *wheat,* and **chapeau,** *hat,* are masculine, while **porte,** *door,* **fenêtre,** *window,* and **maison,** *house,* are feminine. The gender of a noun in the singular is indicated by the article.

NOTE 1. The gender of French nouns derived from Latin nouns which are the names of things, is (with some exceptions) the same as that of the Latin originals.

NOTE 2. In Latin there were three genders, but in the popular speech the neuters for the most part became masculine. Certain neuter plurals in **-a** having the force of collective nouns came to be regarded as feminine singulars. Thus **la joie,** *joy,* Latin **gaudia** (plural of **gaudium**). In this way all French nouns became masculine or feminine.

92. Definite Article. The forms of the definite article corresponding to English *the* are:

le before a masculine noun beginning with a consonant.
la before a feminine noun beginning with a consonant.
l' before a noun beginning with a vowel or mute **h**.
les before all plural nouns.

Le crayon, la plume, the pencil, the pen.
L'enfant, l'homme, the child, the man.
Les enfants, les hommes, the children, the men.

93. Indefinite Article. The forms of the indefinite article corresponding to English *a* or *an* are:

un before a masculine noun.
une before a feminine noun.

Un crayon et une plume, a pencil and a pen.

Notice that the indefinite article has no plural form.

94. In a series of two or more nouns referring to different persons or things, the article is repeated with each noun.

Le père et le fils, the father and (the) son.
Un livre et un crayon, a book and (a) pencil.

95. VOCABULARY

à [a] at, to
arriver [arive] to arrive
cahier, *m.* [kaje] notebook
classe *f.* [klɑːs] class, schoolroom
de [də] of
école *f.* [ekɔl] school
élève *m. f.* [eleːv] pupil
entrer (dans) [ɑ̃tre dɑ̃] to enter
étudier [etydje] to study
leçon *f.* [ləsɔ̃] lesson
porte *f.* [pɔrt] door
professeur *m.* [prɔfɛsœːr] teacher, professor
ramasser [ramɑse] to pick up
réciter [resite] to recite
saluer [salɥe] to greet
salle de classe *f.* [sal də klɑːs] classroom
tableau noir *m.* [tablo nwaːr] blackboard

EXERCISES

96. 1. Les élèves arrivent à l'école. 2. Ils entrent dans la salle de classe. 3. Ils saluent le professeur. 4. Ils récitent une leçon. 5. Ils

écoutent le professeur. 6. Ils regardent le tableau noir. 7. Fermez la porte. 8. Regardez le tableau noir. 9. Fermez les livres. 10. Ramassez le cahier. 11. Récitez la leçon. 12. Le professeur ferme la porte. 13. Il parle. 14. Les élèves écoutent. 15. Saluons le professeur. 16. Récitons la leçon. 17. Regardons le tableau noir.

97. 1. The teacher enters the class room. 2. He closes the door. 3. He picks up a book. 4. The pupils enter the room. 5. A pupil closes the door. 6. The teacher picks up a notebook. 7. Let us recite the lesson. 8. Close the books. 9. Look at the blackboard. 10. He looks at the blackboard. 11. Listen to the teacher. 12. You are reciting the lesson. 13. The pupils recite the lesson. 14. You are looking at the blackboard. 15. You are closing the book. 16. They are listening to the teacher. 17. I arrive at the school. 18. I greet the teacher. 19. I close the book. 20. I recite the lesson.

98. Conversation. With books closed, the teacher speaks the following imperative phrases to the pupils in turn, the pupil addressed answering in the first person:

Regardez le tableau noir.
Fermez la porte.
Saluez les élèves.
Récitez la leçon.
Entrez dans la salle de classe.
Fermez le livre.
Étudiez la leçon.
Ramassez le cahier.

LESSON IV

99. Present Indicative of *être* and *avoir*.

		Endings
je suis [ʒə sɥi]	I am	**–s**
tu es [ty ɛ]	you are (thou art)	**–s**
il est [il ɛ]	he is	**–t**
nous sommes [nu sɔm]	we are	**–mmes**
vous êtes [vuz ɛːt]	you are	**–es**
ils sont [il sɔ̃]	they are	**–nt**
j'ai [ʒ e]	I have	
tu as [ty a]	you have (thou hast)	**–s**
il a [il a]	he has	
nous avons [nuz avɔ̃]	we have	**–ons**
vous avez [vuz ave]	you have	**–ez**
ils ont [ilz ɔ̃]	they have	**–nt**

DRILL EXERCISE

100. 1. If you drop the endings of **avoir** and **être** in this tense, how many stems do you note in each case?

2. Do the stems furnish any reason for these verbs being called irregular? Compare the stem in the same tense of **donner** and **vendre.**

3. Learn the phrase, **il y a,** *there is, there are,* and also **voici,** *here is, here are* and **voilà,** *there is, there are.* **Il y a** merely makes a statement, while **voici** and **voilà** point out a person or an object and answer the questions, *where is? where are?*

Il y a deux livres sur la table. There are two books on the table.
Voici Jean. Here is John.
Voilà mon crayon. There is my pencil.

4. It is convenient to notice here the imperative of **avoir** and **être.**

sois [swa]	be	**aie** [ɛ]	have
soyons [swajõ]	let us be	**ayons** [ɛjõ]	let us have
soyez [swaje]	be	**ayez** [ɛje]	have

Observe that the imperative forms of **être** and **avoir** are not the same as the corresponding persons of the present indicative.

101. Definite Article with *à* and *de*. When **à** *to,* or **de** *of,* occurs before **le** or **les,** the preposition and the article are contracted into one word:

1. **de** + **le** becomes **du** [dy].

Du père, of the father. **Du frère,** of the brother.

2. **à** + **le** becomes **au** [o].

Au cousin, to the cousin. **Au père,** to the father.

3. **de** + **les** becomes **des** [de].

Des cousins, of the cousins. **Des amis,** of the friends.

4. **à** + **les** becomes **aux** [o].

Aux cousins, to the cousins. **Aux amis,** to the friends.

NOTE 1. There is no contraction with **l'** or **la:**

De l'enfant, of the child
De l'homme, of the man.
À l'enfant, to the child.
De la fille, of the girl.
À la mère, to the mother.

NOTE 2. Nouns with **à** and **de.** French nouns have no case endings. Case relations, except subject, direct object, and the vocative, are expressed by prepo-

sitions. The possessive (or genitive) case is denoted by **de** + noun, and the indirect object (or dative) by **à** + noun.

Le chapeau de mon père, my father's hat.
Je donne le livre à Jean, I give John the book.

102. Plural of Nouns.

1. As a general rule, add **s** to the singular.

La main, the hand, **les mains,** the hands.
Le livre, the book, **les livres,** the books.
L'encrier, the inkstand, **les encriers,** the inkstands.

2. Nouns in **-au, -eu,** and some in **-ou** add **x** instead of **s.**

Le bateau, the boat, **les bateaux,** the boats.
Le jeu, the game, **les jeux,** the games.
Le joujou, the toy, **les joujoux,** the toys.

3. As a rule, nouns in **-al** change **l** to **u** and add **x.**

Le journal, the newspaper, **les journaux,** the newspapers.
Le cheval, the horse, **les chevaux,** the horses.

4. Nouns in **-s, -x, -z** are invariable.

Le bras, the arm, **les bras,** the arms.
La voix, the voice, **les voix,** the voices.
Le nez, the nose, **les nez,** the noses.

103. VOCABULARY

avec [avɛk] with
aujourd'hui [ɔʒurdɥi] today
copier [kɔpje] to copy
couteau *m.* [kuto] knife
crayon *m.* [krɛjɔ̃] pencil
devant [dəvɑ̃] in front of
Jean [ʒɑ̃] John
mais [mɛ] but
maître *m.* [mɛtr] teacher
maîtresse *f.* [mɛtrɛs] teacher
pupitre *m.* [pypitr] desk
tailler [taje] to cut, sharpen

EXERCISES

104. 1. Nous sommes à l'école aujourd'hui. 2. Nous arrivons à la porte. 3. Nous entrons dans la salle de classe. 4. Je suis devant la porte. 5. Vous êtes devant le tableau noir. 6. J'ai un crayon, un couteau, et un cahier. 7. Je donne un livre à un élève. 8. Il étudie la leçon. 9. Voilà le maître. 10. Il entre dans la salle de classe. 11. Il parle aux élèves. 12. Les élèves écoutent. 13. Ils ferment les livres. 14. Ils récitent la leçon. 15. Ils copient les exercices dans un cahier. 16. Ils donnent les cahiers au maître. 17. Il y a deux livres sur le pupitre. 18. Le maître a un livre. 19. Il parle. 20. Nous écoutons. 21. J'ai le crayon de Jean.

NOTE TO THE TEACHER. Pronounce the sentences in **104** to the pupils in turn and have each sentence repeated by a pupil with book closed. The sentences may also be written from dictation.

105. 1. I have a book, a pencil, and a notebook. 2. You have a knife and a pencil. 3. Here is the teacher. 4. He has a book. 5. He is in front of the blackboard. 6. He is copying the lesson with a pencil in a notebook. 7. Let us look at the blackboard. 8. We are in front of the blackboard. 9. We are looking at the blackboard and listening to the teacher. 10. You are copying an exercise in a notebook. 11. Sharpen the pencil. 12. Look at the door. 13. We are at school today.

LESSON V

106. Possessive Adjectives. These adjectives, like the English *his, her, my, your*, etc., are derived from personal pronouns and denote possession. They have separate forms for singular and plural, and three of them have separate forms for masculine and feminine but only in the singular.

Masc.	*Fem.*	*Plural*	
mon [mɔ̃]	**ma** [ma]	**mes** [me]	my
ton [tɔ̃]	**ta** [ta]	**tes** [te]	thy, your
son [sɔ̃]	**sa** [sa]	**ses** [se]	his, her, its
notre [nɔtr]	**notre** [nɔtr]	**nos** [no]	our
votre [vɔtr]	**votre** [vɔtr]	**vos** [vo]	your
leur [lœːr]	**leur** [lœːr]	**leurs** [lœːr]	their

107. Agreement. Possessive adjectives agree in gender and number with the person or object possessed, and not with the possessor as in English.

Mon père, my father.
Sa fille, his (*or* her) daughter.
Ta main, your hand.
Ton crayon, your pencil.
Mes amis, my friends.
Vos livres, your books.
Leurs encriers, their inkstands.

NOTE. When a feminine substantive or adjective begins with a vowel or **h** mute, the masculine forms **mon, ton, son** are used.

Son histoire, his (*or* her) history.
Ton idée, your idea.
Mon armée, my army.
Son horloge, his (*or* her) clock.

108. The Sentence Negative. The usual negative of the sentence is **ne . . . pas,** *not.* In position, **ne** precedes the personal verb and **pas** follows it.

Je ne suis pas, I am not.
Vous n'avez pas, you have not.
Nous ne donnons pas, we are not giving.

109. Write out the negative form of the present tense of **porter, finir, rompre, être,** and **avoir.**

110. VOCABULARY

canif *m.* [kanif] penknife
encrier *m.* [ãkrie] inkwell
grammaire *f.* [gramɛːr] grammar
histoire *f.* [istwaːr] history, story
porte-plume *m.* [pɔrt plym] pen-holder
quitter [kite] to leave
sur [syr] on, upon
table *f.* [tabl] table
il est en retard [il ɛt ã rətaːr] he is late
tous les jours [tu le ʒuːr] every day

EXERCISES

111. 1. Je suis à l'école. 2. J'étudie ma leçon d'histoire. 3. Je ramasse les couteaux. 4. Je taille mon crayon. 5. Voici mon livre français. 6. Étudions notre leçon. 7. Voilà un encrier. 8. Copiez l'exercice. 9. Nous avons nos livres. 10. Il y a un livre, un encrier, et un porte-plume sur la table. 11. Il est en retard. 12. Il arrive à l'école. 13. Il entre dans la salle de classe. 14. Il ramasse sa grammaire. 15. Il étudie sa leçon de français. 16. Les élèves sont devant le tableau noir. 17. Le professeur regarde la classe. 18. Il parle. 19. Les élèves écoutent. 20. La leçon finit. 21. Nous quittons la classe.

112. 1. I have a pencil. 2. You have a knife. 3. Here are the pencils. 4. Sharpen the pencil with the knife. 5. I am copying the lessons in my notebook. 6. Here is the knife. 7. Here is a knife on my desk. 8. You have a pencil. 9. I am studying my history lesson. 10. I have not a French book. 11. There is a French book on the table. 12. John has a notebook. 13. Here is my notebook. 14. Here is a book. 15. There is a knife on my desk. 16. You have a notebook. 17. He is studying his history lesson. 18. He has a notebook and a pencil. 19. Pick up the book on the table. 20. Here is the inkwell. 21. I am not late every day. 22. I am not at school every day. 23. The teacher is not late. 24. We are late. 25. Here is the teacher.

113. Conversation.

The teacher pronounces the following imperative sentences to the pupils in turn, the pupil addressed answering in all the persons of the present indicative:

Copiez l'exercice (Je copie l'exercice).
Taillez le crayon.
Étudiez la leçon.
Quittez l'école.
Entrez dans la salle.
Fermez le livre.

Substitute the other persons of the present indicative of the verbs found in the following sentences:

Je suis à l'école, (tu es à l'école; il est à l'école, etc.).
Vous avez un crayon.
Il est en retard.

LESSON VI

114. Interrogative Present Indicative of *être, avoir, finir.*

suis-je ? [sɥiː ʒ]	am I ?
es-tu ? [ɛ ty]	
est-il ? est-elle ? [ɛt il; ɛt ɛl]	
sommes-nous ? [sɔm nu]	are we ?
êtes-vous ? [ɛːt vu]	
sont-ils ? sont-elles ? [sɔ̃t il; sɔ̃t ɛl]	
ai-je ? [ɛː ʒ]	have I ?
as-tu ? [a ty]	
a-t-il ? a-t-elle ? [a t il; a t ɛl]	
avons-nous ? [avɔ̃ nu]	have we ?
avez-vous ? [ave vu]	
ont-ils ? ont-elles ? [ɔ̃t il; ɔ̃t ɛl]	
est-ce que je finis ? [ɛs kə ʒ fini]	am I finishing ?
finis-tu ? [fini ty]	
finit-il ? finit-elle ? [finit il; finit ɛl]	
finissons-nous ? [finisɔ̃ nu]	are we finishing ?
finissez-vous ? [finise vu]	
finissent-ils ? finissent-elles ? [finist il; finist ɛl]	

DRILL EXERCISE

115. The first person singular of the interrogative form is altogether avoided in some verbs (as **finis-je ?** and **romps-je ?**),[1] the question in such cases being indicated by **est-ce que,** for which see below.

2. When a question is asked by means of the verb and the personal pronoun, note that the verb precedes the subject.

3. **T** is inserted in the third person singular when the verb ends in a vowel. **Donne-t-il, trouve-t-il ?**

4. From the models given in **114,** write the present tense of **porter, écouter, regarder, bâtir, punir, entendre,** and **répondre.**

[1] It is sometimes found in verbs of the first conjugation, in which case the ending **e** becomes **é,** pronounced [ɛ]: **donné-je ?** am I giving ?

116. Est-ce que. Another method of asking questions is to place **est-ce que** (= *is it that*) before the verb. The subject pronoun then retains its usual position. This method is employed freely in all persons, the **e** of **que** being elided before a vowel.

Est-ce que je finis, am I finishing?
Est-ce que vous répondez, are you answering?
Est-ce qu'il donne, is he giving?
Est-ce qu'ils récitent la leçon, are they reciting the lesson?

117. A question in which a noun is the subject may also be introduced by **est-ce que.**

Est-ce que le professeur regarde les élèves? Is the teacher looking at the pupils?

118. When **est-ce que** is not prefixed to a question having a noun as the subject, the noun precedes the verb and is repeated by a subject pronoun following the verb.

Le professeur regarde-t-il les élèves? [1] Is the teacher looking at the pupils?
Les élèves écoutent-ils le professeur? Are the pupils listening to the professor?

119. VOCABULARY

chercher [ʃɛrʃe] to look for, seek
combien [kɔ̃bjɛ̃] how many, how much?
en [ɑ̃] in
demeurer [dəmœre] to live, reside
monsieur [məsjø] sir, gentleman, Mr.
Marie [mari] Mary
poser [poze] to put, ask
que? [2] [kə] what (*interrog. pron.*)
question *f.* [kɛstjɔ̃] question
souvent [suvɑ̃] often
toujours [tuʒuːr] always
vingt [vɛ̃] twenty
à l'heure [a l œːr] on time
le français [lə frɑ̃sɛ] French, the French language

EXERCISES

120. 1. Que cherchez-vous, Charles? 2. Je cherche mon crayon et mon cahier. 3. Est-ce que vous étudiez le français? 4. Oui, monsieur, j'étudie le français et l'histoire. 5. Voici ma grammaire. 6. Combien d'élèves y a-t-il dans votre classe de français? 7. Il y a vingt élèves dans ma classe de français. 8. Votre professeur parle-t-il toujours français? 9. Oui, monsieur, il parle toujours français dans la classe de français. 10. Les élèves écoutent le professeur et ils récitent la leçon.

[1] Note that **regarder,** *to look at,* and **écouter,** *to listen to,* are not followed by prepositions.

[2] This form of the pronoun may be used only as direct object or as predicate with **être.** **Qu'est-ce que** may be used in the place of **que,** in which case the subject precedes the verb as with **est-ce que.**

11. Ils regardent le tableau noir. 12. Le professeur pose une question et nous répondons à sa question. 13. Nous répondons à sa question en français. 14. Est-ce que vous êtes souvent en retard? 15. Non, monsieur, je suis toujours à l'heure. 16. J'entre dans la salle de classe. 17. Je salue le professeur et les élèves. 18. Je ramasse mon cahier. 19. J'étudie mes leçons. 20. Je récite mes leçons et je quitte l'école.

121. 1. What are you studying at school? 2. Do you study French? 3. What are you looking for? 4. Are you looking for your notebook? 5. Is Charles looking for his notebook? 6. Is he coming into the schoolroom? 7. He does not arrive at school on time. 8. He is not listening to the teacher. 9. He is not reciting his lesson. 10. Does he often arrive at school behind time? 11. Is Mary at school today? 12. She does not always arrive at school on time. 13. She is copying her exercises with a pencil. 14. Is she listening to the teacher? 15. What does she answer? 16. Am I late? 17. Am I on time? 18. Let us finish the exercise.

122. Oral. 1. What are you looking at? 2. Are you looking at the door? 3. I am looking at the blackboard. 4. Is Charles listening to the teacher? 5. What are you copying? 6. What are they answering? 7. Does the teacher arrive on time every day? 8. He is not often behind time. 9. I do not recite the lesson every day. 10. Do you recite the lesson in French? 11. Have you a pen? 12. I have a pencil. 13. I have not a pen. 14. I do not copy my exercises with a pen. 15. Sharpen your pencil with a knife. 16. Is Mary at school today?

123. Conversation. For conversation let the teacher repeat the questions in the French exercise, the pupils replying with books closed. Let the learner himself ask one or more questions in French, using the verbs given in the vocabulary.

LESSON VII

124. Definite Article with Inclusive Noun.

A noun signifying something as a whole or denoting the whole of a class requires the definite article. Accordingly the article is used:

1. With names of countries.

L'Amérique, America.
La France, France.
L'Angleterre, England.

NOTE 1. After the preposition **en,** *in* or *to,* the article is not expressed, as **en Amérique, en France.**

NOTE 2. Unmodified names of countries in the feminine singular preceded by **de** omit the article: (1) in certain cases when motion from the country is expressed; (2) when the prepositional phrase has the force of an adjective or otherwise defines a preceding noun.

Il vient de Grèce. He comes from Greece.
Le vin d'Espagne, Spanish wine.
Le vin de Bourgogne, Burgundy wine.

The usage is not altogether uniform. When the speaker wishes to imply emphasis of the country by regarding it as a geographical unit, the article is expressed.

Les gloires de la France, the glories of France.
Les villes de l'Italie, the cities of Italy.
Les chaux de la Flandre, the lime of Flanders.

2. With definite periods of time.

La semaine a sept jours. The week has seven days.
L'année a douze mois. The year has twelve months.

3. With things regarded as institutions.

L'école, school.
L'église, church.
L'art, art.
La religion, religion.
La science, science, knowledge.

4. With abstract qualities.

L'avarice, avarice.
L'amitié, friendship.
La sympathie, sympathy.
La pitié, pity.

5. With nouns denoting classes or groups.

Les hommes ont deux mains. Men have two hands.
Les chats ont quatre pattes. Cats have four paws.

NOTE. The definite article is also employed in a distributive sense.

Je prends une leçon de musique le lundi. I take a music lesson on Mondays.
Je ne vais pas à l'école le samedi. I do not go to school Saturdays.
L'épicier vend les cerises à quinze sous la livre. The grocer sells cherries at fifteen cents a pound.

125. Present Tense of the Irregular Verb *aller, to go.*

je vais [ʒe vɛ]	I go, am going, do go
tu vas [ty va]	
il va [il va]	
nous allons [nuz alɔ̃]	we go, are going, do go
vous allez [vuz ale]	
ils vont [il vɔ̃]	

NOTE. Aller is used idiomatically in referring to the health of a person, e.g. **Allez-vous bien? Très bien, merci.** Are you well? Very well, thank you.

126. *Translate into French the following sentences, noting the rules for the definite article:*

1. I am going to France. 2. You are going to America. 3. He lives in France. 4. He does not live in England. 5. I am going to England next[1] year. 6. We are going to France next week. 7. I am going to school. 8. They are going to church. 9. Do you study art? 10. Art is not religion. 11. Religion is not science. 12. I do not like avarice. 13. England is near (**près de**) France. 14. France is not near America. 15. We live in America.

127. VOCABULARY

aimer [ɛme] to love, like, be fond of
après-midi *m. f.* [aprɛ midi] afternoon
famille *f.* [famiːj] family
jardin *m.* [ʒardɛ̃] garden
jouer [ʒwe] to play
maison *f.* [mezɔ̃] house, home
mère *f.* [mɛːr] mother
musique *f.* [myzik] music
passer [pɑse] to pass, spend
père *m.* [pɛːr] father
plus [ply] more
puis [pɥi] then
retourner [rətурne] to return, go back
sœur *f.* [sœːr] sister
soir *m.* [swaːr] evening
salon *m.* [salɔ̃] drawing room, parlor
tard [taːr] late

jouer du piano [ʒwe dy pjano] to play the piano
jouer au tennis [ʒwe o tɛnis] to play tennis
toute la journée [tut la ʒurne] the whole day
toute la soirée [tut la sware] the whole evening

EXERCISES

128. 1. Charles et sa sœur Marie vont à l'école. 2. Ils arrivent à l'école à l'heure. 3. Ils ne vont pas à l'école tous les jours. 4. Ils ne passent pas toute la journée à l'école. 5. L'après-midi, ils retournent à la maison. 6. Ils saluent leur père et leur mère. 7. Ils entrent dans le jardin et ils jouent. 8. La famille passe la soirée à la maison.

[1] **prochaine.**

9. Marie entre dans le salon et elle joue du piano. 10. Elle joue du piano tous les jours. 11. Elle aime la musique. 12. Charles, son père, et sa mère, entrent dans le salon. 13. Ils écoutent la musique et ils parlent de la France. 14. Plus tard, les enfants étudient leurs leçons. 15. Charles étudie sa leçon d'histoire. 16. Marie étudie sa leçon de musique. 17. Puis ils parlent de l'école et de leurs leçons. 18. Le père et la mère écoutent les enfants et ils répondent à leurs questions. 19. Les pères et les mères aiment leurs enfants. 20. Les enfants aiment leur père et leur mère.

129. 1. Do you go to school? 2. Do you like school? 3. I do not go to school every day. 4. I do not pass the whole day at school. 5. Do you go to school (in) the afternoon? 6. What do you study (in) the afternoon? 7. I study my lesson in the afternoon. 8. Mary and Charles are at school today. 9. They are not at school every day. 10. Mary studies music. 11. She likes music and history. 12. Charles is fond of history. 13. Mary plays on the piano. 14. Charles does not play the piano, but he plays tennis. 15. Mary plays the piano in the evening. 16. She does not play the whole evening.

130. Oral. 1. Here is a house. 2. Here is a garden. 3. There is a house and garden. 4. Have you a house and garden? 5. Do you go into the garden in the afternoon? 6. You do not spend the whole day in the garden. 7. Charles and Mary live in a house with a garden. 8. Mary likes the garden. 9. Charles plays tennis in the afternoon. 10. They are spending the evening in (**à**) the parlor. 11. They are not at school in the evening. 12. They study their lessons in the evening. 13. Mary is playing the piano. 14. Charles is talking with his father.

131. Conversation and Dictation.

a. 1. Est-ce que Charles et Marie vont à l'école tous les jours? 2. Passent-ils toute la journée à l'école? 3. Quand (*when*) retournent-ils à la maison? 4. Où (*where*) la famille passe-t-elle la soirée? 5. Que font (*do*) les enfants dans le jardin? 6. Que font-ils dans le salon? 7. Que font le père et la mère? 8. Aimez-vous l'école? 9. Allez-vous à l'école tous les jours? 10. Est-ce que Marie étudie la musique? 11. Est-ce qu'elle aime la musique? 12. Jouez-vous au tennis?

b. Dictation exercise based on **128.**

[It is highly desirable that dictation be given in connection with each Lesson].

LESSON VIII

132. Partitives. A noun may be so used that it does not signify the whole of something, but only a part. This is called the partitive sense.

133. Partitives in English. The partitive construction in English is indicated by omitting the definite article, by *some* and *any*, and by words of quantity.

He eats *bread* (not all the bread there is, but only *some* of it.) Their houses have *windows* and *doors*. I have *some* apples. Have you *any* oranges? The child has *some* bread. There are *enough* chairs in the room.

134. Partitives in French. The partitive in French is expressed by a noun preceded by the preposition **de**, *of*. In this usage **de** indicates that only a part of the whole denoted by the noun is referred to.

135. Article Expressed. With partitives, the definite article is usually expressed.

Nous avons des livres. We have some books.
Les enfants mangent du pain. Children eat bread.
Ils achètent[1] **des pommes et des oranges.** They buy apples and oranges.
Il boit du café et du lait. He drinks coffee and milk.

NOTE. The partitive construction is **de** + an inclusive noun. The latter requires the article (see **124**), which for this reason appears with partitives also.

136. Article Omitted. The article is omitted with partitives in the following cases:

1. Usually in negative sentences.

Je n'ai pas de pain. I have no bread.
Il ne boit pas de vin. He does not drink wine.
Nous n'avons pas de plumes. We have no pens.

2. After words of quantity.

J'ai peu de temps. I have little time.
Il a beaucoup d'argent. He has a great deal of money.
Combien de plumes avez-vous? How many pens have you?

NOTE. After **bien**, *much*, the article is expressed.
J'ai bien du temps. I have plenty of time.

3. When the noun is preceded by an adjective.

J'ai de belles fleurs. I have some beautiful flowers.

[1] For the grave **è** in this word, see **513** and compare **préfèrent** in **139, 16.**

NOTE. This rule does not apply when the adjective and noun form a virtual compound denoting a single idea. **J'ai acheté des petits pois.** I bought some green peas. **Il y avait des jeunes gens à cette soirée.** There were some young men at this party.

137. *Some* and *any* not followed by a noun and referring to what precedes, are translated by **en** (*of it, of them*) placed before the verb.

J'ai des livres. I have some books.
Vous n'en avez pas. You haven't any.
Vous en avez. You have some.

138. VOCABULARY

apporter [apɔrte] to bring
beurre *m.* [bœːr] butter
bonjour *m.* [bɔ̃ʒuːr] good morning
chaise *f.* [ʃɛːz] chair
chocolat *m.* [ʃɔkɔla] chocolate
cinq [sɛ̃ːk] five
couvert *m.* [kuvɛːr] place at table
déjeuner *m.* [deʒœne] luncheon
déjeuner [deʒœne] to breakfast, lunch
descendre [desɑ̃ːdr] to go down
matin *m.* [matɛ̃] morning
œuf *m.* [œf]; *pl.* œufs [ø] egg
pour [pur] for
préférer [prefere] to prefer
premier [prəmje] first
repas *m.* [rəpɑ] meal
serviette *f.* [sɛrvjɛt] napkin
tasse *f.* [tɑːs] cup
avoir faim [avwaːr fɛ̃] to be hungry
café au lait *m.* [kafe o lɛ] coffee with milk
petit déjeuner *m.* [pəti deʒœne] breakfast
petit pain *m.* [pəti pɛ̃] roll (*of bread*)
salle à manger *f.* [sal a mɑ̃ʒe] dining room

EXERCISES

139. 1. Le petit déjeuner est le premier repas de la journée. 2. Déjeunez-vous tous les jours? 3. Charles et Jean ont toujours faim le matin. 4. Ils déjeunent tous les jours. 5. Ils descendent et ils entrent dans la salle à manger. 6. Ils ne sont pas souvent en retard. 7. Ils saluent leur père, leur mère et Marie. 8. Bonjour, ma mère, bonjour, mon père, bonjour, ma sœur! 9. Bonjour, mes enfants! 10. Nous sommes cinq et il y a cinq couverts. 11. Nous avons assez[1] de chaises. 12. Il y a des couteaux et des serviettes sur la table. 13. Que mange-t-on[2] au petit déjeuner? 14. Marie aime le chocolat et les petits pains avec du beurre. 15. Elle n'aime pas le café. 16. Monsieur et madame Thomas préfèrent le café au lait. 17. Ils mangent du pain, du beurre et des œufs. 18. Apportez du chocolat, du pain et du beurre pour Charles. 19. Il n'en a pas.

[1] *enough.* [2] Sec. **222.**

140. 1. What do you study? 2. Do you go to school in the afternoon? 3. Do you study your lessons in the evening? 4. Charles plays tennis in the afternoon. 5. Mary plays the piano in the evening. 6. They are hungry every day. 7. They are always on time for luncheon and dinner. 8. They are not on time every day for breakfast. 9. We are going into the dining room. 10. Here is a table with five places. 11. Have you a napkin? 12. Here are some.[1] 13. Do you like coffee with milk? 14. Do not children prefer chocolate? 15. Children like bread and butter. 16. Have you some bread and eggs? 17. Yes, I have some. 18. I have no butter. 19. Here is some chocolate.

141. Oral. 1. Charles is hungry. 2. He is going into the dining room. 3. He is not behind time. 4. I am eating breakfast with Charles. 5. What have we for breakfast? 6. In France you have coffee and rolls. 7. Here are bread and butter. 8. We have coffee and chocolate and milk and eggs. 9. I am fond of bread and butter. 10. Charles prefers rolls. 11. We have some eggs and coffee with milk. 12. I have no napkin. 13. You have no bread. 14. Mary has no chocolate. 15. Here is some. 16. We have some bread and butter.

142. Conversation.

a. 1. Combien de repas y a-t-il?
2. Déjeunez-vous tous les jours?
3. Que mangez-vous au petit déjeuner?
4. Que mange Marie au petit déjeuner?
5. Aime-t-elle le chocolat?
6. Est-ce que Charles mange du pain et du beurre au petit déjeuner?
7. Que mangez-vous à dîner (*dinner*)?
8. Avez-vous faim le matin?
9. Où déjeunez-vous?
10. Êtes-vous toujours à l'heure?
11. À quelle heure descendez-vous dans la salle à manger le matin?
12. Y a-t-il assez de serviettes?
13. Qui déjeune dans la salle à manger?

b. The members of the class are to ask similar questions of one another.

LESSON IX

143. Number. The plural of adjectives is formed in the same way as that of nouns (see **102**).

[1] In position **en** precedes **voici** and **voilà**. It is a personal pronoun with a variety of meanings. (See **221**); here it has a possessive sense.

144. Gender. The feminine of adjectives is regularly formed by adding **e** to the masculine singular: **grand, grande, petit, petite.**

145. Exceptions. 1. Adjectives ending in **e** in the masculine remain unchanged in the feminine.

Le jeune homme, the young man. **La jeune fille,** the young girl.

2. The following adjectives have two forms for the masculine singular, the second (that given in parenthesis) being used before masculines beginning with a vowel or mute **h**:

beau (bel) belle, beautiful
nouveau (nouvel) nouvelle, new
mou (mol) molle, soft
fou (fol) folle foolish
vieux (vieil) vieille, old

Observe that the masculine form in **l** gives the feminine.

3. Other irregularities:

actif [aktif]	**active** [aktiːv]	active
bas [bɑ]	**basse** [bɑːs]	low
gros [gro]	**grosse** [groːs]	big
bon [bɔ̃]	**bonne** [bɔn]	good
cruel [kryɛl]	**cruelle** [kryɛl]	cruel
gentil [ʒɑ̃ti]	**gentille** [ʒɑ̃tiːj]	nice
ancien [ɑ̃sjɛ̃]	**ancienne** [ɑ̃sjɛn]	ancient
flatteur [flatœːr]	**flatteuse** [flatøːz]	flattering
heureux [œrø]	**heureuse** [œrøːz]	happy
cher [ʃɛːr]	**chère** [ʃɛːr]	dear
sec [sɛk]	**sèche** [sɛʃ]	dry
long [lɔ̃]	**longue** [lɔ̃ːg]	long
blanc [blɑ̃]	**blanche** [blɑ̃ːʃ]	white

146. Agreement. Adjectives agree in gender and number with the nouns which they qualify.

La robe blanche, the white dress.
Les robes blanches, the white dresses.

147. Position. 1. The attributive adjective generally follows its noun. When the adjective follows the substantive, it may be an intellectual epithet, marking out a special class within the general class named by the substantive. For example, in the phrase, **une table ronde,** the adjective **ronde** calls attention to the fact that there are tables of different shapes and specifies a particular one.

Other examples are:

Un livre français, a French book.
Un roi savant, a learned king.
Une rose rouge, a red rose.
Un chapeau noir, a black hat.
Un citoyen américain, an American citizen.

2. The following adjectives of very common use generally precede:

beau, beautiful
bon, good
grand, large
petit, small
long, long
moindre, less
vieux, old
sot, foolish
court, short
jeune, young
gros, big
joli, pretty
mauvais, bad
meilleur, better
vilain, ugly
pire, worse

3. In a large number of cases the position of the adjective is determined by euphony and the general rhythm of the sentence.

Une épouvantable catastrophe, a frightful catastrophe.
Un cri épouvantable, a frightful cry.

DRILL EXERCISE

148. 1. Form the feminine of **petit, jeune, actif, heureux, nouveau, ancien, cher, sec.**

2. Why is the adjective placed after the noun in phrases like **une table ronde, un roi savant, un livre français?**

149. VOCABULARY

addition *f.* [adisjõ] bill (*in restaurant*)
argent *m.* [arʒã] money
assez [ase] enough
beaucoup [boku] much, many
bifteck *m.* [biftɛk] beefsteak
café *m.* [kafe] café, restaurant
commander [kɔmãde] to order
délicieux [delisjø] good, delicious
désirer [dezire] to desire
excellent [ɛkselã] fine, excellent
fromage *m.* [frɔmaːʒ] cheese
garçon *m.* [garsõ] boy, waiter
ici [isi] here
payer [peje] to pay, pay for
poisson *m.* [pwasõ] fish
trouver [truve] to find
y [i] there

carte du jour *f.* [kart dy ʒuːr] bill of fare
'haricots verts *m.* [ariko vɛːr] string beans
ne . . . plus [nə ply] no more, any more
petits pois *m.* [pəti pwɑ] green peas
s'il vous plaît [s il vu plɛ] if you please
près de [prɛ də] near
très bien [trɛbjẽ] very well

EXERCISES

150. 1. Nous sommes en retard. Déjeunons dans un café aujourd'hui. 2. Je n'ai pas d'argent. 3. J'en ai, j'en ai assez. 4. Est-ce qu'il y a de bons cafés près d'ici? 5. Voici un café excellent. Entrons-y.[1] 6. Très bien! J'ai faim. 7. Voici une petite table. 8. Regardons la carte du jour; que désirez-vous, du poisson ou du bifteck? 9. Du bifteck, s'il vous plaît. 10. Préférez-vous le bifteck au poisson? 11. Je préfère le poisson. 12. Est-ce qu'il y a des haricots verts? 13. Oui, il y en a. 14. Il y a des haricots verts et des petits pois. 15. Commandons-en.[2] 16. Très bien! J'aime beaucoup les petits pois. 17. Vous n'avez plus de beurre. 18. Je n'en désire plus. 19. Comment trouvez-vous le bifteck? 20. Je le trouve délicieux. 21. Désirez-vous du fromage? 22. S'il vous plaît. 23. Garçon, apportez deux tasses de café et l'addition.

151. 1. Do you often have luncheon at a café? 2. There is a good café near my house. 3. It [3] is not large. 4. The dining room is small and pretty. 5. Let's go there today. 6. There it is.[4] 7. Let's go into the dining room. 8. Here is a small table. 10. What do you wish for luncheon? 11. Here is the bill of fare. 12. Are you fond of fish, beefsteak, string beans, bread and butter, coffee, and cheese? 13. Waiter, bring some fish. 14. We prefer fish to beefsteak for luncheon. 15. Have you some string beans? 16. We wish some cheese and two cups of black coffee. 17. Have you French and American cheese? Do you like cheese with coffee for luncheon? 18. Waiter, bring the bill.

152. Oral. 1. I have luncheon every day. 2. We are having luncheon today at a café. 3. The dining room is small and pretty. 4. We are finishing our luncheon. 5. I wish some French cheese. 6. Waiter, have you French cheese? 7. Yes, sir, here is some. 8. We wish some coffee. 9. Do you like black coffee? 10. The waiter is bringing coffee with milk. 11. Waiter, bring the bill. 12. I am paying the bill to the waiter. 13. I have enough money. 14. We are finishing a good luncheon.

153. Conversation.

1. Est-ce que nous sommes près de la maison?
2. Quelle (*what*) heure est-il?

[1] **Y** follows the affirmative imperative.

[2] **En** follows the affirmative imperative.

[3] *Use* **il. Ils, elle, elles, le, la, les,** refer to things as well as persons (see **85, 8; 155**).

[4] **La voilà.**

3. Déjeunez-vous souvent au café?
4. Avez-vous de l'argent?
5. Où est la table?
6. Désirez-vous du poisson?
7. Quel légume (vegetable) préférez-vous?
8. Est-ce que vous aimez les petits pois?
9. Comment (*how*) trouvez-vous le fromage?
10. Désirez-vous du café?
11. Qui (*who*) apporte l'addition?
12. Aimez-vous le poisson?
13. Préférez-vous le poisson au bifteck?

LESSON X

154. Demonstrative Adjective.

1. The demonstrative adjective **ce**, *this, that,* has the following forms:

Singular		*Plural*
m. **ce** [sə] before a consonant		
m. **cet** [sɛt] before a vowel or **h** mute		
f. **cette** [sɛt]		**ces** [se]
ce livre	this book	**cette plume** this (that) pen
cet homme	this (that) man	**ces plumes** these (those) pens

2. When a demonstrative adjective modifies two or more nouns it is repeated with each one.

Ces livres et ces plumes, these books and pens.

3. To distinguish *this* from *that* **-ci** and **-là** are added to the noun.

Je n'aime pas ce crayon-ci. I do not like this pencil.
Donnez-moi ce crayon-là. Give me that pencil.

155. Object Pronouns.

1. Personal pronouns of the third person used as direct objects have the same forms as the definite article.

le [lə], *him, it* (**l'** before a vowel or **h** mute).
la [la], *her, it* (**l'** before a vowel or **h** mute).
les [le], *them.*

2. These direct objects stand immediately before the verb except in the affirmative imperative.

Je le regarde. I am looking at him.
Nous la regardons. We are looking at her.

Vous les regardez. You are looking at them.
Je l'aime. I like him (*or* her).
Voici une table, je la regarde. Here is a table, I am looking at it.
Voici un livre, je le ferme. Here is a book, I am closing it.
Fermez-le. Close it.

NOTE. Observe that **le** and **la** have the same gender as the nouns they refer to.

3. With **voici** and **voilà**. Personal pronoun objects precede **voici** and **voilà**.

Le voilà, there he is. **La voici**, here she is. **Les voici**, here they are.

156. Cardinal Numerals.

1. **un, une** [œ̃, yn]	11. **onze** [õːz]
2. **deux** [dø]	12. **douze** [duːz]
3. **trois** [trwɑ]	13. **treize** [trɛːz]
4. **quatre** [katr]	14. **quatorze** [katɔrz]
5. **cinq** [sɛ̃ːk]	15. **quinze** [kɛ̃ːz]
6. **six** [sis]	16. **seize** [sɛːz]
7. **sept** [sɛt]	17. **dix-sept** [dis sɛt]
8. **huit** [ɥit]	18. **dix-huit** [diz ɥit]
9. **neuf** [nœf]	19. **dix-neuf** [diz nœf]
10. **dix** [dis]	20. **vingt** [vɛ̃]

DRILL EXERCISE

157. 1. Is there any resemblance between the use of **cet** and that of the adjective **bel**? When does **bel** replace **beau**? Compare other double forms like **nouveau, nouvelle, mou, molle,** etc.

2. What is the French for *these books and pens*? How do the French and English idioms differ?

3. *Translate into French:*

This apple; that apple; these apples; those apples; this pen; that pen; these pens; this pencil; that pencil; these pencils; those pencils; this orange; that orange; these oranges; those oranges. I like him; we like her; he likes them; you are listening to him; we listen to them; you listen to her.

158. VOCABULARY

âge *m.* [aːʒ] age
aussi [osi] also
bonne *f.* [bɔn] maid
croissant [1] *m.* [krwɑsɑ̃] roll (*of bread*)
dessert *m.* [desɛːr] dessert
dîner *m.* [dine] dinner
dîner [dine] to dine, have dinner
midi *m.* [midi] noon, 12 o'clock
orange *f.* [ɔrɑ̃ːʒ] orange
pomme *f.* [pɔm] apple
potage *m.* [pɔtaːʒ] soup
quand [kɑ̃] when
servi [sɛrvi] served, ready
très [trɛ] very

[1] The word means *crescent*, and so (as here) a crescent-shaped **petit pain**.

à six heures [a siz œːr] at six o'clock
en famille [ɑ̃ famiːj] at home
œuf à la coque *m.* [œf a la kɔk] soft boiled egg
nom de famille *m.* [nɔ̃ də famiːj] family name
petit nom *m.* [pəti nɔ̃] given name
tous les deux [tu le dø] both
voulez-vous [vule vu] do you wish, will you have?
un peu de [œ̃ pø də] a little, some

EXERCISES

159. 1. Charles est grand. 2. Son petit nom est Charles et son nom de famille est Thomas. 3. Marie est petite pour son âge. 4. Quand le petit déjeuner est servi, ils descendent tous les deux. 5. Ils entrent dans la salle à manger. 6. Le père et la mère entrent aussi dans la salle à manger. 7. Puis tous les quatre déjeunent en famille. 8. La bonne apporte deux tasses de chocolat et deux tasses de café au lait. 9. Les enfants aiment le chocolat, les œufs à la coque et les croissants avec du beurre. 10. Le père et la mère aiment le café au lait, les petits pains et le poisson. 11. Voulez-vous un peu de chocolat? 12. Les petits pains sont très bons. 13. En voulez-vous? 14. Que mangez-vous au petit déjeuner? 15. Aimez-vous ce beurre? 16. Je n'aime pas cette pomme-ci; je préfère cette pomme-là. 17. Après le petit déjeuner, toute la famille entre dans le salon et Marie joue du piano. 18. Plus tard les enfants vont à l'école. 19. Ils retournent à la maison le soir. 20. Ils dînent en famille.

160. 1. Mr. and Mrs. Thomas have two children. 2. Charles is not very tall. 3. Mary is tall for her age. 4. They have a pretty little house. 5. They have luncheon every day at noon, and dinner at six o'clock. 6. In America we often dine at noon. 7. When we have luncheon at noon, we dine at six o'clock. 8. Luncheon is ready at twelve o'clock. 9. The children find these rolls very good when they eat them with butter. 10. Their father and mother are fond of soup and fish. 11. Dinner is ready at six o'clock. 12. This table has five places. 13. That chair is for Mary. 14. I find this bread very good. 15. I eat it every day at luncheon and dinner. 16. Will you have some of this fish? 17. Charles finds it delicious. 18. What will you have for dessert?

161. Oral. 1. This evening we are dining at home. 2. There are five of us.[1] 3. We are dining in this pretty dining room. 4. It is not large. 5. How do you find the soup and the fish? 6. Are you fond of

[1] Literally, *we are five.*

them for dinner? 7. There are apples and oranges for dessert. 8. The maid is bringing them. 9. Here they are. 10. Will you have some? 11. Charles and Mary prefer oranges to apples. 12. They are looking at those fine oranges. 13. Do you wish some for dessert? 14. I prefer these apples to those oranges.

162. Conversation.

1. Est-ce que Charles est grand ou petit?
2. Quel (*what*) est son nom de famille?
3. Est-ce que Marie est grande?
4. Quand les enfants descendent-ils?
5. Où vont-ils?
6. Qu'apporte la bonne?
7. Qu'est-ce que les enfants aiment?
8. Que mangent le père et la mère au petit déjeuner?
9. Où vont les enfants après le petit déjeuner?
10. Que mangez-vous au petit déjeuner?
11. Déjeunez-vous à midi?
12. À quelle heure dînez-vous?

LESSON XI

163. Present Perfect of *parler, finir, vendre.*

j'ai parlé [ʒ e parle] **tu as parlé** [ty a parle] **il a parlé** [il a parle]	I have spoken, I spoke
nous avons parlé [nuz avɔ̃ parle] **vous avez parlé** [vuz ave parle] **ils ont parlé** [ilz ɔ̃ parle]	we have spoken, we spoke
j'ai fini [ʒ e fini] **tu as fini** [ty a fini] **il a fini** [il a fini]	I have finished, I finished
nous avons fini [nuz avɔ̃ fini] **vous avez fini** [vuz ave fini] **ils ont fini** [ilz ɔ̃ fini]	we have finished, we finished
j'ai vendu [ʒ e vãdy] **tu as vendu** [ty a vãdy] **il a vendu** [il a vãdy]	I have sold, I sold
nous avons vendu [nuz avɔ̃ vãdy] **vous avez vendu** [vuz ave vãdy] **ils ont vendu** [ilz ɔ̃ vãdy]	we have sold, we sold

DRILL EXERCISE

164. 1. This tense is formed by the use of **avoir** as an auxiliary with the past participle of the principal verb. **Avoir** has its own independent use, but it may also, as here, be used in the formation of a new tense. Give examples of auxiliaries in English.

2. The past participle has a special form for each conjugation, as **donné, fini, vendu.**

3. What termination is added in each of these cases to the verb stem?

4. Form the past participles of **lever, porter, écouter, entendre, rendre, répondre, bâtir, punir, embellir.**

5. The past participles of **avoir** and **être** are respectively **eu** [y] and **été,** the latter being invariable.

165. Agreement of Past Participle.

1. It is unchanged when no direct object of the verb is expressed, or when the direct object follows the participle.

Nous avons mangé. We have eaten.
J'ai perdu la plume. I have lost the pen.
Il a rencontré deux amis. He met two friends.

2. The participle agrees in gender and number with the direct object when the latter precedes the verb.

Où est la plume? Je l'ai perdue. Where is the pen? I lost it.
Où sont vos livres? Je les ai perdus. Where are your books? I lost them.
Les fleurs que j'ai achetées. The flowers which I bought.

NOTE. The past participle, like the adjective, has a special form for the feminine gender and one for the plural number. The feminine is formed by adding **e** and the plural by adding **s,** as **donné, donnée, donnés, données.**

166. Uses of Present Perfect.

1. It denotes what has happened, being the equivalent of the English present perfect tense with the auxiliary *have.*

J'ai fini mon ouvrage. I have finished my work.
Il a vendu sa maison. He has sold his house.

2. In conversation and in written language of familiar style, it is the equivalent of the English past tense, denoting what happened.

Il a quitté Paris l'été dernier. He left Paris last summer.
J'ai trouvé les journaux. I found the newspapers.
Il a écouté le professeur. He listened to the teacher.

167. VOCABULARY

année *f.* [ane] year
acheter [aʃte] to buy
cher [ʃɛːr] **chère** [ʃɛːr] dear, costly
douzaine *f.* [duzɛn] dozen
emporter [ɑ̃pɔrte] to carry away
fruit *m.* [frɥi] fruit
hier [jɛːr] yesterday
légume *m.* [legym] vegetable
livre *f.* [liːvr] pound
marché *m.* [marʃe] market
nouveau [nuvo] new
ou [u] or
panier [panje] basket
paysan *m.* [peizɑ̃] countryman, peasant
pomme de terre *f.* [pɔm də tɛːr] potato
remarquer [rəmarke] to notice
rencontrer [rɑ̃kɔ̃tre] to meet
trente [trɑ̃ːt] thirty
volaille *f.* [vɔlɑːj] poultry, fowl
sou *m.* [su] cent
ville *f.* [vil] town, city
vu [vy] seen (*past participle of* **voir**)

à bon marché [a bɔ̃ marʃe] cheaply
aller aux provisions [ale o prɔvizjɔ̃] to go marketing
marchand des quatre saisons *m.* [marʃɑ̃ de katrə sɛzɔ̃] fruit and vegetable peddler

EXERCISES

168. 1. Il y a deux marchés dans notre ville. 2. Il y a un nouveau marché près d'ici. 3. Allons-y regarder les fruits, les légumes, les poissons et la volaille. 4. Hier nous avons acheté des pommes de terre et des petits pois à notre marché. 5. Les fruits ne sont pas chers cette année. 6. Ce matin, j'ai acheté des oranges à trente sous la douzaine. 7. Remarquez les paniers aux provisions. 8. Notre bonne a des fruits et des légumes dans son panier. 9. Elle va aux provisions tous les matins. 10. Je l'ai vue hier au marché. 11. Elle a emporté des légumes dans son panier. 12. Je vais au marché tous les deux jours. 13. Quels fruits préférez-vous? 14. Je préfère les oranges et les pommes. 15. Les paysans apportent leurs légumes et leurs fruits et ils les vendent au marché. 16. Ils les vendent à[1] la livre. 17. Avez-vous vu des marchands des quatre saisons? 18. Ils vendent des légumes et des fruits dans les rues.

169. 1. The servant goes to market. 2. She buys fruits, vegetables, and poultry and carries them in a basket. 3. She buys them by the pound. 4. The peasants brought them to the market and sold them by the pound. 5. Have you ever bought fruit at ten cents a pound? 6. Today I bought some fish at the market at twenty cents a pound. 7. Fish is not very dear. 8. I have always bought poultry cheaply on Saturdays. 9. Have you noticed the delicious fruits in our market? Have you bought any? 10. I bought some today. 11. There are large markets in many American cities. 12. Have you seen them? 13. In France every town has a market.

[1] In a distributive sense, *by*.

170. Oral. 1. Where are you going this morning? 2. I am going to the market. 3. Where is the market? 4. There is a new market near here. 5. Have you seen it? 6. I have not seen it. 7. Is it large or small? 8. In a small town there is always a small market. 9. I have seen large markets in large cities. 10. Did you meet Charles and Mary at the market? 11. I did not meet them, but I met their mother there. 12. The servant had a basket. 13. They looked at the vegetables and fruits. 14. Did they buy any? 15. They bought some apples and green beans. 16. Vegetables are not very dear. 17. They bought potatoes at two cents a pound.

171. Conversation.

1. Est-ce qu'il y a un marché dans votre ville?
2. Est-ce que votre marché est grand ou petit?
3. Est-ce que vous y allez souvent?
4. Qu'apportent les paysans au marché?
5. Est-ce que les paysans vendent leurs fruits à la livre?
6. Avez-vous visité le marché?
7. Racontez ce que vous avez vu.
8. Avez-vous vu des fruits?
9. Avez-vous vu des légumes?
10. Est-ce que vous allez aux provisions?
11. Aimez-vous tous les fruits?
12. Avez-vous vu des marchands des quatre saisons?
13. Que vendent-ils?
14. Quels fruits préférez-vous?

LESSON XII

172. Present Perfect with Auxiliary *être*.

je suis arrivé (arrivée) [ʒə sɥiz arive]	I have arrived, I arrived
tu es arrivé (arrivée) [ty ɛz arive]	
il est arrivé [il ɛt arive]	
elle est arrivée [ɛl ɛt arive]	
nous sommes arrivés (arrivées) [nu sɔmz arive]	we have arrived, we arrived
vous êtes arrivés[1] **(arrivées)** [vuz ɛːtz arive]	
ils (elles) sont arrivés (arrivées) [il sɔ̃t arive]	
je suis descendu [ʒə sɥi desɑ̃dy]	I have descended, I descended
tu es descendu [ty ɛ desɑ̃dy]	
il (elle) est descendu (descendue) [il ɛ desɑ̃dy]	

[1] When **vous** refers to one person, the past participle is singular.

nous sommes descendus [nu sɔm desɑ̃dy] we have descended, we descended
vous êtes descendus [vuz ɛt desɑ̃dy]
ils (elles) sont descendus (descendues) [il sɔ̃ desɑ̃dy]

DRILL EXERCISE

173. 1. Notice the change that takes place in the participle when the subject is plural and also when it is feminine.

2. These changes are due to the agreement of the participle. Could you make a rule for this agreement when **être** is the auxiliary?

3. Is there any difference in the English translation of the present perfect when **être** (instead of **avoir**) is used as the auxiliary?

4. What change does the participle undergo when **avoir** is the auxiliary? (See **165, 2.**)

5. Contrast the agreement of the past participle with **avoir** and **être** respectively as auxiliaries.

174. **Être** is required as auxiliary with certain verbs denoting condition or a change of position. In the following list the past participle is given in parenthesis.

aller (allé) to go
arriver (arrivé) to arrive
devenir (devenu) to become
entrer (entré) to enter
mourir (mort) to die
naître (né) to be born
partir (parti) to set out, depart
retourner (retourné) to return, go back
revenir (revenu) to come again, return
sortir (sorti) to go out
venir (venu) to come

1. Write the present perfect tense of **aller, entrer, venir.**

175. The English past tense with *have* is translated by the French present followed by **depuis,** *since,* when the speaker refers to an interval of time beginning in the past and extending into the present.

Je demeure ici depuis un an. I have lived here a year.
Il étudie l'histoire depuis deux ans. He has studied history two years.
Depuis quand demeurez-vous ici? How long have you lived here?
Depuis quand étudiez-vous l'histoire? How long have you studied history?
Il est ici depuis une semaine. He has been here a week.

176. Personal Pronouns as Object. Object pronouns of the first and second person are **me,** *me;* **nous,** *us;* **te,** *you, thee;* **vous,** *you.* They stand directly before the verb, except with the affirmative imperative.

Il me regarde. He is looking at me.
Il nous voit tous les jours. He sees us every day.
Il vous a rencontré hier. He met you yesterday.

177. *Translate into French:*

1. He has set out. 2. They have set out. 3. She has gone out. 4. She has come. 5. We enter. 6. They (*feminine*) went out. 7. We set out. 8. She came back. 9. They looked at us. 10. He is listening to me. 11. They are listening to you. 12. I met you yesterday. 13. You met us today at the market.

178. VOCABULARY

an *m.* [ɑ̃] year
arbre fruitier *m.* [arbrə fʀɥitje] fruit tree
carotte *f.* [karɔt] carrot
cerise *f.* [səriːz] cherry
chez [ʃe] at the home of
cousin *m.* [kuzɛ̃] cousin
cousine *f.* [kuzin] cousin
cultiver [kyltive] to cultivate
fleur *f.* [flœːr] flower
habiter [abite] to live in
jardin *m.* [ʒardɛ̃] garden
mûr [myːr] ripe
oncle *m.* [ɔ̃ːkl] uncle
où [u] where
planter [plɑ̃te] to plant
poire *f.* [pwaːr] pear
pommier *m.* [pɔmje] apple tree
tante *f.* [tɑ̃ːt] aunt
travailler [travaje] to work
voisin *m.* [vwazɛ̃] neighbor

EXERCISES

179. 1. Charles est chez son oncle. 2. Il est arrivé à l'heure. 3. Il a salué sa tante, son oncle, ses cousines et ses cousins. 4. Après le déjeuner, ils sont entrés dans le jardin. 5. Ils ont regardé les arbres et les fleurs. 6. Le jardin est très beau. 7. On y a planté des arbres fruitiers. 8. Les pommes sont mûres. 9. Elles sont mûres depuis deux semaines. 10. Charles les aime. 11. Les poires mûrissent. 12. Hier nous avons passé une heure dans le jardin. 13. Mon voisin a un grand jardin et une belle maison. 14. Il les a depuis dix ans. 15. Il travaille tous les jours dans son jardin. 16. Il y a planté des carottes et des pommes de terre. 17. Charles est chez son oncle depuis dix jours. 18. Sa tante est la sœur de sa mère. 19. Elle habite un village. 20. Elle y habite depuis dix ans.

180. 1. Yesterday I went to the market and bought some cherries. 2. I bought them cheaply, but did not carry them in a basket. 3. At the market where I bought the cherries I met my uncle. 4. He is the brother of my father, and has been living in our town for twenty years. 5. He has a fine house and garden. 6. He has had this house and garden for three years. 7. He has planted trees and flowers in the garden.

8. Have you seen this garden? 9. I saw it yesterday with Charles. 10. We entered and looked at the trees and flowers and vegetables. 11. The garden is very pretty and we spent an hour there. 12. My uncle has been cultivating this garden for three years.

181. Oral. 1. Have you a garden? 2. How long have you had it? 3. Have you had it three years? 4. My neighbor also has a garden. 5. He has had it for five years. 6. Charles saw us yesterday in the garden. 7. The cherries are ripe. 8. They have been ripe for a week. 9. The apples are not yet (**encore**) ripe. 10. We went to the apple tree and looked at them. 11. Charles found the cherries delicious.

182. Conversation.

1. Avez-vous un oncle?
2. Où demeure-t-il?
3. Avez-vous des cousins?
4. Où demeurent-ils?
5. Est-ce que vous allez souvent chez vos cousins?
6. Avez-vous un jardin?
7. Est-ce que votre jardin est grand ou petit?
8. Que trouvez-vous dans votre jardin?
9. Y travaillez-vous souvent?
10. Depuis quand demeurez-vous ici?
11. Depuis quand étudiez-vous le français?

LESSON XIII

183. Present Indicative of Reflexive Verbs.

je me lève[1] [ʒə mə lɛːv]	I rise (raise myself)
tu te lèves [ty tə lɛːv]	
il se lève [il sə lɛːv]	
nous nous levons [nu nu ləvɔ̃]	we rise
vous vous levez [vu vu ləve]	
ils se lèvent [il sə lɛːv]	
je me réjouis [ʒə mə reʒwi]	I rejoice (enjoy myself)
tu te réjouis [ty tə reʒwi]	
il se réjouit [il sə reʒwi]	
nous nous réjouissons [nu nu reʒwisɔ̃]	we rejoice
vous vous réjouissez [vu vu reʒwise]	
ils se réjouissent [il sə reʒwis]	

[1] For grave **e**, see **513**

je me perds [ʒə mə pɛːr]	I lose myself
tu te perds [ty tə pɛːr]	
il se perd [il sə pɛːr]	
nous nous perdons [nu nu pɛrdɔ̃]	we lose ourselves
vous vous perdez [vu vu pɛrde]	
ils se perdent [il sə pɛrd]	

DRILL EXERCISE

184. 1. Observe the two pronouns in each person of the tense. Do they refer to the same person or to different persons?

2. Which of the two pronouns in each case is reflexive? What is the reflexive pronoun that refers to the first person? To the second person? To the third person?

3. The subject being the one who acts, where does the action terminate in reflexive verbs? Why is such action called reflexive?

4. How are object pronouns rendered in English when they are reflexive? Give examples.

5. What is meant in general by conjugating a verb reflexively?

6. Conjugate negatively the present indicative of **se coucher,** *to go to bed.*

7. In the affirmative imperative, the reflexive pronoun follows the verb. In the negative imperative it precedes. Give an example of each, and note that in the second singular of the affirmative imperative **te** becomes **toi,** as **lève-toi.**

185. Compound Tenses. The compound tenses of reflexive verbs are formed with the auxiliary **être.**

Je me suis levé. I got (*or* have got) up.
Je me suis réjoui. I rejoiced *or* have rejoiced.

186. Agreement of Past Participle.

1. The past participle of a reflexive verb agrees with the reflexive pronoun if the latter is a direct object.

Elle s'est blessée. She hurt herself.
Elle s'est flattée. She flattered herself.

2. When the reflexive pronoun is an indirect object and not preceded by a direct object, the participle remains unchanged.

Elle s'est trouvé des livres. She has found some books for herself.

3. When the reflexive is an indirect object and is preceded by a direct object, the participle agrees with the latter.

Voici les lettres que ces hommes se sont écrites. Here are the letters which these men wrote to one another.

187. Reflexive pronouns may be used in a reciprocal sense.[1]

Ils se flattent. They flatter one another (*or* each other).
Nous nous parlons. We speak to one another.

188. The reflexive conjugation often takes the place of the passive voice, which is much less frequently employed in French than in English. Reflexive verbs may be regarded as one means of avoiding the passive.

Ce journal se publie à New York. This newspaper is published at New York.
Le blé se vend. The wheat is sold.

189. VOCABULARY

alors [alɔːr] then
ami *m.* [ami] friend
après [aprɛ] after
avant [avɑ̃] before
chapeau *m.* [ʃapo] hat
se coucher [sə kuʃe] to go to bed
dormi [dɔrmi] (*p. p. of* **dormir**, to sleep)
ensemble [ɑ̃sɑ̃ːbl] together
été *m.* [ete] summer
s'éveiller [s eveje] to wake up, awake
s'habiller [s abije] to dress, put on one's clothes
hiver *m.* [iveːr] winter
jusqu'à [ʒyska] until
longtemps [lɔ̃tɑ̃] long, long while
ne . . . plus [nə . . . ply] no more
nuit *f.* [nɥi] night
on [ɔ̃] one, we
ôter [ote] to take off
rentrer [rɑ̃tre] to return home, come back
samedi *m.* [samdi] Saturday
vite [vit] quickly

de bonne heure [də bɔn œːr] early
être au lit [ɛːtr o li] to be in bed
faire la grasse matinée [feːr la graːs matine] to sleep late
hier soir [jeːr swaːr] last night, last evening

EXERCISES

190. 1. Hier soir Charles s'est couché tard. 2. Il a passé la soirée chez un ami. 3. Il est rentré à dix heures et il s'est couché à onze heures. 4. Il a fait la grasse matinée. 5. Il s'est levé à dix heures. 6. Il s'est vite[2] habillé et il est descendu à la salle à manger. 7. Ses frères et ses sœurs se sont levés à six heures. 8. Son père et sa mère ont déjeuné à sept heures. 9. Ils se lèvent de bonne heure en été et en hiver. 10. À quelle heure vous êtes-vous couché? 11. Je me suis couché de bonne heure et je me suis levé à six heures. 12. Charles ne se couche pas toujours tard. 13. Vous couchez-vous de bonne heure? 14. Avez-vous

[1] The reflexive construction may be supplemented by the reciprocal phrase, **l'un l'autre**, *each other*, as in **ils se flattent l'un l'autre.**

[2] In compound tenses, adverbs usually come between the auxiliary and past participle. *For exceptions, see* **413, 1.**

bien dormi? 15. Je n'ai pas bien dormi. 16. Je me suis couché à neuf heures, mais je me suis éveillé à cinq heures. 17. Charles et Marie vont à l'école. 18. Ils sont toujours à l'heure. 19. Le samedi Charles travaille dans le jardin. 20. Il entre dans le jardin et il y travaille jusqu'à midi. 21. Toute la famille déjeune ensemble.

191. 1. I woke early this morning. 2. One wakes early in summer but late in winter. 3. Did you go to bed at six o'clock? 4. Charles and John do not go to bed before nine. 5. Last night they went to bed at eight, but they do not always go to bed early. 6. I went to bed at ten o'clock and slept well the whole night. 7. He has been in bed for two hours. 8. At what time did you go to bed? 9. Did you sleep well? 10. Did you get up at six o'clock this morning? 11. One rises early in summer and late in winter. 12. Charles' father and mother rise early in summer and in winter. 13. John and Charles do not always rise early. 14. Yesterday, they got up after seven o'clock. 15. When they waked, they got up quickly and dressed. 16. They went to school, but did not arrive on time. 17. Why are you late at school? 18. We slept well and did not wake early. 19. Be on time tomorrow. 20. Take off your hat when you enter the house.

192. Oral. 1. Wake up. 2. You have slept long enough. 3. Let us get up. 4. I am getting up and am putting on my clothes. 5. We are getting up early this morning because we are going to school today. 6. Go to bed early and get up early. 7. When you get up at six o'clock, you rise very early. 8. He arrives at school in time. 9. He does not sleep late. 10. One day Charles got up early. 11. He put on his clothes, ate his breakfast, and went to school. 12. He arrived at the school and entered the schoolroom. 13. He did not take off his hat. 14. The teacher and all the pupils looked at him. 15. Take off your hat. 16. And then Charles took off his hat.

193. Conversation.

1. À quelle heure Jean est-il rentré?
2. Où a-t-il passé la soirée?
3. À quelle heure s'est-il couché?
4. À quelle heure s'est-il levé?
5. Est-ce que ses frères et ses sœurs se sont levés tard?
6. À quelle heure son père et sa mère ont-ils déjeuné?
7. Se lèvent-ils tard en été?
8. Avez-vous bien dormi?
9. Où vont Charles et Marie?
10. Sont-ils en retard ou à l'heure?

11. Est-ce que Charles va à l'école le samedi ?
12. Où travaille-t-il ?

LESSON XIV

194. Past Descriptive of *parler, finir, vendre.*

		Endings
je parlais [ʒə parlɛ]	I spoke, was speaking	**–ais**
tu parlais [ty parlɛ]		**–ais**
il parlait [il parlɛ]		**–ait**
nous parlions [nu parljõ]	we spoke, were speaking	**–ions**
vous parliez [vu parlje]		**–iez**
ils parlaient [il parlɛ]		**–aient**
je finissais [ʒə finisɛ]	I finished, was finishing	**–ais**
tu finissais [ty finisɛ]		**–ais**
il finissait [il finisɛ]		**–ait**
nous finissions [nu finisjõ]	we finished, were finishing	**–ions**
vous finissiez [vu finisje]		**–iez**
ils finissaient [il finisɛ]		**–aient**
je vendais [ʒə vãdɛ]	I sold, was selling	**–ais**
tu vendais [ty vãdɛ]		**–ais**
il vendait [il vãdɛ]		**–ait**
nous vendions [nu vãdjõ]	we sold, were selling	**–ions**
vous vendiez [vu vãdje]		**–iez**
ils vendaient [il vãdɛ]		**–aient**

DRILL EXERCISE

195. 1. What do you notice about the terminations of this tense for all three verbs ?

2. Learn the terminations.

3. Notice that the endings are added directly to the stem. What is the stem of **finir** in this tense ? Does it appear in the present tense also ?

4. Write the past descriptive of **écouter,** *to listen;* **bâtir,** *to build,* and **perdre,** *to lose.*

5. Write the past descriptive of **se lever.**

6. **Avoir** and **être** have the same endings as the regular verbs. Add the endings to the stems **av–** and **et–**, thus: **j'avais, j'étais,** etc. Complete the tense. (See Appendix, **507, 508**).

196. Meaning of the Past Descriptive.

The past descriptive tense is used to indicate that an action or state is regarded as continuing through an indefinite period in the

past. The tense emphasizes continuance, the fact that the action or state is going on, not the beginning or end. It may be illustrated by an indefinite line. Accordingly, the past descriptive tense is used:

1. To describe a past action or state of indefinite duration.

Son père était négociant. His father was a merchant (*for an indefinite period*).
Il faisait très froid. It was very cold.

2. To describe a repeated or habitual action continuing through an indefinite period in the past.

Il se levait de bon matin. He used to rise early.
L'enfant jouait tous les matins. The child would play every morning.

3. To denote what was going on when something else took place.

J'écrivais lorsqu'il est entré. I was writing when he entered.

4. After **il y a . . . que, voici (voilà) . . . que, depuis, depuis quand?** and **depuis . . . que** with the value of the English pluperfect (see **175**).

Voilà un an qu'il voyageait. He had been traveling for a year.
Depuis quand demeuriez-vous à Paris? How long had you been living in Paris?

197. Position of Object Pronouns.

1. A transitive verb may be preceded by two object pronouns, one the indirect object with the meaning *to* or *for*, the other, the direct. In such cases, the indirect object precedes the direct except when both pronouns are of the third person.[1]

Je vous le donne. I give it to you.
Il me le donne. He gives it to me.
Ils le lui donnent. They give it to him (*or* to her).

2. The order of object pronouns with a negative imperative is the same as that indicated above.

Ne me le donnez pas. Do not give it to me.
Ne le lui donnez pas. Do not give it to him (*or* her).

3. Object pronouns follow an affirmative imperative, the direct object preceding the indirect.

Donnez-le-moi. Give it to me.
Donnez-le-lui. Give it to him (*or* her).[2]

198. *In the following sentences, identify and translate the tenses and point out the direct and indirect object pronouns:*

[1] The rule regarding the order of pronoun objects of the third person has an important exception: if the indirect object is reflexive, it precedes the direct, as in **il se le rappelle,** *he remembers it* (*he recalls it to himself.*)

[2] Indirect object forms are: **me, moi, te, toi, nous, vous, lui, leur** (*to them*), **se.**

1. Il me l'a donné hier. 2. L'élève écoutait le professeur. 3. Il nous l'a donné ce matin. 4. Donnez-le-moi. 5. Le professeur nous le répétait tous les jours. 6. Je parlais lorsqu'il est entré. 7. Il vous l'a donné hier. 8. Il se levait tous les matins à six heures. 9. Il se couchait toujours à dix heures. 10. Je le lui ai raconté ce matin. 11. Il nous l'a raconté hier.

199. VOCABULARY

s'appeler [saple] to be called
bientôt [bjẽto] soon
chemise *f.* [ʃəmiːz] shirt
cinquante [sẽkɑ̃ːt] fifty
comment [kɔmɑ̃] how
coûter [kute] to cost
demander [dəmɑ̃de] to ask, ask for
dernier [dɛrnje] last, latest
fils *m.* [fis] son
franc *m.* [frɑ̃] franc
fréquemment [frekamɑ̃] frequently
habit *m.* [abi] coat, *pl.* clothes
magasin *m.* [magazẽ] store, shop
marchandise *f.* [marʃɑ̃diːz] merchandise
mois *m.* [mwɑ] month
moment *m.* [mɔmɑ̃] moment
neuf, neuve [nœf, nœːv] new
paire *f.* [pɛːr] pair
pantalon *m.* [pɑ̃talɔ̃] trousers
pardessus *m.* [pardəsy] overcoat
payer [pɛje] (*3rd sing. pres. ind.* **paie** [pɛ] *or* **paye** [pɛ]) to pay, pay for
pris [pri] *past participle of* **prendre**, to take, buy (*of tickets*)
prix *m.* [pri] price
quel, quelle [kɛl] what?
quelquefois [kɛlkəfwa] sometimes
robe *f.* [rɔb] dress
si [si] if
soulier *m.* [sulje] shoe
tramway *m.* [tramwe] street car

avoir besoin de [avwar bəzwẽ də] to have need of, need
ce que [sə kə] that which, what
depuis quand [dəpɥi kɑ̃] how long?
faire des emplettes [fɛːr dez ɑ̃plɛt] to go shopping
il me va bien [il mə va bjẽ] it becomes me, fits me well
il y a deux ans [il j a døz ɑ̃] two years ago

EXERCISES

200. 1. Monsieur Thomas avait un fils. 2. Son fils s'appelait Charles. 3. Le petit nom du père était Guillaume. 4. Il habitait un village. 5. Il y demeurait depuis longtemps. 6. Il était négociant. 7. Il était négociant depuis vingt ans. 8. Il arrivait à son magasin tous les matins à huit heures, et il le fermait à six heures du soir. 9. Il vendait des souliers, des chapeaux et beaucoup d'autres choses. 10. Quelquefois il nous vendait ses marchandises bon marché, et quelquefois il nous les vendait cher. 11. Il parlait souvent de l'histoire de son magasin. 12. Il nous la racontait fréquemment. 13. Un jour nous sommes entrés dans son magasin. 14. J'avais besoin d'un pardessus et ma femme avait besoin d'un chapeau. 15. Monsieur Thomas nous a salués. 16. Puis il a demandé à ma femme ce qu'elle désirait. 17. Un chapeau, lui ré-

pond-elle. 18. En voici à la dernière mode. 19. Montrez-les-moi, s'il vous plaît. 20. Ma femme a acheté un chapeau et j'ai acheté un pardessus. 21. Je les ai payés, et nous sommes retournés à la maison.

201. 1. We were talking yesterday of clothes.[1] 2. Charles was in need of a new hat. 3. Mary wanted a new dress. 4. John needed a pair of shoes and a new coat. 5. I have worn this hat a year. 6. You have worn that overcoat two months. 7. I have worn these shoes six months. 8. I bought them six months ago. 9. We always bought hats, coats, trousers and shoes at[2] a store in our town. 10. Sometimes we bought them cheaply and sometimes they cost us dearly. 11. But let's buy a new hat for Charles, a new dress for Mary, and new shoes for John. 12. You were telling us, Charles, how long you have worn your hat. 13. I was looking at it a moment ago. 14. Where did you buy it and how long have you had it? 15. Here we are at the store. 16. We bought this hat, sir, a year ago in your store. 17. You sold it very cheaply. 18. Charles has worn it the whole year. 19. You also sold us shirts, coats, trousers, shoes and dresses. 20. I always bought shoes at your store. 21. I would come into your shop and say, « Good morning, sir! » 22. « How much does a pair of shoes cost today? » 23. You would reply, « Fifty francs, sir. » Shoes are not always sold cheaply.

202. Oral. 1. Yesterday we were buying some new clothes. 2. We used to buy clothes in a large city. 3. We were always looking for the good stores. 4. We would ask the price of a hat or coat or shirt. 5. How much does this shirt cost? 6. What is the price of these shoes? 7. How much does this hat cost? 8. One day Mary was buying a new hat. 9. She did not ask how much it cost. 10. She asked if it was becoming[3] to her. 11. Are your new shoes becoming to you? 12. Enter a store and look at the new hats and shoes. 13. Also ask in French the price of a pair of shoes. 14. How much, sir, does this hat cost? 15. I find it very dear.

203. Conversation.

1. Comment s'appelait le fils de monsieur Thomas?
2. Quel était le petit nom du père?
3. Depuis quand était-il négociant?
4. À quelle heure arrivait-il à son magasin tous les matins?
5. À quelle heure fermait-il son magasin?
6. Que vendait-il?
7. Est-ce qu'il vendait sa marchandise à bon marché?

[1] Omit article after **parler de** with unqualified noun.

[2] **dans.**

[3] Use **allait,** past descriptive of **aller,** to go.

8. Quelle histoire nous racontait-il souvent?

9. Que nous a-t-il demandé quand nous sommes entrés dans son magasin?

10. Qu'avons-nous acheté?

LESSON XV

204. Past Absolute of *parler, finir, vendre.*

		Endings [1]
je parlai [ʒə parle]	I spoke	**–ai**
tu parlas [ty parla]		**–as**
il parla [il parla]		**–a**
nous parlâmes [nu parlam]	we spoke	**–âmes**
vous parlâtes [vu parlat]		**–âtes**
ils parlèrent [il parlɛːr]		**–èrent**
je finis [ʒə fini]	I finished	**–is**
tu finis [ty fini]		**–is**
il finit [il fini]		**–it**
nous finîmes [nu finim]	we finished	**–îmes**
vous finîtes [vu finit]		**–îtes**
ils finirent [il finiːr]		**–irent**
je vendis [ʒə vãdi]	I sold	**–is**
tu vendis [ty vãdi]		**–is**
il vendit [il vãdi]		**–it**
nous vendîmes [nu vãdim]	we sold	**–îmes**
vous vendîtes [vu vãdit]		**–îtes**
ils vendirent [il vãdiːr]		**–irent**

DRILL EXERCISE

205. 1. Compare the endings of **finir** and **vendre.**

2. Has **finir** more than one stem form in this tense? Compare it in this respect with the present and the past descriptive.

3. How far are the endings of **finir** in the past absolute like those of the present?

4. Recall the present tense of **avoir.** How does it help to remember this tense of **parler?**

5. Write the past absolute of **trouver, répondre, bâtir.**

6. For the past absolute of **avoir** and **être,** add to the stems **eu–** and **fu–** the following endings: **–s, –s, –t, –mes, –tes, –rent,** and note the circumflex in the first and second plural. Thus, **j'eus,** *I had;* **nous eûmes,** *we had;* **je fus,** *I was;* **nous fûmes,** *we were.* Observe that the endings

[1] In the endings of **parlai** as here given **a** belongs historically to the stem.

are the same as those of **finir** and **vendre** with the initial **-i** omitted. (See Appendix, **507–508.**)

206. Sphere and Function of Past Absolute.

1. The past absolute hardly ever occurs in conversation or in very familiar or informal writing. In such cases the tense of simple past time is the present perfect, as shown in the two preceding lessons. The past absolute belongs to literature and formal discourse.

2. This tense brings the action or state before the mind as completed (not as in progress) and as a whole. It is like a point, or definite line both ends of which can be seen, or a stationary picture which can be looked at as a whole.

Il donna dix francs au paysan. He gave the peasant ten francs.
Ils me demandèrent pardon. They begged my pardon.
Napoléon alla jusqu'à Moscou. Napoleon went as far as Moscow.
Richelieu fonda l'Académie Française. Richelieu founded the French Academy.
Pendant dix ans il habita la même maison. During ten years, he lived in the same house.

207. Place Where. The prepositions *in* and *at* with names of places are translated by **en, dans,** and **à** (see **124,** 1, n. 1).

Nous demeurons en Amérique. We live in America.
Je l'ai vu à Paris, à New York, et à la Nouvelle Orléans. I saw him in Paris, New York, and New Orleans.
Il est arrivé au Havre. He has arrived at Havre.
Il a passé quelques semaines dans l'Amérique du sud. He spent several weeks in South America.

Note 1. With cities and towns, **à** is the rule; with countries, **à, en,** and **dans** are found.

Note 2. With singular masculine names of countries retaining the definite article and with plurals, *place where* is denoted by **à,** e.g. **au Canada,** in Canada; **aux États-Unis,** in the United States; **au Japon,** in Japan; **au Mexique,** in Mexico. In the case of Portugal and Denmark the article is omitted and **en** is the rule, as **en Portugal, en Danemark.**

Note 3. When the name of a country is modified, **dans** is used in answer to the question *Where?* **Dans l'Italie méridionale,** in Southern Italy; **dans l'Amérique du nord,** in North America; **dans la Grèce septentrionale,** in Northern Greece.

Note 4. Geographical and place names derived from Latin usually preserve the gender of the Latin original, e.g. **la France,** France, Lat. **Francia,** *f.;* **les Alpes,** *f.*, the Alps, Lat. **Alpes,** *f.;* **les Pyrénées,** *f.*, the Pyrenees, Lat. **Pyrene,** *f.;* **le Rhin,** the Rhine, Lat. **Rhenus,** *m.;* **le Rhône,** the Rhone, Lat. **Rhodanus,** *m.;*

la Garonne, the Garonne, Lat. **Garumna,** *f.;* **la Seine,** the Seine, Lat. **Sequana,** *f.;* **Paris,** *m.*, Paris, Lat. **Parisii,** *m.;* **Londres,** *m.*, London, Lat. **Londinium** *n.*, (*m. in popular speech*); **Reims,** *m.*, Rheims, Lat. **Remi,** *m.;* **Rome,** *f.*, Rome, Lat. **Roma,** *f.;* **Athènes,** *f.*, Athens, Lat. **Athenas,** *f.*

208. VOCABULARY

attentivement [atɑ̃tivmɑ̃] attentively
cent [sɑ̃] hundred
confortable [kɔ̃fɔrtabl] comfortable
de [də] about
environs *m. pl.* [ɑ̃virɔ̃] suburbs
étage *m.* [etaːʒ] floor, story
étroit [etrwɑ] narrow
fin *f.* [fɛ̃] end
fonder [fɔ̃de] to found
habitants *m. pl.* [abitɑ̃] inhabitants
maintenant [mɛ̃tnɑ̃] now
paver [pave] to pave
pays *m.* [pei] country
pièce *f.* [pjɛs] room
quelques-uns [kɛlkəz œ̃] some
séjour *m.* [seʒuːr] stay
siècle *m.* [sjɛkl] century
trottoir *m.* [trɔtwaːr] sidewalk
touriste *m. f.* [turist] tourist
vieillard *m.* [vjɛjaːr] old man
village *m.* [vilaːʒ] village
visiter [vizite] to visit
voyager [vwajaʒe] to make a journey

au sujet de [o syjɛ də] about
demander à quelqu'un [dəmɑ̃de a kɛlkœ] to ask some one
donner sur la rue [dɔne syr la ry] to face or front on the street.
ne . . . plus [nə . . . ply] no longer; **ne . . . que** [nə . . . kə] only
travailler ferme [travaje fɛrm] to work hard

EXERCISES

209. 1. L'année dernière je voyageai en France avec mon père et ma mère. 2. Nous avons visité beaucoup de villes françaises. 3. Quelques-unes de ces villes sont très vieilles. 4. Nous avons passé deux mois dans un village fondé il y a six siècles. 5. Un vieillard nous raconta l'histoire du village. 6. Il était souvent chez nous et il parlait toujours de son village. 7. Il demeurait dans une petite maison. 8. Il nous la montra un jour. 9. Elle donnait sur une rue étroite. 10. Elle n'avait qu'un étage et trois pièces, mais elle était assez grande pour le vieillard et sa famille. 11. Le vieillard l'avait depuis longtemps. 12. Son père la lui donna. 13. Il ne la vendit pas. 14. Ce village n'avait pas beaucoup d'habitants. 15. Il avait six cents habitants en hiver. 16. Mais en été il y avait toujours beaucoup de touristes. 17. Les rues étaient étroites, mais le village et les environs étaient beaux. 18. À la fin de notre séjour dans ce village, nous sommes partis pour Paris. 19. Nous n'avons plus vu notre vieillard. 20. Avez-vous jamais visité Paris? 21. La France est un beau pays et elle a beaucoup de belles villes.

210. 1. Charles' cousin lives in France. 2. He is visiting America. 3. He has spent six months in the United States. 4. He has

seen a great many American towns. 5. Charles asked his cousin one day, « How do you like our town? 6. Did you not find the streets beautiful? 7. I showed them to you yesterday. 8. We paved them all last year. 9. Have you good streets and sidewalks and comfortable houses in your French towns »? 10. Charles asked many questions about old French towns. 11. His cousin answered his questions and also talked a great deal about towns in America. 12. This cousin has now returned to France. 13. He arrived there two months ago.

211. Oral. 1. My father was talking one day about an old town in France. 2. He lived there fifteen years. 3. His mother and father also lived in this town. 4. The inhabitants had small houses and gardens and worked hard every day. 5. My father was also speaking to us about our town. 6. We listened to him very attentively. 7. He built the first house in the town twenty years ago. 8. He showed it yesterday to Charles' cousin. 9. The house is old and we do not live there now. 10. My father sold it ten years ago and bought a new house. 11. This new house fronted on a paved street and was not far from the school. 12. Our town has good streets and good schools.

212. Conversation.

1. Vous êtes un touriste. Racontez ce que vous avez vu.
2. Avez-vous vu de belles villes?
3. Combien de temps avez-vous passé dans un village?
4. Était-il très vieux?
5. Combien d'habitants avait-il?
6. Avez-vous visité les environs du village?
7. Racontez l'histoire du vieillard.
8. Où demeurait-il?
9. Combien d'étages sa maison avait-elle?
10. Combien de pièces avait-elle?
11. Est-ce qu'elle était petite ou grande?
12. Où demeure le cousin de Charles?
13. Combien de temps a-t-il passé aux États-Unis?
14. Avez-vous voyagé en France?

LESSON XVI

213. Forms of Infinitive. The infinitive of regular verbs ends in **–er, –ir, –re.** The compound tense of the infinitive is formed by adding the past participle to the present infinitive of **avoir,** as **avoir donné,** *to have given.*

214. Uses. Important uses of the infinitive are:

1. As subject of **être** and logical subject of certain verbs with **il.**

Attendre est inutile. To wait is useless.
Hésiter est dangereux. To hesitate is dangerous.
Il faut partir tout de suite. It is necessary to set out immediately.
Il vaut mieux rester ici. It is better to remain here.
Il fait bon voyager. It is pleasant to travel.

2. As object complement.

(a). Without preposition.[1]

Il préfère voyager. He prefers to travel.
J'espère revenir demain. I hope to return tomorrow.
Je désire prendre un billet pour le concert. I wish to obtain a ticket for the concert.
Je n'ose pas le dire. I dare not tell it.
Je crois l'avoir vu hier. I think I saw him yesterday.

(b). Preceded by **de.**

Il a cessé de parler. He has ceased speaking.
J'ai fini d'écrire la lettre. I have finished writing the letter.
Je regrette d'être en retard. I regret being late.
Il a oublié d'apporter sa grammaire. He forgot to bring his grammar.
Le médecin me conseille de passer quelques semaines à la campagne. The physician advises me to spend a few weeks in the country.

NOTE. After **que** in comparisons the infinitive is usually preceded by **de.**

J'aime mieux me promener que d'étudier ma leçon. I would rather go walking than study my lesson.

(c). Preceded by **à.**

J'aime à lire les romans. I like to read novels.
L'enfant apprend à écrire. The child is learning to write.
Il cherche à vous plaire. He seeks to please you.
Il commence à lire. He is beginning to read.

NOTE. After **aimer,** the preposition may be omitted: j'aime lire les romans.

3. Without a preposition after verbs of motion, to express purpose.

Il est allé chercher son crayon. He has gone to look for his pencil.
Il est venu rendre visite à son oncle. He has come to visit his uncle.

4. Preceded by **de,** to define the application of nouns.

J'ai l'intention de partir. I intend to leave.
J'ai eu le plaisir de le voir hier. I had the pleasure of seeing him yesterday.

---

[1] Many verbs in French govern the infinitive without a preposition, which in English require the preposition, and *vice versa.*

5. With prepositions, to express various relations.

Il est parti sans me voir. He left without seeing me.

Après avoir écrit la lettre, il l'a mise à la poste. After having written the letter, he mailed it.

Il s'est essoufflé à monter l'escalier. He got out of breath in climbing the stairs.

Nous mangeons pour vivre. We eat in order to live.

NOTE. After **assez** and **trop** the infinitive is preceded by **pour.**

Cet enfant est assez âgé pour aller à l'école. This child is old enough to go to school.

215. Irregular Verb *faire, to do, make.*

1. Present tense.

je fais [ʒə fɛ]	**nous faisons** [nu fəzõ]
tu fais [ty fɛ]	**vous faites** [vu fɛt]
il fait [il fɛ]	**ils font** [il fõ]

The past participle is **fait.**

2. **Faire with Infinitive.** **Faire** followed by the infinitive without a preposition signifies to cause someone to do something. This phrase may be translated into English by *have,* followed by a past participle.

Il a fait venir le médecin. He has caused the doctor to come, i.e., he has sent for the doctor.

Il a fait enregistrer la malle. He has caused someone to check the trunk, i.e., he has had the trunk checked.

216. VOCABULARY

adieu *m.* [adjø] good-bye
automobile *m. f.* [otɔmɔbil] automobile
bâtiment *m.* [batimã] building
billet *m.* [bijɛ] ticket
classe *f.* [klɑːs] class
de [də] from
décider (se) [deside] to decide
dire [diːr] to say
employé *m.* [ãplwaje] employee, official
enregistrer [ãrəʒistre] to check, register
facteur *m.* [faktœːr] letter carrier, postman
gare *f.* [gaːr] railroad station
lettre *f.* [lɛtr] letter
lendemain *m.* [lãdmɛ̃] next day
malade [malad] ill, sick
malle *f.* [mal] trunk
monter [mõte] to get on
partir [partiːr] to leave, depart
pourquoi [purkwa] why
préparatif *m.* [preparatif] preparation
que [kə] that
regretter [rəgrɛte] to regret, be sorry
second [səgõ] second
voyager [vwajaʒe] to travel
voyageur *m.* [vwajaʒœːr] traveller

en chemin de fer [ã ʃəmɛ̃ də fɛːr] by train *or* railroad
en automobile [ãn otɔmɔbil] by automobile
être occupé à [ɛːtr ɔkype a] to be busy at
avoir sommeil [avwaːr sɔmɛːj] to be sleepy

faire un voyage [fɛːr œ̃ vwajaːʒ] to make a journey, take a trip
il (elle) dit [il (ɛl) di] he (she) said
une fois [yn fwa] once
souhaiter [swɛte] to wish
voyager en première classe [vwajaʒe ɑ̃ prəmjɛːr klɑːs] to travel first class
wagon-lit *m.* [vagɔ̃ li] sleeping car
wagon-restaurant *m.* [vagɔ̃ rɛstɔrɑ̃] dining car

EXERCISES

217. 1. Charles et son père habitaient une vieille ville française. 2. Ils aimaient à voir les vieux bâtiments et les environs de la ville. 3. Ils avaient l'intention d'y rester quatre mois, mais un jour le facteur a apporté une lettre de la mère de Charles. 4. Elle était malade à Paris. 5. On pouvait[1] aller à Paris en chemin de fer ou en automobile. 6. Charles et son père ont décidé d'y aller en chemin de fer. 7. «Que fait-on quand on a faim dans le train?» dit Charles. 8. «Il y a un wagon-restaurant,» dit le père. 9. «Et quand on a sommeil on peut[2] se coucher dans un wagon-lit.» 10. Charles et son père ont fait les préparatifs du voyage. 11. Quelqu'un leur a demandé quand ils avaient l'intention de partir et ils ont répondu, « Nous allons partir demain.» 12. Ils ont envoyé leurs malles à la gare, et ils les ont fait enregistrer. 13. Leurs amis sont allés leur dire adieu et leur souhaiter bon voyage. 14. Charles a demandé à son père: « Allons-nous voyager en première ou en seconde classe?» 15. « Quelle classe préfères-tu, Charles?» 16. « Je préfère voyager en première.» 17. « Je préfère la seconde classe,» répondit le père. 18. Ils ont décidé de voyager en seconde. 19. Le lendemain matin ils sont partis. 20. Ils sont montés en automobile pour aller à la gare. 21. Ils regrettaient de quitter la vieille ville française.

218. 1. Charles and his father were living in an old French town. 2. They wished to remain there a month, and were busy seeing the town and its surroundings. 3. One day the postman came to bring a letter. 4. He said, « Here is a letter for Mr. Thomas.» 5. « Mr. Thomas is not at home,» said Charles. 6. « Give it to me.» 7. It[3] was a letter from Charles' mother. 8. She was ill in Paris. 9. They decided to set out immediately and had their trunks sent to the station. 10. At the station they asked an employee what time the train left for Paris. 11. « It leaves at six o'clock, if it arrives here on time,» he replied. 12. « Have you bought your tickets and had your trunks checked? 13. Do you wish to travel first or second class?» 14. They bought two first-class tickets for Paris. 15. The train arrived before six o'clock. 16. Charles

[1] past descriptive of **pouvoir**, *to be able*. [2] 3d sing. pres. indic. of **pouvoir**.
[3] **ce**.

and his father had dinner in the dining car. 17. They slept in the sleeping car and arrived in Paris on time.

219. Oral. 1. Is Charles at home? 2. He is not at home today. 3. He is not busy studying his lessons. 4. He is making a journey with his father. 5. They are travelling. 6. Charles likes to travel. 7. I once made a trip with Charles and Mary. 8. We did not travel by automobile. 9. We preferred to make this trip by train. 10. We arrived at the station at nine o'clock. 11. There were many travellers at the station. 12. They were buying their tickets and having their trunks checked. 13. We intended to buy three tickets. 14. We did not intend to buy four tickets. 15. We bought three first-class tickets.

220. Conversation.

1. Où habitaient Charles et son père?
2. Qu'aimaient-ils à voir [1] dans la vieille ville française?
3. Combien de temps avaient-ils l'intention d'y rester?
4. Pourquoi ont-ils décidé d'aller à Paris?
5. Comment sont-ils allés à Paris?
6. Quand sont-ils partis?
7. Comment sont-ils allés à la gare?
8. Est-ce qu'ils ont voyagé en première ou en seconde classe?
9. Quelle classe préférait le père?
10. Quelle classe préférait Charles?
11. Où était la mère de Charles?
12. Est-ce qu'elle allait bien?

LESSON XVII

221. Y and En.

1. **As Adverbs. En,** *hence, thence, away;* and **y,** *here, there,* are adverbs of place and stand immediately before the verb except in the affirmative imperative.

Je m'en vais. I am going away.
Allez-vous-en. Go away.
Ne vous en allez pas. Do not go away.
Je vais à Paris; voudriez-vous y aller? I am going to Paris; would you like to go there?
N'êtes-vous jamais entré au Louvre? Non, je n'y suis jamais entré. Have you never been in the Louvre? No, I have never been there.

NOTE. In **s'en aller,** the adverb **en** occurs with the reflexive. The first person singular, present indicative, is **je m'en vais.** Complete the tense.

2. **As Pronouns. En** and **y** serve also as pronouns, referring chiefly

[1] Present infinitive of irregular verb meaning *to see.*

to things. They are not used as simple pronouns, but as pronouns in some prepositional relation. They never stand as the subject or object of a verb, and when both occur **y** precedes, as in **il y en a,** *there is* (*are*) *some.*

3. **En** is equivalent to a personal pronoun of the third person governed by **de,** and translates such phrases as *about it* (or *them*), *by it* (or *them*), *from it* (or *them*), *for it* (or *them*), *of it* (or *them*).

Avez-vous mon crayon? J'en ai besoin. Have you my pencil? I need it.
Elle a des bijoux et elle en parle toujours. She has some jewels and is always talking about them.
J'en suis bien aise. I am very glad of it.
Je l'ai fait, j'en conviens. I did it, I confess to it (admit it).
Il est difficile de s'en déshabituer. It is difficult to break off from it.
Il n'en est pas plus heureux. He is none the happier for it.
Il en descend. He descends from it.

4. **En as Possessive and Partitive.** From its equivalence to a personal pronoun with **de, en** translates the possessive *its, their,* and the partitives *some, any.* The latter construction is illustrated in **137.**

Vous avez un beau chapeau; j'en admire la couleur. You have a beautiful hat; I admire its color.
Voilà de belles maisons; j'en admire les jolies fenêtres. There are some beautiful houses; I admire their pretty windows.
C'est un bœuf; j'en vois les cornes. It is an ox; I see its horns.
Voici des cerises. En voulez-vous? Here are some cherries. Do you wish some?

5. **Y** is equivalent to a pronoun of the third person governed by **à.** It renders a variety of pronominal phrases, such as *about it* (or *them*), *in it* (or *them*), *to it* (or *them*), *for it* (or *them*), *by it* (or *them*), and the like. It refers to things, rarely to persons.

Il a désiré partir, mais je n'y ai pas consenti. He wished to start, but I did not consent to it.
Ils l'ont fait, mais qu'y ont-ils gagné? They did it, but what did they gain by it?
Pensez-vous à vos livres? J'y pense. Are you thinking of your books? Yes, I am thinking of them.

NOTE 1. If persons are spoken of, as in the last example, disjunctive pronouns (see **227**) are required, as, **je pense à lui, à elle.** I am thinking of him, of her.

NOTE 2. Observe that **penser,** *to think of,* is followed by the preposition **à,** but that **penser de** with direct object signifies *to have an opinion* about something or some one.

Pensez-vous à vos leçons? J'y pense. Are you thinking of your lessons? I am thinking of them.

Avez-vous lu Hernani? Qu'en pensez-vous? Have you read **Hernani?** What do you think of it?

Je ne veux pas avouer ce que je pense de Jean. I do not wish to confess what I think about John.

222. *On* **as Subject.** **On** is an indefinite subject pronoun of the third person singular equivalent to the indefinite *one, someone, we, you, they, people, etc.*

On descend du train à la gare. You get off the train at the station.

On dirait qu'il va pleuvoir. One would say it is going to rain.

On lit les journaux tous les matins. We read the newspapers every morning.

223. **On** with its predicate may take the place of the passive voice.

Ici on parle français. French is spoken here.

Comment prononce-t-on le français dans les écoles? How is French pronounced in the schools?

On ferma toutes les portes. All the doors were closed.

NOTE 1. **On** being indefinite and for this reason vague, permits the emphasis of the sentence to fall on the action rather than on the person who performs the action.

Note 2. The reflexive pronoun corresponding to **on** is **se** (or **soi**); a non-reflexive **vous** in an oblique case also occurs. **On croit toujours que sa fille vous ressemble.** One always thinks that his daughter resembles him.

224. *Fill the blanks with* **en** *or* **y** *as required:*

1. Le train est arrivé ce matin. 2. Les voyageurs — descendent. 3. Les voyageurs — montent. 4. Descendons —. 5. Descendez —, 6. Montons —. 7. Montez —. 8. J'— suis descendu. 9. — êtes-vous descendu? 10. Avez-vous vu le train? 11. Qu'— pensez-vous? 12. Vous avez entendu la question. 13. — avez-vous répondu? 14. Il — a répondu. 15. Allez-vous —. 16. Ne vous — allez pas. 17. J'ai été à Paris. 18. — avez-vous été? 19. Je n'— ai jamais été. 20. Il s'— va. 21. Nous nous — allons. 21. Je désire acheter des cerises. 23. — avez-vous? 24. — voici. 25. Est-il toujours à Paris? Il — est revenu ce matin.

225. *Translate into French:*

1. The train stops at the station, and we get off. 2. Some other passengers get on. 3. Do not get off too (**trop**) quickly. 4. Are you going away today? 5. I am going away this afternoon. 6. Let us stay here a few minutes. 7. You asked a question. 8. I have not answered it. 9. Were you thinking about it? 10. I have not thought

about it. 11. Let us think about it tomorrow (**demain**). 12. Let us buy some cherries today. 13. Here are some. 14. I have not eaten any this year.

LESSON XVIII

226. Conjunctives.

The personal pronouns already considered are closely related to the verb in position, pronunciation, and use as subject, or direct or indirect object. Pronouns associated with the verb in this way are called conjunctive.

Il me le donne. He gives it to me.
Vous le lui donnez. You give it to him (*or* her).
Je vous l'ai raconté. I told it to you.

227. Disjunctives. The personal pronouns not so closely associated with the verb (being *disjoined* from it) are called disjunctives.

NOTE. The conjunctives are unstressed forms. The disjunctives are stressed.

1. List of disjunctives:

Singular	*Plural*
moi [mwa]	**nous** [nu]
toi [twa]	**vous** [vu]
lui [lɥi]	**eux** [ø]
elle [ɛl]	**elles** [ɛl]

NOTE 1. The first and second persons, **nous** and **vous**, are also conjunctive forms. In the third person, **lui** is the conjunctive for the indirect object; **elle** and **elles** are also subject pronouns.

NOTE 2. Disjunctive pronouns are emphasized by adding **même**, *self*, *selves*, as **lui-même**, *himself;* **moi-même**, *myself;* **eux-mêmes**, *themselves.*

2. When the subject is emphatic, the pronoun is disjunctive. **Lui** and **eux**, when emphatic, may be used either directly before the verb, or when separated from it; **moi** and **toi** are always separated from the verb and when used as subjects are repeated by **je** and **tu.**

Lui écrivait, eux lisaient. He was writing, they were reading.
Lui seul vient. He alone is coming.
Toi aussi, tu le sais. You also know it.
Moi, je n'y ai pas consenti. I did not consent to it.

3. When the subject or object consists of two or more persons, the pronouns required are disjunctive, though they may be summed up

by a conjunctive subject or object, especially when of different persons.

Lui et moi (nous) étudions la même leçon. He and I are studying the same lesson.
Lui et elle sont arrivés à l'heure. He and she arrived on time.
Charles et moi (nous) allons voyager ensemble. Charles and I are going to make a journey together.
Je les ai entendus, lui et elle. I heard him and her.

4. For emphasis, disjunctives may stand in apposition with a conjunctive subject or direct object. They may precede the subject or follow the verb.

Moi, je suis soldat. As for me, I am a soldier.
Moi, je crois en Dieu. As for me, I believe in God.
Je le sais, moi. I know it myself.
Voilà comment il le traite, lui son bienfaiteur. That is how he treats his benefactor.

NOTE. Notice in the foregoing examples the form of the verb when different persons appear in the subject.

5. Disjunctives follow **c'est** and **ce sont,** *it is;* **ce sont** being used only with **eux** and **elles,** and **c'est** with all other pronouns, both singular and plural.

C'est moi. It is I.
C'est vous. It is you.
C'est nous. It is we.
Ce sont eux. It is they.
Ce sont elles. It is they.

6. A personal pronoun used after a preposition must be disjunctive.

Il parlait avec moi. He was speaking with me.
Nous pensons à vous. We are thinking of you.
Elle reste chez eux. She is staying with them.
Il a pris un billet pour moi. He bought a ticket for me.
Chacun pour soi. Everyone for himself.

228. Soi. The reflexive **soi** occurs in referring to indefinite forms like **on, chacun, personne.** When the subject is definite the disjunctive reflexive of the third person is usually **lui, elle, elles,** or **eux.**

Chacun pour soi. Everyone for himself.
On ne doit dépendre que de soi. One should depend only on himself.
Marie ne doit pas penser à elle-même. Mary must not think of herself.

NOTE. **Soi** is also found referring to a definite antecedent.

La vertu trouve sa récompense en soi. Virtue finds its reward in itself.

229. *Fill the blanks with disjunctive pronouns:*

1. Il est allé avec —. 2. Ils sont partis avec—. 3. Il pense à —. 4. Il ne pense pas à —. 5. Ils restent chez —. 6. Je reste chez —. 7. Il pense toujours à —. 8. Pensez-vous toujours à —? 9. Chacun pense à —. 10. On ne reste pas toujours chez —. 11. Charles et — vont voyager ensemble. 12. Ils nous ont vues — et —. 13. C'est —. 14. Ce sont —. 15. — seul ne l'a pas vu. 16. — je suis toujours à l'heure. 17. — est toujours en retard.

230. VOCABULARY

arrêt *m.* [arɛ] stopping place
s'arrêter [s arɛte] to stop
arrière *m.* [arjɛːr] rear, back part
autobus *m.* [otɔbys] motor bus
aventure *f.* [avɑ̃tyːr] adventure
bourse *f.* [burs] purse
complet *adj.* [kɔ̃plɛ] full
conduire [kɔ̃duiːr] to go to, lead to
crier [krie] to call out
destination *f.* [dɛstinɑsjɔ̃] destination
endroit *m.* [ɑ̃drwɑ] place
essayer [eseje] to try
étranger *m.* [etrɑ̃ʒe] foreigner
mot *m.* [mo] word
non [nɔ̃] no
pendu [pɑ̃dy] suspended, hanging from
peut-être [pøt ɛːtr] perhaps
plein [plɛ̃] full
se procurer [sə prɔkyre] to procure
se promener [sə prɔmne] to ride, take a walk (*without reference to destination*)
que [kə] than
quelquefois [kɛlkəfwa] sometimes
qui [ki] who, which
receveur *m.* [rəsəvœːr] conductor

aimer mieux [ɛme mjø] to prefer
aller en tramway [ale ɑ̃ tramwe] to ride in a street-car (*to a definite place*)
aller à pied [ale a pje] to walk
beaucoup de gens [boku də ʒɑ̃] a great many people
eh bien! [e bjɛ̃] well! very well!
laisser tomber [lɛse tɔ̃be] let fall
ne . . . jamais [nə ʒamɛ] never
numéro d'appel *m.* [nymero d apɛl] call number
payer sa place [pɛje sa plas] to pay his fare
prix de la place *m.* [pri de la plas] fare

EXERCISES

231. 1. Quand on est à Paris, on monte souvent en tramway ou en autobus. 2. Avez-vous entendu l'histoire de l'étranger qui a vu le mot «Complet» à l'arrière des autobus de Paris? 3. Mais non. 4. Racontez-la-nous. 5. Nous aimons mieux entendre des histoires que de réciter nos leçons. 6. Eh bien! écoutez-moi. 7. Un étranger visite Paris pour la première fois. 8. Il voit[1] le mot «Complet» à l'arrière de beaucoup d'autobus. 9. Un jour il raconte ses aventures à des amis. 10. «J'ai souvent essayé d'aller à Complet,» dit-il, «mais il n'y a jamais de place

[1] 3rd pers. sing. pres. indic. of voir *to see.*

dans les autobus qui conduisent à cet endroit. 11. On ne s'arrête jamais pour moi. » 12. Quand on désire monter en autobus, on se procure un numéro d'appel. 13. Quand le receveur crie votre numéro, vous montez en autobus. 14. Quelquefois vous êtes occupé. 15. Vous n'entendez pas le receveur crier votre numéro. 16. Peut-être que [1] vous avez laissé tomber votre bourse. 17. Procurez-vous un numéro d'appel à l'arrêt de l'autobus. 18. Ne le perdez pas. 19. Écoutez le receveur crier les numéros. 20. On ne monte pas toujours en autobus. 21. On monte souvent en tramway. 22. Quand l'autobus est plein, le receveur crie «complet. » 23. Les voyageurs descendent à l'arrêt de l'autobus.

232. 1. A great many people in large cities like to ride on the motor busses. 2. Charles and I prefer them to the street cars. 3. When you wish to ride in a motor bus in Paris you obtain a call number. 4. When the conductor calls your number, you get on. 5. One day the motor bus did not stop for us, and we rode to our destination on a street car. 6. In New York there are a great many motor busses. 7. They have stopping places where you get on. 8. They always stop there. 9. There are no call numbers. 10. One has no need of them. 11. Many people prefer to ride on street cars. 12. When we are riding in an automobile, we are often looking at the streets and houses of the city. 13. The conductor of a street car takes the fare. 14. One day a passenger who was riding on a street car lost his purse. 15. He had no money to (**pour**) pay his fare and was getting off. 16. Charles said to the conductor, «Here is the money for him. »

233. 1. Here is the car. 2. It has arrived on time. 3. It is not always on time. 4. The conductor does not like to be behind time. 5. Charles is waiting for the car with me. 6. He is going to ride to school this morning in the car. 7. He does not live far from the school. 8. He walks there almost every day. 9. Today he prefers to ride with me. 10. The car has stopped and Charles is getting on. 11. He paid the fare when he entered. 12. There are many passengers. 13. We are riding in the car with them. 14. They are riding with us. 15. Here is the conductor. 16. He is not asking us for our fare. 17. We have already paid it.

234. Conversation.

a. 1. Racontez l'histoire de l'étranger qui a essayé d'aller à « Complet ».
2. Aimez-vous entendre des histoires ?
3. Préférez-vous réciter vos leçons ?
4. Préférez-vous l'autobus au tramway ?

[1] When **peut-être** is used without **que**, the subject pronoun follows the verb.

5. Montez-vous en autobus tous les jours?
6. Quand on désire monter en autobus, que se procure-t-on?
7. Où se procure-t-on un numéro d'appel?
8. Où monte-t-on en autobus?
9. Où en descend-on?
10. Y a-t-il beaucoup de voyageurs dans les autobus?
11. Que veut dire le mot «complet»?

b. Make French sentences containing each of the following words and phrases: **autobus, automobile, tramway, monter, descendre, prix de la place, aller à pied.**

LESSON XIX

235. Future Indicative of *parler, finir, vendre.*

		Endings
je parlerai [ʒə parlərə]	I shall speak	**–ai**
tu parleras [ty parlərа]		**–as**
il parlera [il parlərа]		**–a**
nous parlerons [nu parlərɔ̃]	we shall speak	**–ons**
vous parlerez [vu parlərə]		**–ez**
ils parleront [il parlərɔ̃]		**–ont**
je finirai [ʒə finirə]	I shall finish	**–ai**
tu finiras [ty finira]		**–as**
il finira [il finira]		**–a**
nous finirons [nu finirɔ̃]	we shall finish	**–ons**
vous finirez [vu finirə]		**–ez**
ils finiront [il finirɔ̃]		**–ont**
je vendrai [ʒə vɑ̃drə]	I shall sell	**–ai**
tu vendras [ty vɑ̃dra]		**–as**
il vendra [il vɑ̃dra]		**–a**
nous vendrons [nu vɑ̃drɔ̃]	we shall sell	**–ons**
vous vendrez [vu vɑ̃drə]		**–ez**
ils vendront [il vɑ̃drɔ̃]		**–ont**

DRILL EXERCISE

236. 1. Compare the tense endings of the three conjugations. To what part of the verb are the endings added? What change takes place in **vendre** in forming the future?

2. Compare the personal endings of the future with the present tense of

avoir. In what two forms do they differ? By what changes in **avoir** could they be made alike?

3. Write the future of the following: **aimer, porter, bâtir, punir, entendre, rendre.**

4. Consider the future of **avoir** and **être.** The endings are the same as those of the regular verbs. The stem of **avoir** to which they are added is **aur** (**j'aurai,** *I shall* or *will have*), that of **être** is **ser** (**je serai,** *I shall* or *will be*). Write out and learn the future of these two verbs. (See Appendix, **507, 508.**)

237. Future Tense. The future is used:

1. In general, to render the English future with *shall* or *will.*

Vous aurez ce livre demain. You will have this book tomorrow.
Nous vous attendrons jusqu'à dix heures. We shall wait for you until ten o'clock.

2. To render the English present tense implying futurity in clauses introduced by *when* (**quand, lorsque**) and *as soon as* (**aussitôt que, dès que**).

Je lui en parlerai quand je le rencontrerai. I will speak of it when I meet him.
Vous aurez cet argent aussitôt que vous arriverez. You will have the money as soon as you arrive.

238. ***Aller*** **with Infinitive.** **Aller,** *to go,* with a following infinitive, expresses the intention of the speaker. It may also signify, often with an adverb of time, what is about to take place.

Je vais voir la bibliothèque demain. I am going to see the library tomorrow.
Il va être médecin. He is going to be a physician.
Ils vont faire un voyage. They are going to make a journey.
Je vais bientôt aller vous voir. I am going soon to call on you.
Cet enfant va avoir dix ans. This child will soon be ten years old.

239. ***Par*** **and** ***à*** **in Distributive Time Phrases.**

Il prend deux leçons de français par semaine. He takes two French lessons a week.
Il gagne trois cents dollars par mois. He earns three hundred dollars a month.
Il visite Paris trois fois par an. He visits Paris three times a year.
Il paie son abonnement au mois ou à l'année. He pays his subscription by the month or by the year.

240. Present Tense of ***Vouloir,*** *to wish.*

je veux [ʒə vø]	**nous voulons** [nu vulɔ̃]
tu veux [ty vø]	**vous voulez** [vu vule]
il veut [il vø]	**ils veulent** [il vœl]

241. Present Tense of *Lire*, *to read.*

je lis [ʒə li]	**nous lisons** [nu lizɔ̃]
tu lis [ty li]	**vous lisez** [vu lize]
il lit [il li]	**ils lisent** [il liːz]

242. VOCABULARY

s'abonner à [s abɔne a] to subscribe to
abonné *m.* [abɔne] subscriber
abonnement *m.* [abɔnmɑ̃] subscription
annonce *f.* [anɔ̃ːs] advertisement
article de fond *m.* [artiklə də fɔ̃] editorial
cabinet de travail *m.* [kabinɛ də travaːj] office
chose *f.* [ʃoːz] thing
compte rendu *m.* [kɔ̃t rɑ̃dy] report, review
contient [kɔ̃tjɛ̃] *3d sing. pres. ind. of* **contenir**, to contain
courrier *m.* [kurje] mail
demain [dəmɛ̃] tomorrow
énorme [enɔrm] enormous
hebdomadaire [ebdɔmadɛːr] weekly
influence *f.* [ɛ̃flyɑ̃ːs] influence
intéressant [ɛ̃teresɑ̃] interesting
journal *m.* [ʒurnal] newspaper
journal du matin *m.* [ʒurnal dy matɛ̃] morning paper
journal du soir [ʒurnal dy swaːr] evening paper
kiosque *m.* [kjɔsk] small news-stand
lecture *f.* [lɛktyːr] reading
nationalité *f.* [nasjɔnalite] nationality
nouvelles *f. pl.* [nuvɛl] news
paraît [parɛ] *3rd sing. pres. indic. of* **paraître**, *to appear*
presse *f.* [prɛs] press
publier [pyblie] to publish
quotidien, quotidienne [kɔtidjɛ̃, kɔtidjɛn] daily
rédacteur en chef *m.* [redaktœːr ɑ̃ ʃef] editor in chief
représentant *m.* [rəprezɑ̃tɑ̃] representative
tout [tu] *m. pl.* **tous** whole, all
utile [ytil] useful
vous voudrez [1] [vu vudre] you will wish

Le Temps [lə tɑ̃] and **Le Journal des Débats** [lə ʒurnal de deba] are the names of two important French newspapers.

EXERCISES

243. 1. On lit des journaux tous les jours. 2. On lit les articles de fond, les comptes rendus, et les nouvelles du jour. 3. Aimez-vous la lecture? 4. Quels journaux lisez-vous? 5. Charles s'est abonné à un journal français. 6. On peut s'abonner à un journal au mois ou à l'année. 7. Est-ce qu'on publie un journal français dans toutes les grandes villes américaines? 8. On publie beaucoup de journaux à Paris, des journaux du matin et des journaux du soir. 9. Vous aurez Le Temps aussitôt que le facteur apportera le courrier. 10. Voici un kiosque à journaux. 11. Je vais acheter le Journal des Débats. 12. Charles est abonné à un journal hebdomadaire. 13. La presse a une influence énorme aux États-Unis. 14. Toutes les nationalités ont leurs représentants dans

[1] Second plural future of **vouloir**.

la presse. 15. Il y a beaucoup d'annonces dans les journaux américains.

244. 1. We are going to talk about newspapers today. 2. Is there not a newspaper in every town? 3. In the large towns you will find two or three newspapers. 4. How many are there in the town where you live? 5. A newspaper contains advertisements, news, reviews, and editorials. 6. In a good newspaper you will find them all interesting. 7. When you look at the advertisements you will want to buy a great many useful things. 8. Have you ever visited the editor of a newspaper? 9. You will find him in his office. 10. He will talk with you about his newspaper. 11. The paper appears every morning of the week. 12. It has many subscribers and contains a great deal of news. 13. As soon as you subscribe to this newspaper the postman will bring it to your house. 14. One pays the subscription by the month or by the year, not[1] by the week or[2] the day. 15. Will (**voulez**) you subscribe to our morning paper today or tomorrow? 16. I am going to subscribe today to a French newspaper. 17. It is published in Paris.

245. Oral. 1. We have two newspapers in our town. 2. We have a morning paper and an evening paper. 3. I am (a)[3] subscriber to the morning paper. 4. I have not yet subscribed to the evening paper. 5. I am going to subscribe tomorrow. 6. I shall pay (**payerai**) the subscription to the editor. 7. Will you not subscribe to our morning paper? 8. It contains news, reviews, editorials, and advertisements. 9. You will find them all very interesting. 10. The postman will bring it every day when he brings the mail. 11. As soon as he brings it, you will want to read it. 12. One subscribes to a newspaper by the year or by the month. 13. The postman brings a daily paper seven times a week. 14. A weekly paper appears once a week.

246. Conversation.

a. 1. Lisez-vous un journal tous les matins?
2. Quel journal préférez-vous?
3. Quels sont les meilleurs journaux américains?
4. Que veut dire un kiosque à journaux?
5. Que veut dire un journal du matin?
6. Que veut dire un journal du soir?
7. Êtes-vous abonné à un journal français?

[1] *Not* = **pas**, not **ne . . . pas**. With negative adverbs, such as **ne . . . pas, ne . . . plus, ne . . . jamais** negation is expressed by the second part of the phrase when the verb is omitted.

[2] *Or* in negative sentences is **ni**.

[3] Omit.

8. Payez-vous l'abonnement au mois ou à l'année?
9. Est-ce que la presse américaine a beaucoup d'influence?
10. Y a-t-il des journaux français publiés aux États-Unis?
11. Qui apporte le courrier tous les matins?

b. Use each of the following words in a French sentence: **journal, abonné, courrier, quotidien, hebdomadaire.**

LESSON XX

247. Comparison of Adjectives. In English one person may be compared with another or with others as follows:

1. A is more wise (*or* wiser) than B.
2. A is less wise than B.
3. A is as wise as B.
4. A is not so wise as B.
5. A is the most wise (*or* wisest) of B's friends.
6. A is the least wise of B's friends.

Translated into French these sentences become:

1. **A est plus sage que B.**
2. **A est moins sage que B.**
3. **A est aussi sage que B.**
4. **A n'est pas si sage que B.**
5. **A est le plus sage des amis de B.**
6. **A est le moins sage des amis de B.**

Notice that French has nothing to correspond to the **–er** and **–est** in *wiser* and *wisest*, but otherwise the comparison is made in the same way as in English. Adjectives whose quality is thus raised or lowered in degree are called, respectively, comparatives and superlatives. Every comparison, whether made by comparatives or by superlatives, has two members.

248. Comparatives. Comparatives are regularly formed by placing **plus**, *more*, or **moins**, *less* before the positive adjective.

Le père est plus grand que son fils. The father is taller than his son.

249. Superlatives. These are regularly formed by placing **plus** or **moins** with the definite article or a possessive adjective before the adjective.[1]

[1] When a superlative with the article precedes its noun, notice that the article is not repeated as it is when the superlative follows the noun.

L'homme le plus riche de la ville. The richest man in town.
Le plus vaillant des héros. The bravest of the heroes.
Le problème le plus difficile. The most difficult problem.

NOTE 1. The possessive adjective takes the place of the article only when the superlative precedes the noun.

Mon plus cher ami. My dearest friend.
Mon plus jeune frère. My youngest brother.
Mes plus fidèles amis. My most faithful friends.

NOTE 2. *In* after the superlative, is translated by **de**.

La plus grande ville du monde. The largest city in the world.

250. Equality. Equal degrees of quality are expressed by **aussi. . . que.**

Il est aussi riche que son frère. He is as rich as his brother.

251. Adverbs. Adverbs are compared in the same way as adjectives, the definite article in the superlative remaining invariable.

Le plus lentement, most slowly.
Il a écouté le plus attentivement. He listened most attentively.

252. Irregular Comparison. Certain adjectives of frequent occurrence are compared irregularly. These are:

Bon, good; **meilleur,** better; **le meilleur,** best.
Mauvais, bad; **pire,** worse; **le pire,** worst.
Petit, little; **moindre,** less; **le moindre,** least.

Note the following adverbs:

Bien, well; **mieux,** better; **le mieux,** best.
Mal, badly; **pis,** worse; **le pis,** the worst.

NOTE. **Mauvais** and **mal** have, in addition to the irregular comparative and superlative indicated above, the regular forms **plus mauvais, le plus mauvais, plus mal,** and **le plus mal.**

Peu, little; **moins,** less; **le moins,** least.
Beaucoup, much; **plus,** more; **le plus,** most.

253. *De* after *Plus* and *Moins*. When **plus** and **moins** are themselves used as comparatives, they are followed by **de,** *than,* if the second part of the comparison is a number and no verb is understood. This is the only case where **de** takes the place of **que** after the comparative.

Il a plus de cent livres. He has more than a hundred books.
Ce livre coûte moins de vingt francs. This book costs less than twenty francs.

NOTE. When a verb is understood in the second part of the comparison, **que** is used.

Un éléphant mange plus que six chevaux. An elephant eats more than six horses.

254. Disjunctive Personal Pronouns. A personal pronoun, whether subject or object, which has the verb understood, is disjunctive. This usage is to be noted in comparisons.

Il a plus de livres que moi. He has more books than I (have).
J'ai plus de livres que lui. I have more books than he (has).

255. Drill Exercise. *Translate into French:*

1. He is wiser than I. 2. We are wiser than they. 3. You have a better house than he. 4. He does better than I. 5. He listens more attentively than you. 6. You have the most interesting book of all. 7. He does the best of all. 8. You have the best automobile in town. 9. America has the best railroads. 10. This book costs less than twenty francs. 11. Charles has more than ten books.

256. VOCABULARY

avant de [avɑ̃ də] before
autre [oːtr] other
bondé [bɔ̃de] crowded
bateau *m.* [bato] boat
ce [sə] this, that
ce qui [sə ki] that which, what
compartiment *m.* [kɔ̃partimɑ̃] compartment
commode [kɔmɔd] convenient
contrôler [kɔ̃trole] to inspect, verify
contrôleur *m.* [kɔ̃trolœːr] conductor
départ *m.* [depaːr] departure
entrée *f.* [ɑ̃tre] entrance
excédent *m.* [ɛksedɑ̃] overweight
fois *f.* [fwa] time
guichet *m.* [giʃɛ] ticket window
malle *f.* [mal] trunk
mille *m.* [mil] mile
ordinairement [ɔrdinɛrmɑ̃] ordinarily
parce que [pars kə] because
part [paːr] leaves, starts (*3rd sing. pres. indic. of* **partir**)
place *f.* [plas] place, seat
plusieurs [plyzjœːr] several
poinçonner [pwɛ̃sɔne] to punch
pressé [prɛse] hurried, in a hurry
rapide [rapid] rapid
rembourrer [rɑ̃bure] to stuff, upholster
serré [sɛre] crowded
temps *m.* [tɑ̃] time
train *m.* [trɛ̃] train
wagon *m.* [vagɔ̃] coach, car
de première classe, de seconde classe, de troisième classe [də prəmjɛːr klɑːs, də səgɔ̃ːd klɑːs, də trwɑzjɛm klɑːs] first, second, third class
en route [ɑ̃ rut] on the road, on the way
en wagon! [ɑ̃ vagɔ̃] all aboard!
rendre agréable [rɑ̃ːdr agreabl] to make pleasant
salle d'attente *f.* [sal d atɑ̃ːt] waiting-room
salle des bagages *f.* [sal de bagaːʒ] baggage-room

EXERCISES

257. 1. Charles et son père sont allés de Carcassonne à Paris. 2. Ils ont voyagé en chemin de fer. 3. Le train n'était pas bondé. 4. Or-

dinairement il y a plusieurs personnes dans un compartiment, mais cette fois il n'y en avait que deux, Charles et son père. 5. Charles et son père avaient le compartiment à eux, ce qui rendait le voyage plus agréable. 6. «J'aime à voyager dans ce compartiment,» dit le père, «parce que les bancs sont rembourrés et on n'est pas trop serré.» 7. «Oui, mon père,» dit Charles, «mais on ne peut pas voir les autres voyageurs.» 8. Charles a parlé avec un employé. 9. «Voulez-vous contrôler nos billets?» demanda Charles. 10. «On les contrôle à l'entrée des salles d'attente ou sur le quai[1] de départ,» répondit l'employé. 11. Que pensez-vous des trains français? 12. Je les trouve très agréables. 13. Est-ce que les trains américains vont très vite? 14. Oui, monsieur, en Amérique nous sommes toujours pressés. 15. Nos trains les plus rapides font plus de cinquante milles à l'heure. 16. Préférez-vous voyager en chemin de fer ou en bateau? 17. Je préfère voyager en chemin de fer. 18. J'aime beaucoup les trains français. 19. Ils vont assez vite pour moi. 20. Quand Charles retourna au compartiment, il dit à son père, « J'ai faim.» 21. Le père répondit, « J'ai plus faim que toi.» 22. Entrons dans le wagon-restaurant et déjeunons. 23. Le train est en retard et nous avons bien le temps.

258. 1. We showed our tickets to an official before getting on the train. 2. We found very good seats in the car. 3. They were better than the seats of the other passengers. 4. These seats were the best in the car. 5. I have a better seat than you. 6. Is your seat sufficiently comfortable? 7. The train starts and we are on the way. 8. Here is the conductor. 9. What is he going to do? 10. He is coming to inspect our tickets. 11. He will punch them as soon as we show them to him. 12. The conductor has just[2] gone into another car. 13. There are more than twenty passengers in our coach and they are making the most pleasant journey of the whole year. 14. The train has stopped. 15. Here we are at another station.

259. Oral. 1. The train will stop five minutes. 2. Let's get off and look at the station. 3. Is it larger than our station? 4. The waiting room is not so large and is less convenient. 5. There are also more than two ticket windows. 6. One sells tickets there every day. 7. One asks for a first or second class ticket. 8. Travellers do not like this baggage-room. 9. It is not as good as the baggage-room in our town. 10. A traveller has had his trunk checked there. 11. He paid two dollars for (de) overweight. 12. He has a larger trunk than I. 13. The train starts. 14. The conductor does not cry « all aboard.»

[1] *platform.* [2] See **383**, footnote.

260. Conversation.

a. 1. Où Charles et son père sont-ils allés?
2. Comment ont-ils voyagé de Carcassonne à Paris?
3. Étaient-ils serrés dans le compartiment où ils étaient?
4. Charles a parlé avec un employé. Qu'a-t-il demandé à l'employé?
5. Que répondit l'employé?
6. Qu'a-t-il demandé à Charles?
7. Est-ce que les trains américains marchent très vite?
8. Aimez-vous voyager en chemin de fer?
9. Préférez-vous voyager en automobile?
10. Aimez-vous voyager?
11. Avez-vous voyagé en France?

b. Using the vocabulary you have learned, describe in French a journey to a city, including conveyance to the station, purchase of ticket, registration of baggage, getting on and off train, the dining and sleeping cars and arrival at destination.

LESSON XXI

261. Relative Pronouns. The relative pronouns are **qui,** *who, which, that;* **que,** *whom, which, that;* **quoi,** *which, what;* **dont,** *whose, of whom, of which;* and **lequel,** *who, whom, which.* **Lequel** (**lesquels, laquelle, lesquelles**) is declined like the definite article and agrees with the antecedent in gender and number. The other relatives have the same form for singular and plural and for masculine and feminine.

262. Qui as subject, refers to both persons and things. When governed by a preposition, it refers to persons only.

L'homme qui est venu ce matin. The man who came this morning.
La dame qui a chanté est américaine. The lady who sang is an American.
Le livre qui est sur la table. The book which is on the table.
La pomme qui vient de tomber. The apple which has just fallen.
L'homme à qui je parlais. The man to whom I was speaking.
L'homme à qui je m'étais adressé. The man to whom I had applied.

263. Que refers to persons and things and is used as the direct object of the verb. It is never governed by a preposition.

Les professeurs que nous écoutons. The teachers to whom we listen.
Les livres que j'ai achetés. The books which I bought.
Le livre que je lis. The book which I am reading.

264. Quoi occurs chiefly after prepositions. It has two main uses as a relative.

1. It is a simple relative referring to some action or situation, but not to a definite person or object.

Nous avons trouvé les élèves diligents, ce à quoi nous nous attendions. We found the pupils industrious, which we expected.

Il lut le livre, après quoi il me le donna. He read the book, after which he gave it to me.

2. As a relative with the antecedent understood or implied. This usage is confined chiefly to certain idiomatic phrases containing the infinitive.

Il a de quoi vivre. He has (means) on which to live.

Voici de quoi écrire. Here are the materials with which to write.

Il a de quoi. He has means (cf. the English "he has the wherewithal").

265. *Lequel* as Relative. The forms **lequel, laquelle,** (*plur.*) **lesquels, lesquelles,** refer either to persons or to things and are used as follows:

1. After prepositions when referring to things or to animals.

La librairie dans laquelle j'ai acheté ce livre. The bookstore in which I bought this book.

Le chien auquel j'ai donné du pain. The dog to which I gave some bread.

NOTE. In referring to persons, either **qui** or **lequel** may be used after prepositions. However, **qui** is more literary.

L'ami à qui (auquel) j'ai donné le livre s'appelle Jean. The friend to whom I gave the book is named John.

2. To avoid ambiguity, when the relative pronoun does not follow immediately after its antecedent.

L'énergie de ce peuple, laquelle est extraordinaire. The energy of that people, which is extraordinary.

3. Observe **duquel, de laquelle** and **dont.**

a) **Dont** was originally an adverb. As a pronoun it is the equivalent of **de** + a relative.

L'homme dont le fils est arrivé ce matin. The man whose son arrived this morning

L'écrivain dont j'ai lu la biographie. The writer whose biography I have read.

NOTE. Observe that the noun which follows **dont** always takes the article and that the object of the verb retains its place after the verb.

b) **Duquel, de laquelle** are used instead of **dont** when the relative pronoun depends on a noun preceded by a preposition.

Le garçon au père duquel vous avez écrit. The boy to whose father you wrote.

266. VOCABULARY

affairé [afɛre] busy
allo! [alo] hello!
certainement [sɛrtɛnmɑ̃] certainly
chercher [ʃɛrʃe] to look for, look up
comme [kɔm] how, as
communiquer [kɔmynike] to communicate
décrocher [dekrɔʃe] to take down
dépêche *f.* [depɛːʃ] dispatch
distinctement [distɛ̃ktəmɑ̃] distinctly
doute *m.* [dut] doubt
fatigué [fatige] tired, fatigued
honneur *m.* [ɔnœːr] honor
immédiatement [imedjatmɑ̃] immediately
indiquer [ɛ̃dike] to indicate
interrompre [ɛ̃tɛrɔ̃ːpr] to cut short, cut off
lentement [lɑ̃tmɑ̃] slowly
livrer [livre] to deliver
mettre [mɛtr] to put, place
minute *f.* [minyt] minute
oreille *f.* [ɔrɛːj] ear
oublier [ublie] to forget
rarement [rarmɑ̃] seldom
récepteur *m.* [resɛptœːr] receiver
remettre [rəmɛtr] to put back *or* up
se reposer [sə rəpoze] to rest
télégraphe *m.* [telegraf] telegraph
télégraphier [telegrafje] to telegraph
téléphoner [telefɔne] to telephone
téléphoniste *f.* [telefɔnist] telephone girl, operator

au moyen de [o mwajɛ̃ də] by means of
au revoir [o rəvwaːr] good-bye
bureau télégraphique *m.* [byro telegrafik] telegraph office
bureau téléphonique *m.* [byro telefɔnik] telephone office
cabine téléphonique *f.* [kabin telefɔnik] telephone booth
couper la communication [kupe la kɔmynikɑsjɔ̃] to cut off, interrupt communication
en anglais [ɑ̃n ɑ̃glɛ] in English
loin de [lwɛ̃ də] far from
parler par téléphone [parle par telefɔn] to talk over the telephone

EXERCISES

267. 1. Quand Charles et son père étaient en France, Charles est allé voir son oncle qui habitait une ville qui n'était pas loin de Paris. 2. Charles y est resté plusieurs jours. 3. La ville où son oncle demeurait avait un bureau télégraphique et un bureau téléphonique. 4. Charles voyait [1] le bureau téléphonique tous les jours, mais il n'y entrait pas souvent. 5. Le bureau où il allait [2] le plus souvent était dans un grand bâtiment qui n'était pas loin de la maison de son oncle. 6. Au moyen du télégraphe et du téléphone on communiquait tous les jours avec des amis qui habitaient d'autres villes. 7. On leur envoyait des dépêches, ou l'on parlait avec eux au moyen du téléphone. 8. Un jour, Charles envoya une dépêche à son père qui était à Paris. 9. Son père ne répon-

[1] Past Descriptive of **voir**, *to see.*
[2] Past Descriptive of **aller**, *to go.*

dit pas immédiatement. 10. « Il est très occupé, » se dit Charles, « ou il vient de faire un voyage, et il est fatigué. 11. Mon père est un homme très affairé, il se repose rarement. » 12. Comme le père ne répondait pas à sa dépêche, Charles décida de lui téléphoner. 13. Il est entré dans le bureau téléphonique, et il a dit à la téléphoniste, «Je désire téléphoner à mon père qui est à Paris. » 14. «Certainement, » dit la téléphoniste, «décrochez le récepteur, et mettez-le à votre oreille. » 15. Charles est entré dans la cabine téléphonique que lui a indiquée la téléphoniste. 16. Il décrocha le récepteur et le porta à son oreille. 17. Puis il dit, «Fleurus 32-64.[1] » 18. Aussitôt, il entendit son père qui lui demanda, «À qui ai-je l'honneur de parler? » 19. «C'est moi, » dit Charles, «as-tu reçu la dépêche que je t'ai envoyée ce matin? » 20. «Non, » répondit son père, «je ne l'ai pas encore reçue. 21. Je l'aurai demain sans doute. » 22. Charles parla avec son père deux minutes. 23. Puis il lui dit au revoir, et il remit le récepteur à sa place.

268. 1. I have a friend here in America whose sister works in the telephone office. 2. She goes there every day. 3. When she is working at the telephone office, she is called a telephone girl. 4. When someone takes down the receiver and puts it to his ear and says «Hello! » she answers, «Number, please! » 5. Sometimes the man who is at the telephone says, «I have forgotten the number. I will look it up. » 6. When he has found the number, he takes down the receiver again. 7. He speaks distinctly and talks two or three minutes over the telephone with a friend. 8. Sometimes he wants to talk more than ten minutes. 9. Then the telephone girl «cuts him[2] off, » as one says in English. 10. When one is speaking over the telephone, do not cut off the line. 11. The telephone girl works several hours a day. 12. She is fatigued when she goes home. 13. Do you prefer to telephone or to telegraph? 14. Do you go to the telegraph office when you wish to send a telegram? 15. Yesterday, I telegraphed to New York.

269. Oral 1. Let's telephone to John. 2. Take down the receiver and put it to your ear. 3. Hello! we want to speak to John. 4. Number, please. 5. I have forgotten the number. 6. Wait a moment, I will look it up. 7. Here it is, number 20. 8. Hello! give me number 20, if you please. 9. John does not answer. 10. He was at home this morning. 11. Perhaps he has gone out. 12. There he is now. 13. Do you hear me well? 14. Oh, yes, you are speaking very distinctly.

[1] trente-deux soixante-quatre.

[2] Use the conjunctive **lui**. This is not properly speaking an indirect object but a dative of reference, a frequent construction in Latin which has survived in French.

15. Speak a little more slowly. 16. We haven't seen you for several days. 17. What have you been doing? 18. And you, what have you been doing? 19. We have been taking a trip. 20. The operator says that we have talked enough. 21. Don't cut us off. 22. Good-bye, John.

270. Conversation.

a. 1. Combien de temps Charles est-il resté chez son oncle?
2. Où demeurait son oncle?
3. Où était le bureau téléphonique où Charles allait le plus souvent?
4. À qui Charles a-t-il envoyé une dépêche?
5. Où demeurait son père?
6. A-t-il répondu immédiatement?
7. À qui Charles a-t-il téléphoné?
8. Où est-il allé pour téléphoner?
9. Qu'a-t-il dit à la téléphoniste?
10. Que répondit-elle?
11. Quand Charles est entré dans la cabine téléphonique, qu'a-t-il dit?
12. Son père avait-il reçu la dépêche?
13. Combien de temps a-t-il parlé avec Charles?

b. Imagine that you are telephoning to some one. Describe in French the different operations in using a telephone.

LESSON XXII

271. *Ceci* and *Cela*. The demonstrative pronouns, **ceci**, *this*, and **cela**, *that*, have much the same use as *this* and *that* in English. **Ceci** refers to something close at hand, and **cela** to something more remote. They serve usually to point out objects not yet mentioned.

Ceci est mauvais, cela est pire. This is bad, that is worse.
Donnez-moi ceci. Give me this.
Donnez-lui cela. Give him that.

NOTE 1. If the object has already been mentioned, **celui** or **celui-ci** and **celui-là** are used (see **310**).

Il y a deux livres sur la table; donnez-moi celui-là. There are two books on the table. Give me that one.

272. *Ce*. The demonstrative **ce**, *this*, *that*, is to be noted in the two following constructions:

1. As antecedent of **qui** or **que**, *which*, forming the English compound relative *what* (*that which*).

Ce que je dis est vrai. What I say is true.
Ce qui me console, ce sont vos bontés. What comforts me is your kindness.

NOTE. **Ce** may also be the antecedent of **dont.**

J'ai ce dont j'ai besoin. I have that of which I have need.

2. As subject of **être** in the sense of *he, she, it, this, that* or *these, those, they* (e.g. *it is, they are*), when the verb is followed by a proper noun, personal pronoun, adjective,[1] or a common noun qualified by another word.

C'est mon cousin. He is my cousin.
C'est Alfred. It is Alfred.
Ce sont eux. It is they.
C'est impossible. It is impossible.
Ce sont des Américains. They are Americans.

3. Before **être** + adjective followed by **de** + infinitive, or a clause introduced by **que,** or a noun that is not qualified by any other word, **il,** (**ils, elle, elles**) is used regularly.

Il est facile de vous comprendre. It is easy to understand you.
Il est Américain. He is an American.
Ils sont amis. They are friends.
Il est clair que vous avez raison. It is clear that you are right.

273. Uses of *Même.*

1. **Même** (*plur.* **mêmes**) *self, selves,* follows personal pronouns and nouns to intensify the meaning.

Les dieux mêmes combattront pour eux. The gods themselves will fight for them.
Vous le savez bien vous-mêmes. You yourselves know it well.
Je le ferai moi-même. I will do it myself.

NOTE. **Même** is joined to pronouns by a hyphen.

2. **Même** with definite article means *the same* and qualifies nouns as an adjective. It always precedes the noun.

Il porte le même chapeau tous les jours. He wears the same hat every day.
Il a écrit deux lettres le même jour. He wrote two letters the same day.
Les mêmes mérites, les mêmes défauts. The same merits and defects.

NOTE. **Un même** means *one (and the) same.*

Ils ont une même ardeur. They have one (and the) same enthusiasm.

3. **Même** may be used substantively, that is, implying the noun in itself or having it understood.

Cela revient au même. That comes to the same (thing).
Les miens sont les mêmes. Mine are the same.
Apportez-moi quelques-uns des mêmes. Bring me some of the same.

[1] When a predicate adjective after **être** refers to a personal subject **il** (**ils, elle, elles**) must be used.

4. **Même** as an adverb is invariable. It means *so, also, even.* It may precede or follow the word it emphasizes.

Les femmes et même les enfants ont fait le voyage. The women and even the children made the journey.

Les plus sages même sont sujets à se tromper. The wisest even are liable to be mistaken.

5. **Le même,** followed by the relative pronoun **que,** signifies *the same . . . as* or *the same . . . that.*

Il étudie la même chose que son frère. He studies the same thing as his brother.

Il porte le même chapeau qu'il a porté la semaine passée. He is wearing the same hat that he wore last week.

274. Drill Exercise. *Translate into French:*

1. Tell us what you saw. 2. Tell him of what you have need. 3. This is my pen. 4. That is[1] your book. 5. Give me this. 6. Have you thought of that? 7. This is good, that is better. 8. Keep that, give me this. 9. Give me what you have. 10. Let us tell what is true (**vrai**). 11. Let us not always say what is pleasant. 12. It is Charles. 13. They are Charles' friends. 14. They are my neighbors. 15. They are friends. 16. They are Americans. 17. This is the same pen that I had yesterday. 18. This is the same man that you saw last week. 19. Give me some[2] of the same. 20. Charles gave me the pen himself. 21. I wrote the letter myself. 22. Even Mary writes letters. 23. Even children talk over the telephone.

275. Present Indicative of *écrire,* *to write.*

j'écris [ʒ ekri]	**nous écrivons** [nuz ekrivɔ̃]
tu écris [ty ekri]	**vous écrivez** [vuz ekrive]
il écrit [il ekri]	**ils écrivent** [ilz ekriːv]

The past participle is **écrit** [ekri].

276. Present Indicative of *dire,* *to say, tell.*

je dis [ʒə di]	**nous disons** [nu dizɔ̃]
tu dis [ty di]	**vous dites** [vu dit]
il dit [il di]	**ils disent** [il diːz]

The past participle is **dit** [di]. The imperative is the same as the second singular and the first and second plural of the indicative.

277. VOCABULARY

adresse *f.* [adrɛs] address	**cacheter** [kaʃte] to seal
affranchir [afrɑ̃ʃiːr] to stamp (a letter)	**coller** [kɔle] to stick, put on

[1] *That is* = **cela c'est.**

[2] *Some* here is **un peu de.**

concierge *m. f.* [kɔ̃sjɛrʒ] janitor, porter
distribuer [distribɥe] to deliver
distribution *f.* [distribysjɔ̃] delivery
effacer [efase] to rub out
encre *f.* [ɑ̃ːkr] ink
enveloppe *f.* [ɑ̃vlɔp] envelope
espèce *f.* [ɛspɛs] kind
feuille *f.* [fœːj] sheet
gomme *f.* [gɔm] eraser
gramme *m.* [gram] gram
intérieur *m.* [ɛ̃terjœːr] interior
jeter [ʒəte] to drop
levée *f.* [ləve] collection (*of mail*)
merci *m.* [mɛrsi] thank you
oui [wi] yes
personne *f.* [pɛrsɔn] person
placer [plase] to place, put
plaisir *m.* [plɛziːr] pleasure
plier [plie] to fold
port *m.* [pɔːr] postage
prêter [prɛte] to lend
remettre [rəmɛtr] to deliver
rien [rjɛ̃] nothing
sécher [seʃe] to dry, blot
se servir de [sə sɛrviːr də] to use
timbre-poste *m.* [tɛ̃brə pɔst] postage stamp
tache *f.* [taʃ] blot
taxer [takse] to tax
vrai [vrɛ] true

boîte aux lettres *f.* [bwaːt o lɛtr] letter box
bureau de poste *m.* [byro də pɔst] post-office
carte postale *f.* [kart pɔstal] postal card
être chargé de [ɛtrə ʃarʒe də] to be responsible for
il faut [il fo] it is necessary
lettre d'affaires *f.* [lɛtrə d afɛːr] business letter
lettre personnelle *f.* [lɛtrə pɛrsɔnɛl] personal letter
machine à écrire *f.* [maʃin a ekriːr] typewriter
mettre à la poste [mɛtr a la pɔst] to mail, post
papier à lettre *m.* [papje a lɛtr] letter paper
papier buvard *m.* [papje byvaːr] blotting paper
pour l'étranger [pur l etrɑ̃ʒe] for a foreign country
receveur des postes [rəsəvœːr de pɔst] postmaster

EXERCISES

278. 1. Pour écrire une lettre on prend une feuille de papier à lettre, une plume et un porte-plume, de l'encre, du papier buvard et une enveloppe. 2. Quelquefois on a besoin d'une gomme pour effacer ce qu'on a écrit. 3. Jean écrit une lettre. 4. Après l'avoir finie, il la plie en deux ou en quatre, puis il la met [1] dans une enveloppe et il la cachète. 5. Après avoir fermé sa lettre, il y colle un timbre-poste, écrit l'adresse et la met à la poste lui-même. 6. Le même jour, il répond à plusieurs lettres. 7. Le port d'une lettre ordinaire à l'intérieur des États-Unis est de deux sous par quinze grammes. 8. Une lettre pour l'étranger est taxée cinq sous par quinze grammes. 9. Les facteurs distribuent les lettres. 10. Ils vont de maison en maison et ils les jettent [2] dans la boîte aux lettres placée à la porte des maisons. 11. À Paris, ils remettent le courrier au

[1] 3rd sing. pres. indic of **mettre**, *to put*. [2] For the double t see **514**.

concierge. 12. Il y a plusieurs levées et plusieurs distributions par jour. 13. Je me sers[1] toujours de la même espèce d'encre et de la même espèce de plume. 14. J'ai une machine à écrire mais je ne m'en sers pas souvent. 15. Vous avez une bonne plume. 16. Ma plume est bonne aussi. 17. Cela revient au même.

279. 1. I am writing this letter with a pen. 2. I have written three letters today with the same pen, but not to the same person. 3. These are personal letters which I have written. 4. One writes personal letters with a pen and business letters with the typewriter. 5. Have you a typewriter? 6. I have the same one that I had last year. 7. They are not the[2] same price this year as last. 8. The letter is finished. Fold it, put it in the envelope, write the address, seal it, stamp it, and drop it into a mail box. 9. The carrier will take it to the post office. 10. Did you blot the ink with blotting paper? One forgets to do it sometimes. 11. Did you stamp the letter? 12. The postmaster himself cannot send a letter to his friend without a stamp. 13. Stamps of the same kind are the same price. 14. One buys them at the post office and stamps the letter himself. 15. After we have bought them we sometimes forget to use them. 16. The carrier delivers the mail two or three times a day. 17. When he arrives the children say, « Here is the postman. Any letters for us today? » 18. Yesterday, I sent two letters to my brother in Paris. 19. The postman will deliver them to the porter. 20. Here are two letters from America on the same day.

280. Oral. 1. Have you some envelopes? 2. Yes, I have some. 3. Will you lend me one? 4. With pleasure. Are you writing a letter? 5. Yes, and I have paper and pen and ink and even a stamp, but no envelopes. 6. Very often I have none myself, but I bought some yesterday. 7. They are of the same kind that I always buy. 8. Thank you, I will now put on the stamp. 9. I have written the address. 10. Did the postman arrive late at your house yesterday? 11. No, he arrived at the same time as today. 12. How many letters did he bring you, two or three or four? 13. Not[3] one. He brought some business letters for my father. 14. I said, « Are there any letters for me today, » and he said, « Nothing today. » 15. Perhaps tomorrow he will bring you a letter with a French stamp.

281. Conversation.

a. 1. Que faut-il pour écrire une lettre?
2. Racontez ce que Jean a fait après avoir fini sa lettre.

[1] Pres. indic. of the irregular verb **servir**, *to serve, use.*
[2] Insert **de** before *the.*
[3] See **244**, n.

3. Quel est le port d'une lettre à l'intérieur des États-Unis ?
4. Qui est chargé de distribuer les lettres ?
5. Où les facteurs jettent-ils les lettres ?
6. À qui remettent-ils les lettres à Paris ?
7. Combien de levées et de distributions y a-t-il par jour ?
8. Quel est le port d'une lettre pour l'étranger ?
9. Écrivez-vous beaucoup de lettres ?
10. Vos amis répondent-ils à toutes vos lettres ?

b. Supposing you wish to write a letter, describe in French the materials necessary and tell also how it reaches its destination.

LESSON XXIII

282. Interrogative Pronouns. The interrogatives are:

qui ? *who? whom?*
que ? *what?*
quoi ? *what?*
quel ? *what? who?*
lequel ? *which? which one?*

Note that all the forms of the relative pronouns except **dont** may be used interrogatively.

283. ***Qui?*** *who? whom?* may be used as subject or predicate nominative, and as the object of a verb or preposition.

Qui frappe ? Who knocks ?
Qui sont-ils ? Who are they ?
Qui cherchez-vous ? Whom are you looking for ?
De qui parle-t-il ? Of whom is he speaking ?
À qui rend-il visite ? To whom is he making a visit ?

284. Ownership and Relation. *Whose?* denoting ownership is expressed by **à qui,** denoting other relations, by **de qui.**

À qui est ce livre ? Whose book is this ?
De qui est ce poème ? Whose poem is this ?
À qui est cette maison ? Whose house is this ?
De qui est-elle la femme ? Whose wife is she ?

285. ***Que*** **and** ***Quoi.*** **Que ?** *what?* is a conjunctive and **quoi ?** *what?* is a disjunctive form. **Que** stands regularly as object of a verb or as predicate nominative. **Quoi** is used after prepositions and in questions where the verb is omitted.

Que font-ils? What are they doing?
Qu'est-il devenu? What has become of him?
À quoi pense-t-il? Of what is he thinking?
Quoi de plus simple? What is easier?

NOTE. Que and quoi occur with certain infinitives in indirect questions. **Je ne sais que (quoi) faire.** I do not know what to do.

286. ***Quel.***

1. **Quel,** *f.* **quelle,** occurs with forms of **être,** agreeing in gender and number with the person or thing to which it refers.

Quel est cet édifice dont on voit d'ici les fenêtres? What is that building whose windows one sees from here?
Quelle est cette dame-là? Who is that lady?

NOTE. Quel is derived from Latin **qualis,** *of what kind,* and retains something of its meaning and adjective character.

287. ***Quel,*** *what, what a,* as interrogative or exclamatory adjective agrees in gender and number with the noun it modifies.

Quel jour du mois est-ce aujourd'hui? What day of the month is it today?
Quelles villes avez-vous visitées? What towns have you visited?
Quel beau paysage! What a beautiful landscape!

287. ***Lequel*** **as Interrogative. Lequel** asks *which one, what one,* implying that one or more persons or things are to be selected from a group. Note change of form for gender and number.

Lequel de ces livres préférez-vous? Which of those books do you prefer?
Laquelle de ces dames est votre mère? Which of these ladies is your mother?
Auquel des hommes parle-t-il? To which of the men is he speaking?
Voici deux livres; lequel voulez-vous? Here are two books; which one do you wish?

288. Days of the Week. The following are the names of the days of the week:

lundi [lœ̃di]	Monday	**vendredi** [vɑ̃drədi]	Friday
mardi [mardi]	Tuesday	**samedi** [samdi]	Saturday
mercredi [mɛrkrədi]	Wednesday	**dimanche** [dimɑ̃:ʃ]	Sunday
jeudi [ʒødi]	Thursday		

NOTE. Notice the use of **c'est** in question and answer regarding days of the week.

Quel jour est-ce aujourd'hui? What day is today?
C'est aujourd'hui jeudi. Today is Thursday.

DRILL EXERCISE

289. 1. What day was yesterday? 2. Yesterday was Monday. 3. What day will tomorrow be? 4. Tomorrow will be Sunday. 5. A week has seven days. 6. Which of them do you like best? 7. Do you like Sunday better than Monday? 8. Here are the friends to whom I was speaking. 9. Here is a thing about which I was thinking. 10. Mary is studying her lessons, after which she will play on the piano. 11. Tell me what you are thinking about. 12. He had means to live on. 13. He had things to eat and drink. 14. He had materials to write with. 15. What a fine day! 16. What a poor book! 17. What a beautiful town! 18. What town is this? 19. Who is your friend? 20. Who is that man?

290. VOCABULARY

auparavant [oparavɑ̃] before (*of time*)
bout *m.* [bu] end
casier *m.* [kazje] box (*at post office*)
clef *f.* [kle] key
content [kɔ̃tɑ̃] glad
direction *f.* [direksjɔ̃] control
espérer [ɛspere] to hope
façade *f.* [fasad] front
franc [frɑ̃] franc, a French coin
gouvernement *m.* [guvernəmɑ̃] government
inscription *f.* [ɛ̃skripsjɔ̃] inscription, sign
journée *f.* [ʒurne] day
louer [lwe] to rent, engage
mauvais [mɔvɛ] bad, poor
paquet *m.* [pakɛ] package
poche *f.* [pɔʃ] pocket
poli [pɔli] polite
se présenter [sə prezɑ̃te] to present oneself, appear
quelque [kɛlkə] some, a few
recevoir [rəsəvwaːr] to receive
sous [su] under
sottise *f.* [sɔtiːz] stupidity

ainsi que [ɛ̃si kə] as well as
aller chercher [ale ʃɛrʃe] to go for
carte postale illustrée *f.* [kart pɔstal ilystre] picture post card
la grande poste [la grɑ̃ːd pɔst] the general post office
lettre recommandée [letrə rəkɔmɑ̃de] registered letter
mandat de poste *m.* [mɑ̃da də pɔst] post-office money order
poste restante *f.* [pɔst rɛstɑ̃ːt] general delivery
service des colis postaux [sɛrvis de kɔli pɔsto] parcel post
timbre-poste à deux sous [tɛ̃ːbrə pɔst a dø-su] two-cent stamp

EXERCISES

291. 1. Quel est ce bâtiment dont nous voyons [1] la façade au bout de cette rue? 2. J'espère recevoir une lettre de mon frère qui demeure à la Nouvelle-Orléans. 3. Il devait [2] m'envoyer un mandat-poste. 4. Je

[1] Pres. indic. 1st pers. pl. of **voir**, *to see.*
[2] *Was to;* past descriptive of **devoir**, *to owe*, an irregular verb.

reçois [1] mes lettres poste restante. 5. Si j'avais de quoi écrire, j'écrirais [2] une carte postale. 6. Voici deux cartes postales illustrées que j'ai achetées ce matin. 7. Laquelle voulez-vous? 8. De qui avez-vous reçu des lettres hier? 9. D'un ami qui demeure à Chicago. 10. Ce matin, j'ai reçu deux paquets par le service des colis postaux. 11. J'ai quelques lettres à mettre à la poste, mais elles ne sont pas affranchies. 12. Quel est le port d'une lettre pour l'étranger? 13. C'est un franc. 14. Voici des lettres recommandées et des journaux pour l'étranger. 15. Il y a beaucoup de bureaux de poste à Paris. 16. On les indique par l'inscription, Postes et Télégraphes. 17. Le télégraphe et le téléphone, ainsi que les postes, sont sous la direction du gouvernement. 18. Je suis content d'avoir vu la grande poste. 19. Quel bel édifice!

292. 1. Yesterday was Saturday and Charles went for the mail. 2. His father rents a small box at the post office in which the clerks place his letters. 3. But this time Charles forgot the key. 4. When he arrived at the post office he did not have it in his pocket. 5. « Very well, » he said to himself, « I will ask the clerk at the window to give me the mail. » 6. The clerk to whom he presented himself was very courteous. 7. Here are several letters for your father. 8. There is also one for you. 9. Do you wish to take them with you? 10. The postman will deliver them this afternoon. 11. Thank you, I will take them myself. 12. But what stupidity! 13. Here are letters on which my father put stamps and which he asked me to post. 14. I have carried them in my pocket and forgot to post them. 15. Here are letters which were not stamped. 16. I will buy some stamps at the window. 17. I wish ten two-cent stamps. 18. Thank you. 19. I shall put them on the letters.

293. Oral. 1. Mary is going to post some letters for her mother. 2. Which of these letters are stamped? 3. Which are not stamped? 4. Who has some stamps? 5. I have some. 6. For which of the letters is the postage two [3] cents? 7. For which of them is the postage one cent? 8. Here is the one which goes to France and the postage is five cents. 10. It is sometimes more than ten cents for packages. 11. Mary has stamps for all the letters. 12. What pretty stamps! 13. What is this new stamp? 14. She has not seen it before. 15. Mary carries the letters and packages to the post office. 16. She asks there, « Are there any letters for me today? » 17. « Yes, miss, here they are. » 18. Tomorrow is Sunday, and the post office will be closed.

[1] Pres. indic. 1st pers. sing. of **recevoir,** *to receive.*

[2] *Would write;* the conditional mood.

[3] Insert **de** before the numeral.

294. Conversation.

1. Allez-vous souvent à la poste?
2. Le facteur vous apporte-t-il vos lettres?
3. Quand distribue-t-il les lettres?
4. Avez-vous de quoi écrire?
5. Écrivez-vous beaucoup de lettres?
6. Quel est le port des lettres pour l'étranger?
7. Combien coûte une lettre recommandée pour l'étranger?
8. Y a-t-il beaucoup de bureaux de poste à Paris?
9. Comment les indique-t-on?
10. Le télégraphe et le téléphone sont-ils sous la direction du gouvernement aux États-Unis?
11. Est-ce que le facteur vous apporte des lettres le dimanche?
12. Recevez-vous (*do you receive*) vos lettres poste restante?

LESSON XXIV

295. Interrogative Phrases.

1. For the use of **est-ce que** in introducing questions, see Lesson VI (**116**).

Est-ce que vous êtes allé au théâtre hier soir? Did you go to the theater last night?

2. **Qui** as subject may be replaced by **qui est-ce qui,** *who?* or **qu'est-ce qui,** *what?*

Qui est-ce qui a chanté hier soir? Who sang last night?
Qui est-ce qui vous l'a dit? Who told it to you?
Qu'est-ce qui vous a empêché d'aller à l'école ce matin? What prevented you from going to school this morning?

3. **Qui** as object may be replaced by **qui est-ce que.**

Qui est-ce que vous cherchez? For whom are you looking?
À qui est-ce que vous parlez? To whom are you speaking?

4. **Qu'est-ce que** may generally be used instead of **que.**

Qu'est-ce que vous avez trouvé? What have you found?
Qu'est-ce que vous avez fait hier? What did you do yesterday?

NOTE. Notice the position of the subject pronoun when questions are introduced by phrases like **est-ce que** and **qu'est-ce que.**

296. Dating. In expressing dates, observe the following rules:

1. For the first of the month use the ordinal **premier.**

Le premier octobre, le premier janvier. The first of October, the first of January.

2. For the other days of the month use the cardinal numbers.

Le trois juillet, le sept août. The third of July, the seventh of August.

3. Place the number before the month. Do not translate *of* in such phrases as *the fourth of January*. In dates of the Christian era from 1001 to 1999 **mil** is used instead of **mille.**

En mil huit cent cinquante. In eighteen hundred and fifty.

4. After 1100, the years of our era may also be expressed in hundreds, as is the usual English practice.

Dix-huit cent cinquante, 1850.
Dix-neuf cent quatorze, 1914.

297. Months. The months of the year are named as follows:

janvier [ʒɑ̃vje]	January	**juillet** [ʒyjɛ *or* ʒɥijɛ]	July
février [fevrie]	February	**août** [u *or* ut]	August
mars [mars]	March	**septembre** [sɛptɑ̃:br]	September
avril [avril]	April	**octobre** [ɔktɔbr]	October
mai [mɛ]	May	**novembre** [nɔvɑ̃:br]	November
juin [ʒɥɛ̃]	June	**décembre** [desɑ̃:br]	December

Note. The names of the months are all masculine and are written with small letters.

DRILL EXERCISE

298. 1. Whose ticket is this? 2. It belongs to Charles. 3. He let it fall from his hand. 4. Whose pupil are you? 5. Whose hat is this? 6. What are you doing this morning? 7. Who is playing the piano? 8. Who is in the dining room? 9. Who is going to dine with me? 10. Whom have you invited? 11. Whom did you meet? 12. To whom did you send the book? 13. What are you looking for? 14. What are they talking about? 15. What! Have you not studied your lesson?

299. VOCABULARY

adresser [adrɛse] to address
apprendre [1] [aprɑ̃:dr] to learn, teach
cadeau *m.* [kado] gift
charmant [ʃarmɑ̃] charming
commencer [kɔmɑ̃se] to begin
comprendre [kɔ̃prɑ̃:dr] to include
compter [kɔ̃te] to intend
dernièrement [dɛrnjɛrmɑ̃] recently
dévoué [devwe] devoted
se diviser [sə divize] to be divided
division *f.* [divizjɔ̃] division
environ [ɑ̃virɔ̃] about
espace *m.* [ɛspɑ:s] space
expliquer [ɛksplike] to explain
félicitation *f.* [felisitɑsjɔ̃] congratulation
fêter [fɛte] to celebrate
former [fɔrme] to form, make
lendemain *m.* [lɑ̃dmɛ̃] tomorrow
nombre *m.* [nɔ̃:br] number

[1] Past participle is **appris.**

oublieux, oublieuse [ubliø, ubliø:z] forgetful
pendant que [pɑ̃dɑ̃ kə] while
poème *m.* [pɔɛ:m] poem
quoi! [kwa] what!
reçu [rəsy] received, *p. p. of* **recevoir**
saint *m.* [sɛ̃] saint
suivant [sɥivɑ̃] next
terminer [tɛrmine] to end
tomber [tõbe] to fall, occur
vers [vɛ:r] about, toward
visite *f.* [vizit] visit

à l'occasion de [a lɔkɑzjõ də] on the occasion of
anniversaire de naissance *m.* [aniversɛ:r də nɛsɑ̃:s] anniversary of birth
comme il suit [kɔm il sɥi] as follows
d'aujourd'hui en huit [d ɔʒurdɥi ɑ̃ ɥit] a week from today
d'ici cinq mois [d isi sɛ̃k mwɑ] within five months
il y a quinze jours [il j a kɛ̃:z ʒu:r] two weeks ago
jour de naissance *m.* [ʒu:r də nesɑ̃:s] birthday
quel jour du mois sommes-nous aujourd'hui? [kɛl ʒu:r dy mwɑ sɔm nu ɔʒurdɥi] What date is it?
tout à vous [tut a vu] sincerely yours

EXERCISES

300. 1. Je vais écrire une lettre à ma cousine Marie qui a le même âge que moi. 2. Elle demeure aux États-Unis. 3. Y a-t-il une plume ici? 4. En voici une. 5. À qui est la plume? 6. Elle n'est pas à moi. 7. Elle est à mon frère, mais je m'en servirai. 8. On commence une lettre par la date. 9. À quoi est-ce que je pense? 10. On commence une lettre par le nom de l'endroit. 11. Quel jour du mois sommes-nous aujourd'hui? 12. Nous sommes le 15. 13. Quel jour de la semaine est-ce? 14. C'est lundi. 15. Quel mois de l'année est-ce? 16. C'est juillet. 17. Notre professeur de français nous a parlé aujourd'hui des divisions du temps. 18. Pendant qu'il parlait des siècles, je lui ai demandé ce que c'est qu'un siècle. 19. « Quoi »! dit-il, « avez-vous oublié ce que c'est qu'un siècle »? 20. « Eh bien », répondit-il « je vous l'expliquerai. 21. Un siècle comprend un espace de cent ans. 22. En combien de mois l'année se divise-t-elle? 23. L'année se divise en douze mois. » 24. Maintenant je commencerai ma lettre. 25. Paris, le 15 juillet. 26. Ma chère cousine, qu'est-ce que vous faites ces jours-ci? 27. Qui est votre maître de piano? 28. Qui est-ce que vous avez invité à dîner dernièrement? 29. Mon anniversaire tombe le premier juillet. 30. Mais en France on ne fête pas le jour de sa naissance; on ne fête que le jour de son saint. 31. La fête de mon saint tombera d'aujourd'hui en huit. 32. Tout à vous.

301. 1. What day of the month is it? 2. I have even forgotten what month it is. 3. How many months make a year? 4. What! You have forgotten what month it is, and how many months make a year! 5. How

forgetful [1] you are! 6. What have you been thinking about? You have forgotten what everybody has learned. 7. What did you study at school? 8. What sort of pupil were you? 9. I will tell you what you did not learn. 10. Twelve months make a year. 11. Are you listening to me? 12. To whom are you listening, to me or to Charles? 13. You asked me what month it is. 14. It is May. 15. I will also tell you what date it is. 16. It is the first of May. 17. Tomorrow will be the second of May and the next day the third. 18. The birthday of Charles' mother was (**tomba**) two weeks ago. 19. What did he give her? 20. What kind of present did he buy for her? 21. In what store did he buy it? 22. A week from today will be Charles' birthday. 23. What shall we give him? 24. Who will speak first (**le premier**)?

302. Oral. 1. Charles has received a letter from his cousin in France. 2. What did he say in it? 3. To whom did he address it? 4. He addressed it to Charles. 5. How did it begin? [2] 6. He began it as follows: « Paris, April 2. My dear cousin. » 7. And how did he end it? 8. He ended it with the words, « Your devoted cousin. » 9. Will you tell us what your cousin said and what he was thinking about? 10. He said: « My best felicitations to Charles on the occasion of his birthday. 11. I am thinking of going to the United States. 12. I intend to start about the first of October. » 13. We shall be glad to see him. What a charming cousin! 14. In what month was this letter written? 15. Was [3] it not April? 16. How long will it be before the visit of this cousin? 17. Within about five months. 18. What are the names of these months? 19. Which of them do you like best? 20. Have they all the same number of days? 21. Thirty days have September, April, June and November. 22. Whose poem is this?

303. Conversation.

1. À qui est-ce que je vais écrire une lettre?
2. Comment s'appelle ma cousine?
3. Quel âge a-t-elle?
4. Où demeure-t-elle?
5. Comment commence-t-on une lettre?
6. Quel jour de la semaine est-ce?
8. Quel mois de l'année est-ce?
9. De quoi notre professeur nous a-t-il parlé?
10. Qu'est-ce que je lui ai demandé?
11. Combien de temps un siècle comprend-il?
12. En combien de mois l'année se divise-t-elle?

[1] For the order see **499**, 1, a.

[2] Past descriptive.

[3] French idiom requires the present.

LESSON XXV

304. Conditional of *parler, finir, vendre.*

		Endings [1]
je parlerais [ʒə parlərɛ]	I should speak	**–ais**
tu parlerais [ty parlərɛ]		**–ais**
il parlerait [il parlərɛ]		**–ait**
nous parlerions [nu parlərjõ]	we should speak	**–ions**
vous parleriez [vu parlərje]		**–iez**
ils parleraient [il parlərɛ]		**–aient**
je finirais [ʒə finirɛ]	I should finish	**–ais**
tu finirais [ty finirɛ]		**–ais**
il finirait [il finirɛ]		**–ait**
nous finirions [nu finirjõ]	we should finish	**–ions**
vous finiriez [vu finirje]		**–iez**
ils finiraient [il finirɛ]		**–aient**
je vendrais [ʒə vãdrɛ]	I should sell	**–ais**
tu vendrais [ty vãdrɛ]		**–ais**
il vendrait [il vãdrɛ]		**–ait**
nous vendrions [nu vãdriõ]	we should sell	**–ions**
vous vendriez [vu vãdrie]		**–iez**
ils vendraient [il vãdrɛ]		**–aient**

DRILL EXERCISE

305. 1. Note that the endings are alike in the three verbs.

2. Compare the stems with those of the future.

3. Compare the endings with those of the past descriptive.

4. Write the conditional of the following: **demander, compter, entendre, répondre, munir, punir.**

5. The endings of the conditional of **avoir** and **être** are the same as those of the regular verbs and the part of the verb to which they are added is the same as in the future. Write out the paradigm of these verbs (**je serais,** etc., **j'aurais,** etc.,). The conditional of the irregular verb **vouloir,** *to wish,* is **je voudrais,** *I should like.* Complete the inflection.

6. The conditional and the past future have the same forms. They are different in function, the former being a mood and the latter a tense. (See below.)

[1] Notice that **ai** is here pronounced as open **e** [ɛ], which serves to distinguish this tense from the future where **ai** = close **e** [e].

306. The Conditional in Independent Clauses. This may be partially illustrated by the English usage with *should* and *would:*

1. I should be glad to see him.
2. He would like to read this book.
3. They would prefer to stay here.
4. We should like to go with you.

These sentences all refer to the future from the standpoint of the present and to imagined situations with regard to which the statements are made. In French this form of expression, which denotes the attitude of the speaker toward the action and is, therefore, modal, is rendered by the conditional.

1. **Je serais content de le voir.**
2. **Il voudrait lire ce livre.**
3. **Ils préféreraient rester ici.**
4. **Nous voudrions aller avec vous.**

NOTE 1. The conditional may also refer to an imagined situation in the past.

J'aurais été content de l'accompagner. I should have been glad to go with him.

NOTE 2. In the conditional there may be a suppressed condition in the mind of the speaker, as in

Je serais content de le voir. I should be glad to see him (if he should visit me).
Il voudrait lire ce livre. He would like to read this book (if he had the opportunity).

307. The Conditional in Dependent Clauses. The conditional occurs in different kinds of dependent clauses, among which are indirect discourse and indirect questions.

Il demanda quels livres nous aimerions lire. He asked what books we should like to read.

Il a demandé quel jour ils préféreraient le voir. He asked what day they would prefer to see him.

Je savais que vous seriez désappointé. I knew that you would be disappointed.

NOTE. In indirect discourse a verb of saying, thinking, knowing and the like is used in the main clause, and a **que**-clause gives the substance of what is said, thought, known, etc. Indirect questions are questions in dependent clauses.

308. Past Future. In form, this tense is identical with the conditional mood, the latter being a late outgrowth of the former. Its purpose is to express future action (or state) from a past standpoint. It occurs in clauses after verbs of past time expressed or implied, and does not contain a suppressed condition. Whereas the conditional is a mood, the past future is purely a tense.

Il a demandé si je serais chez moi ce soir. He asked if I would be at home this evening.

Il a dit que le temps s'éclaircirait demain. He said that it would clear up tomorrow.

309. *Celui* as Antecedent. The demonstrative pronoun, **celui,** *fem.* **celle,** *plur.* **ceux, celles,** *this, that, these, those,* may be the antecedent of a relative. In this usage it often has the force of a personal pronoun, *he, she, they,* etc.

Celui avec qui j'ai joué au tennis est mon ami. The man I played tennis with is my friend.

Malheur à celui qui l'a dit! Woe to him who said it!

On respecte ceux qui se respectent. We respect those who respect themselves.

Celui qui dompte son cœur vaut mieux que celui qui prend des villes. He that rules his spirit is better than he who takes cities.

Il avait aimé celle dont il parlait. He had loved her of whom he was speaking.

310. *Celui* as Pronoun of Reference. **Celui** may stand for some noun or pronoun in the sentence with which it agrees in gender and number. It is usually followed by the preposition **de.**

Vous avez mon livre et celui de mon frère. You have my book and that of my brother.

La couleur de l'eau diffère de celle de l'encre. The color of water differs from that of ink.

311. The Indefinite Pronouns *personne* and *rien.*

1. In the affirmative sense **personne** (Latin **persona,** *person*) means *any one, anybody,* and **rien** (Latin **res,** *thing, object*), *anything.* Neither refers to a definite antecedent.

Vous le savez mieux que personne. You know it better than anyone.

C'est plus beau que rien au monde. It is more beautiful than anything in the world.

Y a-t-il rien de nouveau? Is there any news?

2. Used with a negative, **personne** signifies *no one,* **rien,** *nothing.* This usage occurs:

a. When the negative is expressed.

Personne n'y pense. No one thinks of it.

Personne ne vous a demandé. No one has asked for you.

Il ne donne rien aux pauvres. He gives nothing to the poor.

NOTE. With **personne** and **rien** the negative is **ne** (not **ne . . . pas**).

b. When the negative is omitted; this occurs in answers to questions and where the predicate is not expressed.

Qui y pense? Personne. Who thinks of it? No one.
Qu'est-ce qu'il vous a dit? Rien. What did he say to you? Nothing.
Personne dans les rues? No one in the streets?

312. EXERCISE

Fill the blanks with **personne, rien,** *the proper forms of* **celui, celle,** etc.:

1. —— n'a-t-il jamais vu —— de pareil?
2. —— n'a-t-il jamais écrit une lettre pareille?
3. Je pense que —— n'est arrivé.
4. Il le sait mieux que ——.
5. Qu'est-ce que vous lui avez dit? ——
6. —— ne vous l'a-t-il raconté?
7. —— n'y pense.
8. —— n'est venu.
9. Je n'ai vu ——.
10. Je n'ai —— fait aujourd'hui.
11. Mon chapeau est plus beau que —— de mon frère.
12. Vous avez mon crayon et —— de Charles.
13. J'ai mes livres et —— de mon frère.
14. Nous aimons —— qui sont nos amis.
15. Nous n'aimons pas toujours —— qui sont nos voisins.
16. —— qui étudie bien sa leçon la récitera bien.

2. *Point out the conditional and past future in the following sentences:*

1. Je croyais qu'il neigerait. I thought it would snow.
2. Nous croyions qu'il ferait beau temps. We thought it would be fine weather.
3. S'il était ici, je lui parlerais. If he were here, I would speak to him.
4. Si j'avais le livre, je vous le prêterais. If I had the book, I would lend it to you.
5. Charles voudrait voyager avec nous. Charles would like to travel with us.
6. Il a dit qu'il partirait demain. He said that he would leave tomorrow.
7. Je devrais écrire une lettre aujourd'hui. I should write a letter today.
8. Nous serions contents si nos amis venaient demain. We should be glad if our friends would come tomorrow.

9. Je croyais qu'il reviendrait aujourd'hui. I thought he would return today.

LESSON XXVI

313. VOCABULARY

ainsi [ẽsi] thus, so
autre [o:tr] other, else
consister [kõsiste] to consist
détaillant *m.* [detajã] retailer
devenir [dəvni:r] to become
différer (de) [difere də] to differ from
gagner [gaɲe] to make, gain
impossible [ẽposibl] impossible
marchand *m.* [marʃã] merchant
métier *m.* [metje] calling, business
négociant *m.* [negɔsjã] wholesaler, wholesale merchant
pardonner, [pardɔne] to excuse, pardon
perte *f.* [pɛrt] loss
plupart *f.* [plypa:r] majority
préférence *f.* [preferã:s] preference
se préparer [sə prepare] to prepare oneself
propriétaire *m.* [prɔprietɛ:r] proprietor
université *f.* [yniversite] university

à la fois [a la fwa] at one time, at the same time
à présent [a prezã] at present, now
avoir raison [avwa:r rɛzõ] to be right
dans les affaires [dã lez afɛ:r] engaged in business
au détail [o deta:j] at retail
en gros [ã gro] at wholesale
être dans le commerce [ɛt:rə dã lə kɔmɛrs] to be in business
faire le commerce [fɛ:r lə kɔmɛrs] to do business
femme d'affaires [fam d afɛ:r] business woman
gagner de l'argent [gaɲe də larʒã] to make money
genre de commerce *m.* [ʒã:r də kɔmɛrs] line of business
homme d'affaires *m.* [ɔm d afɛ:r] business man
maison de commerce *f.* [mezõ də kɔmɛrs] business house
se préparer aux affaires [sə prepare oz afɛ:r] to prepare oneself for business
se retirer des affaires [sə rətire dez afɛ:r] to retire from business
vendre à bénéfice [vã:dr a benefis] to sell at a profit
vendre à perte [vã:dr a pɛrt] to sell at a loss
vivre de ses rentes [vi:vrə də se rã:t] to live on one's income

EXERCISES

314. 1. Quand on visite une ville on voit beaucoup de maisons de commerce. 2. Il n'y en a pas dans toutes les rues parce que ceci ne serait pas commode. 3. Ceux qui vendent au détail s'appellent détaillants. 4. Ceux qui vendent en gros s'appellent négociants. 5. Personne n'est à la fois négociant et détaillant. 6. Qui a dit que le père de Charles vend

en gros? Personne. 7. Charles a dit que son père ne voudrait pas vendre en gros. 8. Il aimerait beaucoup mieux vendre au détail. 9. Dans lequel de ces deux genres de commerce gagne-t-on le plus d'argent? 10. Lequel serait le plus agréable? 11. Beaucoup de personnes en France sont dans les affaires. 12. On voit souvent des femmes qui sont dans le commerce. 13. On les appelle femmes d'affaires. 14. On dirait que les Français aiment beaucoup être dans les affaires. 15. Un étranger a demandé à un père français quel métier son fils préférerait. 16. Préférerait-il être homme d'affaires ou professeur? 17. Vous n'avez pas parlé de mon métier, mais vous avez parlé de celui de mon fils. 18. Il n'aura pas le même métier que moi. 19. Il me serait très agréable de me retirer des affaires et de vivre de mes rentes. 20. Mais il me serait impossible de me retirer des affaires à présent.

315. 1. A great many people are engaged in business. 2. Americans like business and make money out of it.[1] 3. Would they prefer business to any other[2] occupation? 4. Has anyone said this? 5. But perhaps the majority of Americans are preparing themselves for business. 6. When they go to the university, they think a great deal about it. 7. Is it true that they do not think of anything else? 8. Does anyone say this? 9. Our neighbor has a son who goes to the university and who is preparing himself for business. 10. This young man says he would rather be a business man than a teacher. 11. I think that everyone would not have the same preference. 12. I will ask what preference you would have. 13. A merchant buys and sells. 14. When a man has something to sell, or when (**que**) he buys something which he desires to sell, he is engaged in business. 15. He is called a business man. 16. He who does not buy to sell is not engaged in business. 17. My neighbor's line of business differs from that of his friends. 18. He is a wholesaler, they are retailers. 19. He sometimes thinks that it would be more pleasant to be a retailer. 20. They would often prefer to be wholesalers. 21. They think that they would make much more money. 22. I asked Charles which he would prefer to be, a wholesaler, or a retailer. 23. Charles answered that he would prefer to be a proprietor. 24. The proprietor sometimes retires from business to live on his income.

316. Oral. 1. He who is engaged in business is called a business man. 2. She who engages in business is called a business woman. 3. Does the profession of the one differ from that of the other? No one would think so (**le**). 4. Would you like to be a business man? 5. I think that I

[1] *Out of it* = **y**.

[2] **Toute autre occupation.**

should like it very much. 6. It would be pleasant to be buying and selling every day in the week. 7. Pardon me, you have forgotten Sunday. 8. What does one buy and sell on Sunday? Nothing. 9. You are right, one buys and sells on the other days of the week. 10. Does one always sell at a profit? 11. What [1] would be more pleasant than to sell always at a profit? Nothing. 12. But who does it? No one. 13. Every (**tout**) business man sometimes sells at a loss. 14. He who makes a profit which is not too large is the best business man. 15. I asked Mary what profession she would like. 16. Would she like to become a business woman? 17. Mary said that she would prefer to become a teacher of (the) piano. 18. This profession differs from that of the business man. 19. Which of them, do you think, would be the more pleasant? 20. Would it be more pleasant to retire from business and live on your income?

317. Conversation.

1. Comment s'appellent ceux qui vendent en gros?
2. Comment s'appellent ceux qui vendent au détail?
3. Le père de Charles, vend-il en gros ou au détail?
4. Dans lequel de ces deux genres de commerce gagne-t-on le plus d'argent?
5. Lequel serait le plus agréable?
6. Y a-t-il des femmes qui sont dans les affaires?
7. Les Américains aiment-ils le commerce?
8. Quel genre de commerce préféreriez-vous?
9. Expliquez en français les mots suivants: négociant, détaillant, maison de commerce.
10. Un marchand vend-il toujours à bénéfice?

LESSON XXVII

318. Indefinite Pronouns.

1. ***Aucun*** **Affirmative.** **Aucun,** *fem.* **aucune,** *any, any one,* in meaning shades into *any one at all,* emphasizing the indefinite idea. Possibly for this reason it occurs chiefly in negative sentences or in those implying a negative. It agrees with the person or thing referred to in gender and number.

Cette maison est plus commode qu'aucune de celles que j'ai vues. This house is more convenient than any of those I have seen.

[1] **Qu'est-ce qui.**

Il m'a défendu de voir aucun de mes amis. He has forbidden me to see any of my friends.
Il avait pensé que son frère ne courait aucun danger. He had thought that his brother was not in any danger.
Ont-ils aucune preuve solide? Have they any solid proof?

2. ***Aucun* with Negative.** **Aucun** followed by **ne** means *none, no one.* It agrees in gender and number with the noun to which it refers.

Aucun de ces livres n'est intéressant. None of these books is interesting.
Aucun de ces chapeaux ne me va bien. None of these hats becomes me.
Aucune de ces maisons n'est à vendre. None of these houses is for sale.

NOTE 1. **Aucun** with **ne** becomes an emphatic negative, *no one at all.*

NOTE 2. Other negative pronouns are **nul . . . ne,** and **pas un . . . ne,** *no one, nobody, not one:* **nul n'est prophète en son pays.** No man is a prophet in his own country.

3. **Quelqu'un** as pronoun means *any one, someone, some,* and agrees in gender and number with the person or thing referred to. It has the following forms:

Singular: (*m.*) **quelqu'un,** (*f.*) **quelqu'une**
Plural: (*m.*) **quelques-uns,** (*f.*) **quelques-unes**

Quelqu'un nous a raconté cela. Some one told us that.
Quelques-uns de mes voisins le croient. Some of my neighbors believe it.
Quelques-unes de ces maisons sont à vendre. Some of those houses are for sale.
Y a-t-il quelqu'un là? Is there anyone there?

4. **Quelque Chose.** The noun, **chose,** *thing,* is feminine, but **quelque chose,** *something,* is masculine. **Quelque chose de** may be followed by adjectives used substantively.

Quelque chose de bon, something good.
Quelque chose de beau, something beautiful.
Quelque chose est arrivé. Something has happened.

5. **Chacun,** *f.* **chacune,** signifies *every one, each one;* in the latter sense it may stand in apposition to the subject for the purpose of giving it a distributive meaning.

Chacun veut être heureux. Everyone wishes to be happy.
Chacun nous dit les secrets du voisin. Each one tells us his neighbor's secrets.
Ils auront chacun leur part. They will each have their share.
Ils ont voté, chacun à son tour. They voted each in his turn.
Chacun de ces livres me coûte cinq francs. Each one of these books costs me five francs.

319. Indefinite Pronominal Adjectives. The pronouns mentioned in this lesson are also adjectives, or have corresponding adjective forms.

The adjective form of **quelqu'un** is **quelque**; of **chacun**, it is **chaque**.

Quelques (= *few*) denotes a more limited quantity than **du** or **des.**

Il n'a de nom dans aucune langue. It has no name in any language.

Chaque pays a ses coutumes. Every country has its customs.

Quelques instants après, Derville rentra. A few moments later, Derville returned.

Nul obstacle n'arrêta sa marche. No obstacle stopped his progress.

320. Present Participle. The English present participle ends in **–ing**, as in *giving, finishing, selling*. In French the ending is **–ant**, which is added to the stem of the past descriptive, as **donnant, finissant, vendant.** The present participle of **avoir** is **ayant**, *having;* of **être**, it is **étant**, *being*. As a participle it remains unchanged in all verbs, and may not be preceded by the preposition **en**, its main function being to indicate accompanying or contemporaneous action.[1]

Étant en retard, il a commencé à courir. Being late, he began to run.

Je sortis, laissant la comtesse assise auprès du lit de son mari, et pleurant à chaudes larmes. I went out, leaving the countess near the bed of her husband, and weeping bitterly.

Ayant un petit magasin il ne fait pas beaucoup d'affaires. Having a small shop he does not do much business.

NOTE. **Ayant** or **étant** with the past participle forms the present perfect participle.

Ayant mis son chapeau, il sortit. Having put on his hat, he went out.

321. Gerund. The gerund has the same ending, **–ant**, as the present participle, but differs from it in being a verbal noun. It is used with the preposition **en**, and expresses a variety of relations, such as means, manner, time, cause, etc. This construction is easily confused with the present participle.

En étudiant, on apprend. By studying, one learns.

En forgeant on devient forgeron. By working at the forge, one becomes a blacksmith. (Practice makes perfect.)

322. Participial Nouns and Adjectives. The present participle is often a noun or simple adjective.

Les vivants sont plus heureux que les mourants. The living are more fortunate than the dying.

[1] The present participle may also denote antecedent action, as in **voyant une église il y est entré**, seeing a church he went in.

Le survenant était bien simplement vêtu. The new-comer was dressed simply.
Son père était bien portant. His father was in good health.
«Voilà Maxime,» s'écria la tremblante comtesse. «There is Maxime,» exclaimed the trembling countess.
Les élèves réciteront les leçons suivantes. The pupils will recite the following lessons.
Ils liront aussi ces livres intéressants. They will also read these interesting books.

323. *Complete the following sentences by inserting the proper indefinite adjective or pronoun.*

1. Avez-vous lu —— des livres que je vous ai envoyés? 2. Cette maison est plus belle qu' —— de celles que j'ai vues aujourd'hui. 3. —— nous dit les secrets du voisin. 4. —— ne va à l'église tous les jours. 5. —— instants après, il est sorti. 6. Y a-t-il —— là? 7. —— de ces livres me coûtent dix francs. 8. —— écrivain ne le dit. 9. —— de mes voisins n'est ici aujourd'hui. 10. Charles m'a envoyé —— des livres qu'il a achetés à Paris l'année dernière. 11. —— pense à soi. 12. Ils recevront —— leur part. 13. A-t-il —— des fleurs? 14. Je n'ai vu —— ce matin.

324. *Translate into French.*

1. I like him better than any of my friends.
2. Have you seen any of our neighbors?
3. None of them is at home today.
4. No one stays at home every day.
5. I have not seen anyone this week.
6. He does something every day.
7. He does nothing on Sunday.
8. Would you like to read an interesting book?
9. Some one has sent me a charming present.
10. Mary has a charming sister.
11. Her brother works the whole day, beginning at 8 o'clock.
12. Being in business, he does not travel very much.
13. Having many interesting books, he likes nothing better than to read them.
14. Did he tell you anything else?
15. Have you seen anyone?
16. Some one told me something about our neighbors.
17. The following lessons are more interesting.

LESSON XXVIII

325. VOCABULARY

âgé [ɑʒe] old, aged
alors [alɔːr] then
attrayant [atrɛjɑ̃] attractive
caissier *m.* [kɛsje] cashier
clientèle *f.* [kliɑ̃tɛl] customers
commis *m.* [kɔmi] clerk
comptabilité *f.* [kɔ̃tabilite] book-keeping
croire [krwaːr] to think
difficile [difisil] difficult
employer [ɑ̃plwaje] to employ
enseigner [ɑ̃seɲe] to teach
facile [fasil] easy
façon *f.* [fasɔ̃] way, fashion
flatteur *m.* [flatœːr] flatterer
important [ɛ̃portɑ̃] important
intéressant [ɛ̃teresɑ̃] interesting
malade [malad] ill, sick
manière *f.* [manjɛːr] manner
pendant [pɑ̃dɑ̃] during
personnel *m.* [pɛrsɔnɛl] staff (*of employees*)
place *f.* [plas] place, position, seat
poli (envers) [pɔli ɑ̃vɛr] polite to
quantité [kɑ̃tite] quantity
recommandation *f.* [rəkɔmɑ̃dɑsjɔ̃] recommendation
remplacer [rɑ̃plase] to take the place of
renseignement *m.* [rɑ̃sɛɲmɑ̃] information
vacances *f.* [vakɑ̃ːs] vacation

à propos de [a propo də] about
aptitude aux affaires *f.* [aptityd oz afɛːr] talent for business
commis-voyageur *m.* [kɔmi vwajaʒœːr] travelling salesman
en vente [ɑ̃ vɑ̃ːt] on sale, for sale
faire de bonnes affaires [fɛːr də bɔnz afɛːr] to do a good business
je lirai [ʒə lire] I shall read
je verrai [ʒə vɛre] I shall see
obtenir une place [ɔptəniːr yn plas] to get or obtain a position
teneur de livres *m.* [tənœːr də liːvr] book-keeper
tenir des livres [təniːr de liːvr] to keep books
une place vacante [yn plas vakɑ̃ːt] a vacancy

EXERCISES

326. 1. Un jour Charles dit à son père qu'il voudrait avoir une place dans une maison de commerce. 2. « Les grandes vacances commenceront bientôt, » dit Charles, « et n'ayant rien d'autre à faire, je crois qu'il serait très agréable d'avoir une place dans une maison de commerce pour l'été. » 3. « Quelle espèce de place voudrais-tu, » demanda le père? 4. « Est-ce que tu voudrais être commis, caissier, teneur de livres, ou peut-être commis-voyageur? 5. « Oh, » dit Charles, « je voudrais être commis-voyageur, et visiter tous les jours des villes différentes. 6. Mais peut-être que je ne suis pas assez âgé pour être commis-voyageur. 7. Étant si jeune, je demanderai une place de commis. 8. Les com-

mis font toujours quelque chose d'intéressant. 9. Ils parlent avec la clientèle et ils vendent des marchandises.» 10. «Eh bien, Charles,» dit le père, «comment demanderais-tu une place à un marchand? 11. Qu'est-ce que tu lui dirais à propos de toi-même? 12. Est-ce que tu lui demanderais des renseignements sur son magasin et les prix de ses marchandises?» 13. «Mais oui,» dit Charles, «j'entrerais dans son magasin et je dirais, 'Bonjour, monsieur Dupont, vous avez un joli magasin. 14. C'est le plus beau magasin de cette ville, et il est meilleur qu'aucun de ceux que j'ai vus dans les autres villes que j'ai visitées. 15. Et quel est le prix de vos marchandises? 16. Tout le monde en parle et on dit que vous vendez vos marchandises à meilleur marché que les autres marchands.» 17. «Quel flatteur,» dit le père. 18. «Est-ce que monsieur Dupont emploierait une personne qui parle de cette façon»? 19. «Alors,» dit Charles, «je lui demanderais s'il y a une place vacante dans le personnel de son magasin.» 20. «Les grandes vacances commencent et je voudrais avoir une place de commis pour l'été. 21. Je ne voudrais pas être teneur de livres, mais je voudrais bien être commis.» 22. Que répondrait monsieur Dupont? 23. Je crois qu'il répondrait, «J'y penserai. 24. Venez me voir demain.»

327. 1. A merchant who sells at retail is called a retailer. 2. Having a small store, he does not have a large quantity of goods. 3. Selling at retail he does not employ travelling salesmen. 4. The retailer often has a very attractive store. 5. Have you seen any of the stores in our town? 6. They are more attractive than any of those which I have seen in other (**d'autres**) small towns. 7. One always finds something in them that he wants to buy. 8. A foreigner talking with me one day said that they were better than any of the stores in his country. 9. I like nothing better than to go into an attractive shop where the clerks are courteous. 10. A merchant who is doing a good business employs clerks, cashiers, and a book-keeper. 11. No one is more useful than the clerk. 12. By talking with the customers and being courteous, he sells the goods which the merchant has for sale. 13. Those who keep the books are called book-keepers. 14. Nothing is more important for a store than a good personnel. 15. Is there anything more difficult to (**à**) obtain?

328. Oral. 1. Would you like a position in a store. 2. Yes, sir, if I am not too young. 3. Do you go to school? 4. Yes, sir, but vacation has begun. 5. I do not go to school in the summer. 6. One likes to find something to do in vacation. 7. Have you a letter of recommendation? 8. Here is one from my teacher. 9. I will read it and see what he says about you. 10. It is a very interesting letter. 11. He says that

you are a very diligent pupil. 12. Have you any aptitude for business? 13. I think that I have some. 14. My father is a business man. 15. He taught me something about book-keeping. 16. Being in business himself, it was easy for him to teach me to keep books. 17. How many clerks and book-keepers and cashiers do you employ? 18. I employ a book-keeper, a cashier and three clerks. 19. But I have not done a very good business this year. 20. One of my clerks is ill. 21. Perhaps you would like to take his place for the summer. 22. I should be glad to do so. 23. Well, then, come tomorrow.

329. Conversation.

1. Qu'est-ce que Charles voulait faire pendant les grandes vacances?
2. Qu'a-t-il dit à son père?
3. Qu'est-ce que son père lui a répondu?
4. Quelle espèce de place Charles voulait-il?
5. Que veut dire commis-voyageur?
6. Que veut dire le mot 'clientèle'?
7. Que font les commis?
8. Comment s'appelle le marchand que Charles est allé voir?
9. Si vous cherchiez une place dans une maison de commerce, que demanderiez-vous au marchand?
10. Que faites-vous pendant les grandes vacances?

LESSON XXIX

330. Possessive Pronouns. The following table shows the possessive pronouns:

Singular

le mien [lə mjɛ̃]	**la mienne** [la mjɛn] (mine)
le tien [lə tjɛ̃]	**la tienne** [la tjɛn] (thine, yours)
le sien [lə sjɛ̃]	**la sienne** [la sjɛn] (his, hers, theirs)

Plural

les miens [le mjɛ̃]	**les miennes** [le mjɛn]
les tiens [le tjɛ̃]	**les tiennes** [le tjɛn]
les siens [le sjɛ̃]	**les siennes** [le sjɛn]

Singular

le nôtre [lə no:tr]	**la nôtre** [la no:tr] (ours)
le vôtre [lə vo:tr]	**la vôtre** [la vo:tr] (yours)
le leur [lə lœ:r]	**la leur** [la lœ:r] (theirs)

Plural

les nôtres [le no:tr]	les nôtres [le no:tr]
les vôtres [le vo:tr]	les vôtres [le vo:tr]
les leurs [le lœ:r]	les leurs [le lœ:r]

Note 1. Notice the definite article with these pronouns. Compare them with the corresponding forms of the possessive adjectives.

Note 2. When the pronouns are preceded by **à** or **de** the usual contractions with the article take place, e.g.

à le mien = au mien	**à les miens = aux miens**
de le mien = du mien	**de les miens = des miens**

331. The possessive pronouns, when they have definite antecedents, stand for nouns or other pronouns and indicate possession. In the sentence, *I have your hat and you have mine, mine* stands for *hat* and implies that it belongs to me. The usage in French is the same as in English.

J'ai son livre et il a le mien. I have his book and he has mine.
Il préfère son chapeau au vôtre. He prefers his hat to yours.
Nos idées sont meilleures que les siennes. Our ideas are better than his.

Note. Possessive pronouns have the same gender and number as their antecedents.

332. Possessives in the Predicate. When possessive pronouns occur in the predicate with **être,** they emphasize the fact that the object belongs to the particular person indicated by the pronoun and not to another. Mere possession without contrast of ownership is denoted by **à** with a disjunctive personal pronoun. Thus, *mine,* **à moi**; *his,* **à lui**; *yours,* **à vous.**

Ce billet est le mien. This ticket is *mine* (not *yours, his* or *theirs*).
Ce billet est à moi. This ticket is mine (it belongs to me).

333. Possessives as Nouns. When not referring to definite antecedents, the possessive pronouns become equivalent to nouns, denoting what belongs to a person, or is closely related to him. They are so used only in the masculine singular, meaning property, (compare the English *mine* and *thine*), and in the masculine plural when they signify one's family or one's party or side.

Je désire ce qui est mien. I want what is mine (*my property*).
Il désire ce qui est sien. He wants what is his.
Il aime les siens. He loves his family.
Nous avons perdu tous les nôtres. We have lost all our relatives.
Les nôtres ont remporté la victoire. Our men have won the victory.

334. Drill Exercise. *Fill the blanks with the proper possessive and disjunctive pronouns.*

1. J'ai vu votre maison; avez-vous vu ——? 2. Cette maison est à ——. 3. Elle est plus petite que ——. 4. Elle n'est pas aussi grande que ——. 5. Ce billet est à ——. 6. Ce chapeau n'est pas ——. 7. J'ai votre chapeau et vous avez ——. 8. Qui a remporté la victoire? ——. 9. Je ne désire pas le vôtre; désirez-vous ——? 10. Ils ont perdu les leurs, mais nous n'avons pas perdu ——. 11. Ce magasin est au propriétaire; c'est ——; ce n'est pas ——. 12. Voici deux colis; lequel est à ——? 13. Celui-ci est à ——; celui-là est à ——. 14. —— ont remporté la victoire. 15. Je ne demande que ——. 16. Nous ne demandons que ——.

335. VOCABULARY

achat *m.* [aʃa] purchase
avant [avɑ̃] until, before
cependant [səpɑ̃dɑ̃] however
certain [sɛrtɛ̃] certain, sure
chaland *m.* [ʃalɑ̃] customer
commode [kɔmɔd] convenient
compte *m.* [kɔ̃:t] account
comptoir *m.* [kɔ̃twa:r] counter
concurrent *m.* [kɔ̃kyrɑ̃] competitor
coûteux, coûteuse [kutø, kutø:z] expensive
se demander [sə dəmɑ̃de] to wonder
dette *f.* [dɛt] debt
devoir [1] [dəvwa:r] to owe
employer [ɑ̃plwaje] to employ
facture *f.* [fakty:r] bill, account
faute *f.* [fo:t] fault
femme *f.* [fam] wife
fin *f.* [fɛ̃] end
impossible [ɛ̃pɔsibl] impossible
livrer [livre] to deliver
mois *m.* [mwɑ] month
montre *f.* [mɔ̃tr] watch
pouvoir [2] [puvwa:r] to be able
promptement [prɔ̃tmɑ̃] promptly
rester [rɛste] to stay
si [si] whether
vieux [vjø] old

avoir la bonté de [avwa:r la bɔ̃te də] to be so kind as to
c'est pourquoi [sɛ purkwa] this is why
en effet [ɑ̃n efɛ] in fact, indeed
en être fâché [ɑ̃n ɛ:trə faʃe] to be sorry about it
en qualité de [ɑ̃ kalite də] in the capacity of, as
être obligé de [ɛ:tr ɔbliʒe də] to be compelled to
faire livrer [fɛ:r livre] to have delivered
faire venir [fɛ:r vəni:r] to call, summon
faire porter à mon compte [fɛ:r pɔrte a mɔ̃ kɔ̃:t] to have charged to my account
payer (argent) comptant [peje arʒɑ̃ kɔ̃tɑ̃] to pay cash
voiture de livraison *f.* [vwaty:r də livrezɔ̃] delivery wagon

[1] Present tense: **je dois, tu dois, il doit, nous devons, vous devez, ils doivent.**

[2] Present tense: **je peux** (*or* **je puis**), **tu peux, il peut, nous pouvons, vous pouvez, ils peuvent.**

EXERCISES

336. 1. Le propriétaire du magasin où Charles est employé en qualité de commis est un de mes vieux amis. Il s'appelle Dupont. 2. Nous sommes amis depuis longtemps. 3. Il habite la même ville que moi, mais sa maison est plus belle que la mienne. 4. Il aime sa maison et j'aime la mienne. 5. La mienne est plus petite que la sienne. 6. Sa maison est plus grande que celles de ses voisins, mais elle n'est pas plus commode que les leurs. 7. J'aime mieux notre jardin que le vôtre. 8. Je préfère ma montre à la vôtre. 9. Le marchand dont je parle avait beaucoup de concurrents. 10. Si on n'aimait pas ses marchandises, on faisait ses achats dans un autre magasin. 11. Quand on achetait quelque chose dans son magasin, il disait, « Cet objet n'est plus à moi, il est à vous. » 12. Je suis un de ses chalands. 13. Quand j'achète quelque chose il me l'envoie par la poste ou il le fait livrer chez moi par une voiture de livraison. 14. Une fois, je n'ai pas payé la facture à la fin du mois. 15. Il m'a dit, « Je suis obligé de payer les marchandises que je vends. 16. Si vous ne payez pas vos factures, comment puis-je payer les miennes? 17. C'est impossible, monsieur. 18. C'est pourquoi j'envoie des factures tous les mois à mes chalands. 19. Je ne puis payer mes dettes, s'ils ne paient pas les leurs. » 20. Mon ami le marchand a raison. 21. C'est à lui de payer ce qu'il doit, et c'est à nous de payer ce que nous lui devons.

337. 1. There are three packages on the counter. 2. I wonder which one is mine. 3. Is this one yours? 4. It is hard to say whether it is mine or yours. 5. I think that these two are ours. 6. One of our neighbors bought something today in this store. 7. Perhaps these packages are his or his wife's. 8. I will ask him if they are his or hers. 9. He is not sure which one is his. 10. Let us call the clerk and ask him which ones are ours. 11. He says that the small (one) is mine. 12. Mine is smaller than yours. 13. Yours is larger than mine. 14. Shall we carry them home ourselves? 15. It is not for (à) us to carry home the things which we buy in a store. 16. Have them sent by post or by the delivery wagon. 17. They are ours, but we do not have to carry them home. 18. Have you paid for your package? 19. I see that our neighbor has paid for his and that other customers have paid for theirs. 20. Theirs are more expensive than ours. 21. I did not pay cash for my package. 22. I have had it charged to my account. 23. I will pay for it when the postman brings me the bill. 24. This will be the first of the month. 25. Do you pay your bills promptly the first of the month?

338. Oral. 1. One day last week I made some purchases in a certain store. 2. The proprietor is an old friend of mine. 3. He has two sons and is very fond of his family. 4. The store belongs to him. 5. It is his and not mine. 6. He does not desire my property or yours, but wants only his own. 7. He employs several clerks who are always very polite to the customers. 8. When I made these purchases he asked me, « Do you wish to have them delivered at once? » 9. « I have need of them at once, » I replied. 10. « Will you kindly send them today? » 11. However, my old friend, the proprietor, forgot to send them that day. 12. It was his fault, not mine, but he was very sorry about it. 13. I did not receive my purchases until Monday. 14. That day they arrived by parcel post.

339. Conversation.

1. Comment s'appelle le propriétaire du magasin où Charles a une place?
2. Où habitait-il?
3. Quelle sorte de maison a-t-il?
4. Avait-il beaucoup de concurrents?
5. Qu'est-ce qu'il disait quand on achetait quelque chose dans son magasin?
6. Quand vous faites des achats, comment vous les envoie-t-il?
7. Que veut dire le mot 'facture'?
9. Aimez-vous faire des achats?
10. Est-ce que les commis sont toujours polis?
11. Les marchands vendent-ils leurs marchandises bon marché?
12. Que font les commis-voyageurs?

LESSON XXX

340. Present Subjunctive of *parler*, *finir*, and *vendre*.

	Endings
je parle [ʒə parl]	**–e**
tu parles [ty parl]	**–es**
il parle [il parl]	**–e**
nous parlions [nu parljɔ̃]	**–ions**
vous parliez [vu parlje]	**–iez**
ils parlent [il parl]	**–ent**
je finisse [ʒə finis]	**–e**
tu finisses [ty finis]	**–es**
il finisse [il finis]	**–e**
nous finissions [nu finisjɔ̃]	**–ions**
vous finissiez [vu finisje]	**–iez**
ils finissent [il finis]	**–ent**

je vende [ʒə vɑ̃:d]	**–e**
tu vendes [ty vɑ̃:d]	**–es**
il vende [il vɑ̃:d]	**–e**
nous vendions [nu vɑ̃djɔ̃]	**–ions**
vous vendiez [vu vɑ̃dje]	**–iez**
ils vendent [il vɑ̃:d]	**–ent**

DRILL EXERCISE

341. 1. The subjunctive is not always translated in the same way, being sometimes rendered by *may, might, should,* or *would,* and very often by the meanings of the indicative.

2. Recite the personal endings for each verb. Are they alike for all three conjugations?

3. What terminations distinguish the present subjunctive from the present indicative?

4. Does the stem of **finir** in the present subjunctive differ from that of the present indicative?

5. Give the present subjunctive of **trouver, rompre,** and **réussir.**

6. Identify and translate the following forms: **entende, entendiez, penses, pensions, bâtisse, bâtissent, vende, vendions, punisses, punissiez, vendiez, entendions, donne, trouvions, trouvent.**

342. The Subjunctive Mood. The subjunctive has an extended use in French.[1] In general it serves to represent the action or state of the verb as something desired, anticipated, conceded or imagined by the speaker. These attitudes of the speaker toward the action or state, which are often brought out in English by the auxiliaries *may, might, could, would,* constitute the modal meaning as distinguished from the meaning of the verb itself. In subordinate clauses, the modal meaning is often obscured. Of the uses of the subjunctive, only the most common are illustrated in this and the following lessons.

343. Wish and Will. The subjunctive may represent an action or state as wished or willed. Under these terms are included desire, command, request, entreaty, permission, prohibition and the like. This subjunctive occurs as follows:

1. In independent sentences without **que.**

[1] This applies primarily to the written language. The subjunctive has a much more limited use in conversation, and even in literature it suffers from the encroachment of both the indicative and the infinitive.

Sauve qui peut. Save himself who can.

Vive le roi! Long live the king!

À Dieu ne plaise. God forbid (may it not please God).

Puisse-t-il se sentir soutenu dans sa nouvelle épreuve par l'affection de ses amis. May he feel that he is sustained in his new trial by the affection of his friends.

Puisse Dieu te juger dans sa miséricorde. May God judge you according to his mercy.

NOTE. This construction is frequent with the present subjunctive of **pouvoir**, the forms of which are as follows: **je puisse, tu puisses, il puisse, nous puissions, vous puissiez, ils puissent.**

2. In independent sentences with **que.**

Qu'il attende. Let him wait.

Qu'ils viennent. Let them come.

Qu'il fasse ce qu'il lui plaira. Let him do what pleases him.

NOTE. The subjunctive taking the place of a third person of the imperative is always preceded by **que.**

3. In dependent clauses following such verbs as **consentir, demander, désirer, défendre, ordonner, vouloir.**

Le médecin ordonne qu'il se repose. The doctor orders him to rest.

Nous désirons que vous réussissiez. We desire you to succeed.

Je désire qu'il voyage à l'étranger. I wish him to travel abroad.

Je demande que vous nous accompagniez. I ask that you should accompany us.

Votre père consent que vous nous accompagniez au théâtre. Your father consents for you to accompany us to the theatre.

NOTE. A subjunctive having the modal meaning of *desire* is natural after verbs of *wishing* and *willing* in the independent clause, since the modal meaning and the verb meaning are similar.

344. VOCABULARY

acteur *m.* [aktœːr] actor
acte *m.* [akt] act (*of play*)
actrice *f.* [aktris] actress
affiche *f.* [afiʃ] placard
amusant [amyzɑ̃] amusing
assister (à) [asiste a] to be present at
applaudir [aplodiːr] to applaud
auditoire *m.* [oditwaːr] audience
auteur *m.* [otœːr] author
brillant [brijɑ̃] brilliant
cinquième [sɛ̃kjɛm] fifth
comédie *f.* [kɔmedi] comedy
décors *m. f. pl.* [dekɔːr] scenery
enfin [ɑ̃fɛ̃] at last
exiger [egziʒe] to demand, require
garder [garde] to take care of
jouer [ʒwe] to act, perform
lumière *f.* [lymjɛːr] light
manteau *m.* [mɑ̃to] cloak
matinée *f.* [matine] afternoon performance
orchestre *m.* [ɔrkɛstr] orchestra
ouvreuse *f.* [uvrøːz] theatre-usher
prochain [prɔʃɛ̃] next
permettre [pɛrmɛtr] permit
programme *m.* [prɔgram] program
réservé [rezɛrve] reserved

personnage *m.* [pɛrsɔnaːʒ] character
prêt [prɛ] ready
prier [prie] to ask, beg
quart [kaːr] fourth, quarter
rang *m.* [rɑ̃] rank, row
rappeler [raple] to recall
représentation *f.* [rəprezɑ̃tɑsjɔ̃] performance
rideau *m.* [rido] curtain
remplir [rɑ̃pliːr] to fill
rôle *m.* [roːl] part (*in a play*)
scène *f.* [sɛːn] scene, stage
spectateur, *m.*, **spectatrice** *f.* [spɛktatœːr, spɛktatris] spectator
théâtre *m.* [teɑːtr] theatre, play
troupe *f.* [trup] company
tragédie *f.* [traʒedi] tragedy
vestiaire *m.* [vɛstjɛːr] cloak-room

à l'égard de [a l egaːr də] regarding
bureau de location *m.* [byro də lɔkasjɔ̃] box office
distribution des rôles *f.* [distribysjɔ̃ de roːl] cast of characters
la Comédie-Française *f.* [la kɔmedi frɑ̃sɛːz] a theatre in Paris
trop tôt [trɔ to] too soon
beaucoup de monde [boku də mɔ̃ːd] a large audience
de cette façon [də sɛt fasɔ̃] in this way
huit heures passées [ɥit œːr pɑse] after eight o'clock
jeune fille *f.* [ʒœn fiːj] girl, young girl
salle de spectacle *f.* [sal də spɛktakl] theatre, play-house
spectacle du soir *m.* [spɛktaklə dy swaːr] evening performance

EXERCISES

345. 1. Jeannette demeure à Paris. 2. Elle a écrit une lettre à son cousin Charles qui demeure en Amérique. 3. Elle lui a écrit une lettre à propos du théâtre. 4. Les Français aiment beaucoup le théâtre. 5. Le père et la mère de Jeannette vont souvent au théâtre, mais ils ne permettent pas que leurs enfants les accompagnent. 6. Ils désirent que les enfants restent à la maison, mais Jeannette ne veut pas rester toujours à la maison. 7. Un jour elle dit à sa mère, « Permets que j'aille [1] avec toi la prochaine fois que tu iras [2] au théâtre, je t'en prie. 8. J'ai quatorze ans et je n'ai jamais assisté à la représentation d'une pièce de théâtre. 9. Si je demeurais en Amérique, j'irais souvent au théâtre. 10. Je me demande combien de pièces ma cousine Marie a vues sur la scène. 11. Elle en a vu beaucoup sans doute. » 12. Quand le père de Jeannette est rentré, il a dit à sa femme, « Allons au théâtre demain soir. 13. Je désire aussi que les enfants aillent avec nous. 14. Dis-leur qu'ils soient [3] prêts à sept heures et demie. 15. J'ai vu l'affiche aujourd'hui. 16. On va jouer une pièce de Molière demain soir à la Comédie-Française. » 17. Le père demande à Jean de se procurer les billets. 18. Le lendemain soir toute la famille est arrivée à la Comédie-Française à huit heures. 19. La

[1] Present subjunctive of **aller.** [2] Future indicative of **aller.**
[3] Present subjunctive of **être.**

salle de spectacle était déjà remplie de monde. 20. La représentation a commencé à huit heures et quart. 21. La comédie a été bien jouée. 22. Les spectateurs ont beaucoup applaudi. 23. Ils ont souvent rappelé les acteurs et les actrices. 24. À partir de ce jour-là le père de Jeannette permit qu'elle allât (past subj.) souvent au théâtre. 25. L'ouvreuse garde les manteaux et les pardessus au vestiaire. 26. Elle montre au père de Jeannette les places reservées pour lui et pour sa famille.

346. 1. Do you wish me to finish the story of Mademoiselle Jeannette and the evening at the Comédie-Française? 2. She has written it in a letter to her cousin Mary. 3. May she send (**envoyer**) many more (**encore**) interesting letters. 4. The play that was given that evening was a play of Molière. 5. It is divided into five acts, and has several characters. 6. It is a comedy and very amusing. 7. Mademoiselle Jeannette found the whole play most interesting. 8. She will not forget the brilliant lights, the stage and the beautiful scenery and the great audience. 9. She wishes that the play would not end too soon. 10. But when the curtain descended on the last scene of the fifth act, her mother said, « It is over (**fini**). » 11. We wish that they may spend many pleasant evenings in this way. 12. The French are very fond of the theatre, but they demand that the actors and actresses perform their parts well. 13. May American audiences always demand good plays and excellent actors. 14. If they demanded them, the theatre would be much more interesting and useful. 15. Mademoiselle Jeannette did not tell in her letter how many plays Molière wrote. 16. Shall I ask Charles? [1] 17. Perhaps he does not wish us to ask him, because he has forgotten it. 18. May he not [2] forget his lesson in the same way when the teacher asks him to recite it. 19. Let us ask Mary. 20. She has not forgotten.

347. Oral. 1. Did you go to the theatre yesterday evening? 2. Mary and her mother went to the matinée. 3. I stayed at home the whole evening. 4. Let's all go to see the play this evening. 5. Charles does not like the matinée. 6. He says that only girls and their mothers go to matinées. 7. Let's all go for the evening performance. 8. Tell Charles to get the tickets. 9. Let him ask the man (**employé**) in the box-office to give us three seats in the fifth row of the orchestra. 10. Let him also pay for the tickets. 11. Tell the usher to give us a program. 12. Here is the cast of the characters. 13. What time does the play begin? 14. At eight o'clock, does it not? 15. It is after eight

[1] Literally, *do you wish that I ask it to Charles*?
[2] **Ne pas** before infinitive.

o'clock now. 16. I wish (**voudrais**) the play would begin. 17. There is a large audience tonight. 18. At last they have raised the curtain. 19. The players are acting their parts well. 20. It is an excellent company. 21. How did you find the play?

348. Conversation.

1. Où demeure Jeannette?
2. À qui écrit-elle une lettre?
3. De quoi Jeannette parle-t-elle dans sa lettre?
4. Quel âge avait-elle?
5. Qu'est-ce qu'elle demande à sa mère?
6. Sa mère aime-t-elle aller au théâtre?
7. Quand le père de Jeannette est rentré, qu'a-t-il dit à sa femme?
8. Qu'est-ce que c'est que la Comédie-Française?
9. À quelle heure la famille est-elle arrivée au théâtre?
10. À quelle heure la représentation a-t-elle commencé?
11. Comment les spectateurs ont-ils trouvé la pièce?
12. Que fait l'ouvreuse?

LESSON XXXI

349. Conditional Sentences.

1. **Structure.** The most frequent type contains a subordinate clause beginning with *if* and an independent clause which may be a statement, command or question. The former is called the condition and the latter the conclusion. This kind of sentence may be illustrated by the English, *If he receives an invitation, he will come* (or *tell him to come*, or *will he come?*)

NOTE. The conclusion is said to depend on the condition, meaning that the statement, command, or question of the conclusion has no force unless the condition is fulfilled.

2. **Kinds.** Conditional sentences may refer to the present, past, or future. Present and past conditions may be so expressed as to imply that they are contrary to fact. Future conditions have a form which is called the least vivid future (see **351**). These require special attention; the other forms of the conditional sentence, being the same in French as in English, are not treated here.

350. Present Contrary to Fact. An English example is, *If he were well, he would go out.* This relates to the present and implies that it is contrary to fact. The person referred to is not well and will not go out. In French this kind of sentence has the past descriptive in the condition and the conditional in the conclusion.

Si j'avais du papier à lettre, j'écrirais une lettre. If I had some paper, I would write a letter.

S'il était riche, il donnerait beaucoup d'argent aux pauvres. If he were rich, he would give a great deal to the poor.

S'ils demeuraient ici, nous leur rendrions souvent visite. If they were living here, we would call on them frequently.

NOTE. For the past contrary to fact (*if he had been well, he would have gone out*), which requires a compound tense, see **410, 411, 412.**

351. Least Vivid Future. *If he should be well tomorrow, he would go out.* This is an imagined situation in the future and is expressed in French by the past descriptive in the condition and the conditional in the conclusion.

S'il pleuvait demain, je ne sortirais pas. If it should rain tomorrow, I should not go out.

S'il nous invitait, nous serions contents d'aller le voir. If he should invite us, we should be glad to go to see him.

Si vous lisiez ce livre, vous le trouveriez intéressant. If you should read this book, you would find it interesting.

NOTE 1. Notice that these two types of conditional, namely, the present contrary to fact and the least vivid future, are both rendered in the same way in French.

NOTE 2. The conditional, which is so called from its occurrence in conditional sentences, is never used in the conditional clause proper, beginning with **si,** *if.*

352. EXERCISE

1. *Identify the tense and translate:*

Je donnerai; je donnerais; ils donnaient; ils donneront; ils donneraient; nous finirons; nous finissions; nous finissons; nous finirions; vous vendiez; vous vendrez; vous vendriez; il donnera; il vendait; il vendrait.

2. *Translate into French:*

If I were selling; if you were finishing; if he were giving; if I should give; if he should sell; if they should finish; if I had it, I would give it to you. If I should have it, I would give it to you. If he were here, I would invite him. If he should arrive on time, I should be glad.

353. VOCABULARY

avocat *m.* [avɔka] lawyer
cabinet *m.* [kabinɛ] office
campagne *f.* [kɑ̃paɲ] country
canapé *m.* [kanape] sofa
chambre *f.* [ʃɑ̃ːbr] room
charmé [ʃarme] delighted
chêne *m.* [ʃɛːn] oak
couleur *f.* [kulœːr] color
cuisine *f.* [kɥizin] kitchen
élevé [elve] high
enchanté [ɑ̃ʃɑ̃te] delighted
encore [ɑ̃kɔːr] still, again
exquis [ɛkski] exquisite
extrêmement [ɛkstrɛmmɑ̃] extremely
goût *m.* [gu] taste
incertain [ɛ̃sɛrtɛ̃] uncertain
installé [ɛ̃stale] settled
matelas *m.* [matlɑ] mattress
meubler [mœble] to furnish (*a house*)
mobilier *m.* [mɔbilje] furniture
pièce *f.* [pjɛs] piece
pressé [prɛse] in a hurry
principal [prɛ̃sipal] principal
quartier *m.* [kartje] quarter
raisonnable [rɛzɔnabl] reasonable
sourire *m.* [surirː] smile
tapis *m.* [tapi] carpet, rug
traduire [tradɥiːr] to translate (*past participle*, **traduit**)
Turquie *f.* [tyrki] Turkey
ustensile *m.* [ystɑ̃sil] utensil
volontiers [vɔlɔ̃tje] gladly

à la bonne heure [a la bɔn œːr] excellent! well done!
à la mode [a la mɔd] fashionable
au bout de [o bu də] after
bois de lit *m.* [bwɑ də li] bedstead
d'ailleurs [d ajœːr] moreover
chaise rembourrée [ʃɛz rɑ̃bure] upholstered chair
en haut [ɑ̃ o] up stairs
finir par acheter [finiːr par aʃte] to finally buy
le jour où [lə juːr u] the day when
marchand de meubles *m.* [marʃɑ̃ də mœbl] furniture merchant
piano à queue *m.* [pjano a kø] grand piano
par exemple [par egzɑ̃pl] for example

EXERCISES

354. 1. Monsieur et madame Durand demeuraient à la campagne. 2. Ils y demeuraient depuis deux ans. 3. Monsieur Durand était avocat et son cabinet se trouvait à Paris. 4. Un jour, sa femme lui dit, « Si nous demeurions à Paris, tu serais moins fatigué en rentrant le soir. 5. D'ailleurs, si nous n'étions pas si loin des théâtres, nous irions entendre des pièces beaucoup plus souvent. » 6. Monsieur Durand a fini par acheter une belle maison dans un joli quartier de Paris. 7. Puis sa femme est allée chez un marchand de meubles où elle a commandé le mobilier dont elle avait besoin pour meubler la maison. 8. Au bout de quelques jours son amie Jeanne Moraud est venue la voir. 9. Bonjour, Jeanne. 10. Je suis enchantée de vous voir. 11. Notre mobilier est arrivé la semaine dernière et maintenant nous sommes bien installés.

12. À la bonne heure! Je serais charmée de voir votre maison. 13. Avec plaisir, entrons dans le salon. 14. Le tapis de Turquie est un cadeau de ma tante Marie. 15. Le piano à queue est la plus belle pièce de notre mobilier. 16. Tous vos meubles sont du meilleur goût, Blanche. 17. J'aime beaucoup la couleur du canapé. 18. Les fauteuils et les chaises rembourrées sont extrêmement beaux et les rideaux sont très jolis aussi. 19. Le mobilier de notre salle à manger est en chêne. 20. Les meubles sont très à la mode. 21. La cuisine n'est pas grande, mais elle est commode. 22. Les chambres à coucher sont en haut. 23. Les tables, les chaises, les lits, et tous les meubles qui se trouvent dans les chambres à coucher sont neufs. 24. Est-ce que je pourrais avoir le plaisir de vous montrer le second étage? 25. J'y monterais très volontiers, si j'avais le temps. 26. Je suis un peu pressée aujourd'hui, mais je reviendrai vous voir bientôt. 27. Votre maison est très belle et elle est meublée d'une manière exquise. 28. À bientôt.

355. 1. The French exercise which we have read and translated is about Mr. and Mrs. Durand who lived in the country not far from Paris. 2. Mr. Durand found a pleasant quarter in the great city and bought a new house. 3. If he had not found this pleasant quarter he would not have bought the house. 4. If he had not bought the house, he would not perhaps have bought new furniture. 5. If you were living in the country, would you prefer to live in Paris? 6. If you had old furniture, would you sell it and buy new? 7. Mr. Durand bought chairs, tables, sofas, carpets, curtains, beds, and a grand piano, which were all new. 8. If he had been in need of something else, he would have bought it. 9. If you are in need of anything, buy it at the furniture dealer's. 10. The furniture dealers are very polite and will show you everything which they have for sale. 11. Perhaps you wish to buy a sofa and some upholstered chairs for the parlor and a bed for a sleeping room. 12. They will show them to you and sell them at a reasonable price and deliver them at your house. 13. There are usually several furniture merchants in the same town. 14. If you are a stranger look for the principal street and you will find them there. 15. If you are still uncertain, ask some one whom you meet on (**dans**) the street. 16. My father has built a new house but has not furnished it. 17. He has need of rugs and upholstered chairs for the parlor and of bedsteads and mattresses for the sleeping rooms. 18. If the house were old, he would not perhaps have need of new furniture.

356. Oral. 1. My uncle lived in a large city. 2. It is not far from where I live. 3. He lived there two years ago. 4. If he were living there

now, he would not have a house in our town. 5. He would still be living in the city if he had liked the street cars. 6. But he did not like them. 7. He was always looking for a pleasant quarter in some smaller town. 8. One day when he was making a visit to us he said, "If I had enough money, I should buy a house in this beautiful village." 9. He said that with a smile, because he had money enough. 10. He bought a small house and furnished it. 11. He went to the principal furniture dealer in the town and said, « I have bought a house which I have not yet furnished. 12. I want chairs and tables for the dining room. 13. I also have need of upholstered chairs and sofas for the parlor, and beds, and bedsteads, and mattresses for the sleeping rooms. 14. If your prices are not too high, I will order some other things tomorrow, for example, rugs, and carpets, and kitchen utensils. » 15. « The prices for our furniture, » replied the dealer, « are very reasonable. 16. I shall deliver the goods at your house tomorrow. »

357. Conversation.

1. Où monsieur et madame Durand demeuraient-ils?
2. Depuis quand y demeuraient-ils?
3. Quelle était la profession de monsieur Durand?
4. Où se trouvait son cabinet?
5. Est-ce que madame Durand était contente de demeurer à la campagne?
6. Où monsieur Durand a-t-il acheté une maison?
7. Où madame Durand a-t-elle commandé le mobilier dont elle avait besoin pour meubler sa maison?
8. Qui lui a rendu visite quelques jours après?
9. Comment l'amie de madame Durand a-t-elle trouvé la maison?
10. Qui a donné le tapis à madame Durand?
11. Quelle était la plus belle pièce de son mobilier?
12. L'amie de madame Durand est-elle montée au second étage?

LESSON XXXII

358. Past Subjunctive of *parler, finir,* and *vendre.*

		Endings
je parlasse [ʒə parlas]	I spoke, might speak	**–asse**
tu parlasses [ty parlas]		**–asses**
il parlât [il parla]		**–ât**
nous parlassions [nu parlasjõ]	we spoke, might speak	**–assions**
vous parlassiez [vu parlasje]		**–assiez**
ils parlassent [il parlas]		**–assent**

je finisse [ʒə finis]	I finished, might finish	**–isse**
tu finisses [ty finis]		**–isses**
il finît [il fini]		**–ît**
nous finissions [nu finisjõ]	we finished, might finish	**–issions**
vous finissiez [vu finisje]		**–issiez**
ils finissent [il finis]		**–issent**
je vendisse [ʒə vãdis]	I sold, might sell	**–isse**
tu vendisses [ty vãdis]		**–isses**
il vendît [il vãdi]		**–ît**
nous vendissions [nu vãdisjõ]	we sold, might sell	**–issions**
vous vendissiez [vu vãdisje]		**–issiez**
ils vendissent [il vãdis]		**–issent**

DRILL EXERCISE

359. 1. A way of forming the first person singular of the past subjunctive is by adding **se** to the 2nd person singular of the past absolute.

2. Compare the endings of **finir** and **vendre.**

3. How do those of **donner** differ?

4. In what person and number of the past subjunctive does **finir** differ from the present subjunctive?

5. Give the past subjunctive of **regarder,** to look at; **entendre,** to hear; and **mûrir,** to ripen.

6. *Identify and translate the following forms:* **donnât, donnassions, donnassent, mûrît, entendisse, entendisses, vendissions, aimasse, aimassiez, aimât, pensassent, trouvât, trouvasse, finît.**

7. In the endings of **parler** given above the initial **a** belongs historically to the stem (see **204,** note).

360. Purpose Clauses. Clauses which state the purpose of a preceding action have the subjunctive. Such clauses may be introduced by **que,** usually strengthened by **afin,** *in order to,* or **pour,** *for.*

Elle avait décidé de rester à Paris pour que son fils pût suivre les cours du lycée Voltaire. She had decided to remain at Paris in order that her son might attend the courses of the Lycée Voltaire.

Il a retardé son départ pour que je puisse le voir. He has put off his departure in order that I may see him.

Afin que vous le sachiez. In order that you may know it.

Cachez-vous dans votre chambre, qu'on vous croie sorti. Hide in your room in order that one may think you have gone out.

NOTE. In the foregoing examples one may observe the relation between the tenses of the subordinate and the principal clause. In general, a present or

future in the main clause is followed by a present subjunctive. This rule holds for other than purpose clauses and is called the sequence of tenses.

361. Purpose may also be expressed as follows:

1. By the infinitive without a preposition after verbs of motion.

Il est venu me dire ce qu'il avait fait. He came to tell me what he had done.
Elle s'en alla chercher ses paquets. She went to look for her packages.

2. When purpose is emphasized or when the infinitive is separated from the verb of motion, **pour** may be used.

Je suis allé chez lui pour lui parler. I went to his house to talk to him.
Il est revenu pour chercher ses paquets. He came back to look for his packages.

3. After verbs other than those of motion, **pour** is used before a following infinitive to express purpose. This infinitive construction is in general preferred to the subjunctive when there is no change of subject.

362. Clauses of Result.

1. In general, their function is to state a present, past, or future effect or consequence of what precedes. They are introduced by **que,** which as a rule points back to some correlative, such as **si,** *so,* **tellement,** *such,* **de sorte, de façon, de manière,** *in such a way.* These correlatives show the consecutive character of the **que** clause and distinguish it from clauses of purpose.

2. When the principal clause is affirmative and the consequence or effect is stated as a fact, the result clause takes the indicative.

Je suis si fatigué que je ne veux pas me promener ce soir. I am so tired that I don't want to go for a walk this evening.
J'ai agi de telle façon que tout le monde est content. I have acted in such a way that everybody is satisfied.
J'ai fait en sorte qu'il ne sait rien. I have managed so that he knows nothing.

3. When the main clause is interrogative or negative, the result clause has the subjunctive.

Êtes-vous si fatigué que vous ne vouliez [1] **pas sortir.** Are you so tired that you do not wish to go out?
Vous n'êtes pas si bas que vous ne puissiez vous relever. You are not so bad that you cannot retrieve yourself.

4. The subjunctive occurs if the result is to be attained or the consequence suffered in the future. In meaning this construction resembles that of purpose.

[1] Present subjunctive of vouloir, *to wish.*

S'il cachait la tulipe de façon à ce qu'elle ne fût pas retrouvée, il pourrait lui arriver malheur. If he should conceal the tulip so that it might not be found again, some misfortune might happen to him.

Il faut faire en sorte qu'il ne sache rien. We must manage so that he will know nothing.

Agissez de façon qu'il soit content. Act in such a way that he will be satisfied.

Faites de sorte que je puisse la voir. Manage so that I may be able to see her.

Il avait fortifié la ville de manière qu'elle pût soutenir un long siège. He had fortified the town in such a way that it could sustain a long siege.

Placez-le de manière qu'il soit bien ferme. Place it so that it will be very steady.[1]

5. After **assez** and **trop** result clauses are introduced by **pour que**, *as*,

Le mal fut assez grand pour qu'il fît époque. The calamity was great enough to mark an epoch.

363. VOCABULARY

adorer [adɔre] to worship, adore
s'amuser [s amyze] to amuse one's self, have a good time
arranger [arɑ̃ʒe] to arrange
attirer [atire] to attract
aspect *m.* [aspɛ] phase, aspect
caractère [karaktɛːr] kind, character
cinéma *m.* [sinema] moving picture theatre
confusion *f.* [kɔ̃fyzjɔ̃] confusion
désir *m.* [deziːr] wish, desire
différent [diferɑ̃] different
écran *m.* [ekrɑ̃] screen
ému [emy] moved, excited
éviter [evite] to avoid
excepté [ɛksɛpte] except
fameux, fameuse [famø, famøːz] famous
film *m.* [film] film, picture
fréquenter [frekɑ̃te] to attend
fumer [fyme] to smoke
foule *f.* [ful] crowd
impression *f.* [ɛ̃presjɔ̃] impression
intéresser [ɛ̃terɛse] to interest
loge *f.* [lɔːʒ] box seat
montrer [mɔ̃tre] to show
œil, *pl.* **yeux** *m.* [œːj, jø] eye
paysage *m.* [peizaːʒ] landscape
peuple *m.* [pœpl] people
presque [prɛsk] almost
populaire [pɔpylɛːr] popular
projeter [prɔʒte] to throw
quoique [kwakə] although
rapidement [rapidmɑ̃] rapidly
reproduire [rəprɔdɥiːr] to reproduce
surtout [syrtu] especially
varié [varje] varied
vie *f.* [vi] life
vif [vif] lively

bien que [bjɛ̃ kə] though
d'avance [d avɑ̃ːs] in advance
deux fois [dø fwa] twice
en attendant [ɑ̃n atɑ̃dɑ̃] meanwhile

[1] Some hold that these and similar **que** clauses are clauses of purpose and for this reason have the subjunctive. A feeling of purpose may be present in the speaker's mind, but the mechanism of the sentence would seem to indicate that the future event or situation is felt chiefly as a result or consequence.

faire concurrence [fɛːr kɔ̃kyrɑ̃ːs] to compete
faire queue [fɛːr kø] to stand in line
il vaut mieux [il vo mjø] it is better
peu à peu [pø a pø] little by little
pièces classiques *f. pl.* [pjɛs klasik] classical plays
place réservée *f.* [plas rezɛrve] reserved seat
tandis que [tɑ̃di kə] while, whereas

EXERCISES

364. 1. Quelques mois plus tard, Charles a reçu une autre lettre de sa cousine Jeannette qui demeure en France. 2. Cette fois elle parle du cinéma. 3. Elle dit qu'elle y va souvent, quoique son père préfère [1] qu'elle aille au théâtre. 4. Il désire qu'elle aille à la Comédie-Française afin qu'elle puisse entendre des pièces classiques. 5. Le père n'aime pas le cinéma parce qu'on y fume souvent. 6. Il aime surtout les tragédies de Corneille et de Racine, tandis que sa femme préfère les comédies de Molière. 7. Dans la lettre que Jeannette écrit à son cousin, elle donne ses impressions d'Amérique. 8. Au cinéma qu'elle fréquente, on donne de temps en temps des films qui représentent différents aspects de la vie américaine. 9. On reproduit aussi sur l'écran des paysages américains. 10. Ces paysages américains ont donné à Jeannette un vif désir de voyager en Amérique. 11. En attendant elle a reçu une lettre de son cousin Charles qui lui dit que le cinéma est très populaire en Amérique. 12. Tout le monde y va, bien qu'il n'y ait [2] pas de places réservées excepté dans les loges. 13. Le peuple adore le cinéma. 14. On y donne les films les plus variés. 15. On peut y voir des comédies et des tragédies. 16. Charles dit que le cinéma fait concurrence au théâtre, qu'il remplace peu à peu.

365. 1. Charles' cousin has written him a letter about the moving picture theaters in (**de**) Paris. 2. He will doubtless write to her about the moving picture theaters in (**de**) the United States. 3. The cinemas are more popular perhaps in America than in France. 4. Everyone goes to them, or almost everyone. 5. The pictures are thrown on a screen. 6. They are thrown [3] on it in such a way that (**de telle façon que**) they pass quickly before the eyes of the spectator. 7. There are two performances every evening. 8. The first performance begins so early that it is over at nine o'clock. 9. Charles goes to the first performance in order to return home early. 10. It is better to go in such a way that you do not lose the whole evening. 11. The first part of a good performance, in

[1] Subjunctive in concessive clause. [2] Present subjunctive of **avoir**.
[3] The **t** of **projeter** is doubled before neutral **e**: **on projette**.

order to attract young and old, gives the « news of the week. » 12. It shows famous places, and persons, and is of such a kind that it interests everyone. 13. One evening when Charles and I were at a picture show an excellent comedy was performed. 14. We found it so interesting that we wanted to see it again. 15. For passing a pleasant evening, nothing is better than a good comedy. 16. We also saw a play which was shown for the first time on the screen. 17. It was much applauded and Charles was so excited that he almost forgot his hat. 18. This evening we went to the first performance in order that Charles might return home early and learn his lessons.

366. Oral. 1. Charles and I passed a pleasant evening last week. 2. We went to the " movies " to see a new play. 3. It was so interesting that we wanted to see it again. 4. We went to the first performance in order not to lose the whole evening. 5. The pictures were of such a kind that we shall not forget them soon. 6. We were glad to see them thrown on the screen. 7. What have you to do this evening? 8. Let's all go to the moving picture theatre. 9. Ask your father if he will permit (**permettre**) you to go. 10. Did you go once or twice last week? 11. If you have something to do it is better to stay at home. 12. The tickets will cost us only twenty cents. 13. That is not very much. 14. The tickets are not as expensive as those for (**de**) the theatre. 15. They are so cheap that almost every one gets them. 16. It is sometimes better to get them in advance in order to avoid confusion. 17. Did you ever stand in line at the ticket window?

367. Conversation.

1. De qui Charles a-t-il reçu une lettre?
2. De quoi sa cousine parle-t-elle?
3. Va-t-elle souvent au théâtre?
4. Est-ce que son père désire qu'elle aille au cinéma?
5. Pourquoi le père n'aime-t-il pas le cinéma?
6. Quelles pièces classiques préfère-t-il?
7. Pourquoi Jeannette veut-elle voyager en Amérique?
8. De qui a-t-elle reçu une lettre?
9. Qu'est-ce que Charles dit à propos du cinéma?
10. Croyez-vous que le cinéma remplace le théâtre en Amérique?
11. Préférez-vous le cinéma au théâtre?

LESSON XXXIII

368. Present Subjunctive of *avoir* and *être*.

	Endings		*Endings*
j'aie [ʒ ɛ]	–e	je sois [ʒə swa]	–s
tu aies [ty ɛ]	–es	tu sois [ty swa]	–s
il ait [il ɛ]	–t	il soit [il swa]	–t
nous ayons [nuz ɛjõ]	–ions	nous soyons [nu swajõ]	–ions
vous ayez [vuz ɛje]	–iez	vous soyez [vu swaje]	–iez
ils aient [ilz ɛ]	–ent	ils soient [il swa]	–ent

DRILL EXERCISE

369. 1. Notice that **y** is equivalent to double **i**; thus **ayons** = **aiions.**

2. What is the stem of **avoir** in this tense? Of **être?**

3. Note in each verb whether the stem changes for the different persons. Compare, for example, the stem in **ayons** with that in **ait,** the stem in **soyons** with that in **soit.** Are they the same?

4. In what persons are the endings the same in both verbs? Mark those that are different.

5. How do the endings compare with those for the same tense of the regular verbs?

370. Verbs of Fearing. Verbs and verbal phrases denoting fear may be followed by a **que**-clause, which tells what is or is not feared. The verb in this dependent clause must be in the subjunctive.

Je crains qu'il ne soit malade. I fear that he is ill.
J'ai peur qu'il n'ait trop d'argent. I am afraid that he has too much money.
Le père de Charles ne craint pas qu'il soit malade. Charles' father does not fear that he is ill.
Nous avons peur qu'il n'ait pas assez d'argent. We are afraid that he has not enough money.
Craignez-vous qu'il soit malade? Do you fear that he is ill?
Si je craignais qu'il plût. If I feared it would rain.

NOTE. When the verb of the independent clause is affirmative (and negation is not implied) a redundant **ne** precedes the subjunctive. If the verb in the main clause is negative, interrogative, or conditional, **ne** is omitted.

371. Other Verbs of Emotion. Verbs or phrases of emotion, such as rejoicing, regretting, etc., which govern a dependent clause giving the reason or ground of the emotion, require the subjunctive when the

subject of the dependent clause is different from that of the main verb; otherwise, they take **de** with the infinitive.

Nous sommes contents que vous ayez réussi. We are glad you have succeeded.
Il est surpris que ses amis ne soient pas arrivés. He is surprised that his friends did not arrive.
Nous nous réjouissons que vous soyez en bonne santé. We rejoice that you are in good health.
Je suis content de vous voir. I am glad to see you.
Je regrette d'être obligé de partir si tôt. I regret that I am obliged to leave so early.

372. Verbs of Approval and Disapproval. Verbs and phrases of this class denoting the attitude or point of view of the speaker take the subjunctive in the dependent clause.

Nous approuvons que vous alliez en France en automne. We approve of your going to France in the autumn.
Il désapprouve que vous jouiez au tennis tous les jours. He disapproves of your playing tennis every day.

373. VOCABULARY

adepte *m.* [adɛpt] adept
amateur *m.* [amatœːr] amateur
armée *f.* [arme] army
boxe *f.* [bɔks] boxing
constituer [kɔ̃stitɥe] to make up
course *f.* [kurs] running
davantage [davɑ̃taːʒ] more, further
divers [divɛːr] divers, different
divertissement *m.* [divɛrtismɑ̃] diversion, recreation
équipe *f.* [ekip] team
s'étonner [s etɔne] to be astonished
s'exercer (à) [s egzɛrse] to engage in
favori, favorite [favɔri, favorit] favorite
guerre *f.* [gɛːr] war
haut [o] high
jeu *m.* [ʒø] game
joueur *m.* [ʒwœːr] player
lycée *m.* [lise] lycée[1]
se mesurer avec [sə məzyre avɛk] to compete with
natation *f.* [natɑsjɔ̃] swimming
nation *f.* [nɑsjɔ̃] nation
national [nasjɔnal] national
négliger [negliʒe] to neglect
se passionner [sə pɑsjɔne] to be passionately fond of
partie *f.* [parti] part, match, game
récréation *f.* [rekreɑsjɔ̃] recreation
remercier (de) [rəmɛrsje] to thank for
sauter [sote] to jump
si [si] so
société *f.* [sɔsjete] society
sport *m.* [spɔːr] sport
stade *m.* [stad] stadium

bord de la mer *m.* [bɔːr də la mɛːr] seashore
c'est dommage [s ɛ dɔmaːʒ] it is a pity
en vogue [ɑ̃ vɔg] in fashion

[1] A state institution below the university, embracing the work of high school and junior college.

entendre parler de [ãtãːdrə parle də] to hear of
faire attention à [fɛːr atãsjõ a] to give attention to
heures d'étude *f. pl.* [œːr d etyd] study hours
jouer au baseball [ʒwe o besbal] to play baseball
prix d'entrée *m.* [pri d ãtre] price of admission

EXERCISES

374. 1. « Il est étonnant, » dit notre professeur, « que nous entendions parler si peu des récréations et des amusements des autres nations. 2. Nous parlons beaucoup de nos divertissements, tels que le théâtre, le cinéma et les différents sports. 3. Mais j'ai peur que nous ne fassions [1] pas assez d'attention à ceux des autres pays. 4. C'est dommage, par exemple, que nous entendions parler si peu des récréations de nos amis, les Français. » 5. Charles a demandé si les Français jouent au football. 6. « Oui, » répondit le professeur, « le foot-ball a fait beaucoup d'adeptes en France. 7. Chaque lycée a son équipe de football. 8. Quelquefois on constitue une équipe nationale qui se mesure avec des équipes étrangères. » 9. Charles est content que les Français aiment ce jeu. 10. Le football est son jeu favori. 11. Marie se passionne pour le tennis. 12. Elle est contente que sa cousine Jeannette qui demeure à Paris apprenne [2] à jouer au tennis. 13. Le père et la mère de Jeannette approuvent qu'elle y joue. 14. « Depuis la guerre les Français s'exercent davantage aux sports, » dit le professeur. 15. « Le baseball a de nombreux amateurs en France. 16. Le golf est très en vogue aussi, surtout dans la haute société de Paris. 17. La boxe devient de plus en plus populaire. 18. Les Parisiens l'adorent. » 19. Charles est enchanté d'avoir ces renseignements sur les récréations et sur les amusements des Français. 20. Il en remercie son professeur.

375. 1. We are glad there are different kinds of sport. 2. It would be a pity if everyone wanted to play the same games. 3. I am afraid there are too many players and not enough games. 4. For example, one has need of only nine players in order to play baseball. 5. If every one wanted to play baseball, there would be too many games. 6. Charles is sorry that more of his friends do not play baseball. 7. He thinks it the best of all games. 8. Charles' father approves of his playing football. 9. He is not afraid that he will neglect his lessons. 10. Does your mother approve of your playing tennis? 11. Is she not glad that you play every day after school? 12. Would she approve of your playing

[1] Present subjunctive of **faire**.
[2] Present subjunctive of **apprendre**.

tennis during the hours of school? 13. In order to play football one has need of eleven players. 14. I think it a pity that more pupils and students do not play this game. 15. I will ask my father if he regrets that he played football at the university. 16. You said you regretted you did not learn [1] to play tennis? 17. There are other sports, such as running. 18. During vacations one often goes to the seashore. 19. The French are very fond of going to the seashore in summer. 20. Are you sorry that vacation will soon begin? 21. Did Charles regret that he went to the seashore last year?

376. Oral. 1. Today is Friday. 2. Tomorrow will be Saturday. 3. Are you sorry that today is Friday? 4. Are you glad that tomorrow is Saturday? 5. Would you like to recite lessons on Saturday? 6. Let us ask Charles what he thinks about it.[2] 7. I am afraid that he does not like to go to school on Saturday. 8. There would not be enough time for swimming, or to play baseball or tennis. 9. Who is going to see the football game tomorrow? 10. I am sorry that the price of admission is so high. 11. Charles was afraid yesterday that he would not have enough money to buy a ticket. 12. I am glad there will be a large crowd to see the game. 13. They are afraid that too many people will come and there will not be seats for everyone. 14. Do you think it a pity we have not a stadium? 15. We should be glad to have a small one. 16. Charles has some friends who are coming to see the game. 17. How will he greet them? 18. I am glad to see you. 19. I am delighted to meet you. 20. I am very sorry not to see your brother.

377. Conversation.

1. Allez-vous souvent au théâtre?
2. Préférez-vous le cinéma au théâtre?
3. Combien de représentations y a-t-il chaque soir au cinéma?
4. Est-ce que les Français jouent souvent au football?
5. Quel est votre jeu favori?
6. De combien de personnes se compose une équipe de football?
7. Le golf est-il très en vogue en Amérique?
8. Est-ce que vous jouez au tennis?
9. Allez-vous à l'école tous les jours?
10. Allez-vous au bord de la mer tous les étés?
11. Est-ce que vous jouez au golf?
12. Quels sont les sports favoris des Français?

[1] **de ne pas avoir appris à.**
[2] **About it = en.**

LESSON XXXIV

378. Past Subjunctive of *avoir* and *être*

	Endings		*Endings*
j'eusse [ʒ ys]	–sse	je fusse [ʒə fys]	–sse
tu eusses [ty ys]	–sses	tu fusses [ty fys]	–sses
il eût [il y]	–t	il fût [il fy]	–t
nous eussions [nuz ysjõ]	–ssions	nous fussions [nu fysjõ]	–ssions
vous eussiez [vuz ysje]	–ssiez	vous fussiez [vu fysje	–ssiez
ils eussent [ilz ys]	–ssent	ils fussent [il fys	–ssent

DRILL EXERCISE

379. 1. Notice that the stems of both verbs remain unchanged throughout this tense.

2. What tense of the indicative shows the same stem?

3. Knowing this tense of the indicative, how could you form from it the first person singular of the past subjunctive?

4. Is there any difference in the personal endings of these two verbs?

380. Relative Clauses. Notice the following (among several) ways in which the relative clause may qualify the antecedent:

1. It may merely state some fact about the antecedent, being virtually equivalent to a coördinate clause. *I have a hat which (and it) fits me. He passed a house which (and it) had two stories.*

2. It may tell which one the antecedent is. *I am looking for the road that goes to Paris. I live in the house which has the red roof.* Here the relative clause tells which road and which house the speaker means.

3. It may tell of what kind the antecedent is. *I want a guide who speaks English. I am looking for a road that can be easily travelled.* The relative clause tells what kind of guide and what kind of road the speaker is seeking. In such a case the clause is said to characterize the antecedent, to describe it by the statement of some significant fact. It is frequently used in referring to antecedents which are only conceived of in the mind and which must be described in order to be made intelligible to others.

381. Indicative or Subjunctive.

Clauses under 1 and 2 of the foregoing paragraph take the indicative, those under 3, the subjunctive. Determinative clauses (those

which tell which one), have the indicative; descriptive or characterizing clauses (those which tell what kind), the subjunctive.

J'ai plusieurs livres que je n'ai jamais lus. I have several books which I (and I) have never read.

Je cherche le guide qui m'a conduit au Louvre hier. I am looking for the guide who took me to the Louvre yesterday.

Je cherche un guide que je puisse comprendre. I am looking for a guide whom I can understand.

382. Characterizing Subjunctive. The subjunctive in descriptive or characterizing relative clauses is used as follows:

1. When the antecedent is not negative or otherwise qualified.

Je désire une robe que je puisse porter en voyage. I desire a dress that I can wear when travelling.

Je cherche une retraite où je sois tranquille. I am seeking a nook where (in which) I may be quiet.

2. When the antecedent is negative.

Je n'ai pas d'ami qui me dise toujours la vérité. I have no friend who always tells me the truth.

Nous n'avons pas de lettre qui vous soit adressée. We have no letter addressed to you.

3. Usually when the antecedent is limited by **dernier, seul, unique, premier** and other superlatives.

La promenade est l'unique plaisir que nous ayons. Walking is the only pleasure we have.

La seule recommandation qu'il lui eût faite était de ne rendre la tulipe qu'à lui. The only advice that he had given him was not to deliver the tulip to anyone except to himself.

Il est le premier qui m'ait fait du mal. He is the first who has done me harm.

C'est le meilleur ami que j'aie. He is the best friend that I have.

383. VOCABULARY

admirer [admire] to admire
agréable [agreabl] agreeable, pleasant
aîné [ene] elder
bal *m., plur.* **bals** [bal] ball, dance
concert *m.* [kɔ̃sɛːr] concert
convenable [kɔ̃vnabl] suitable, proper
dame *f.* [dam] lady
danse *f.* [dɑ̃ːs] dancing
danser [dɑ̃se] to dance
danseur *m.* [dɑ̃sœːr], **danseuse** *f.* [dɑ̃søːz] dancer, partner
facilement [fasilmɑ̃] easily
fleur *f.* [flœːr] flower
gant *m.* [gɑ̃] glove
goûter [gute] to taste, relish, enjoy
habile [abil] clever, quick
intelligent [ɛ̃teliʒɑ̃] bright, intelligent
invitation *f.* [ɛ̃vitɑsjɔ̃] invitation
invité *m.* [ɛ̃vite] guest
inviter [ɛ̃vite] to invite
jeune [ʒœn] young
jouir de [ʒwiːr də] to enjoy

monde *m.* [mõːd] world, society
porter [pɔrte] to wear
présenter [prezãte] to introduce
probablement [prɔbabləmã] probably
rafraîchissements *m. pl.* [rafrɛʃismã] refreshments
rarement [rarmã] rarely, seldom
réception *f.* [resɛpsjõ] reception
réunion *f.* [reynjõ] party, gathering
ruban *m.* [rybã] ribbon
soirée *f.* [sware] evening, evening party
voyage *m.* [vwajaːʒ] journey

depuis longtemps [dəpɥi lõtã] in a long time
en l'honneur de [ã l ɔnœːr də] in honor of
tant que [tã kə] as long as
venir d'arriver [1] [vəniːr d arive] to have just arrived

EXERCISES

384. 1. Charles a un cousin qui demeure en France et qui est venu en Amérique pour lui faire une visite. 2. Après un voyage de huit jours, qui a été très agréable, il est arrivé à New-York. 3. Il était content de voir cette ville, qui est une des plus grandes du monde. 4. Il aime les villes qui ont tant de belles rues et tant de grands bâtiments. 5. Mais le cousin de Charles n'est pas le premier qui ait admiré New-York. 6. D'ailleurs, il n'est pas le seul étranger qui ait parlé des grands bâtiments et des belles rues de cette grande ville. 7. Il a apporté des nouvelles de son père et de sa mère et surtout de sa sœur Jeannette. 8. Elle est intelligente et habile, et elle apprend facilement ses leçons. 9. Il n'y avait pas d'élève, dans l'école où elle était, qui fût plus diligente ou qui eût plus d'amis. 10. Elle aime beaucoup la musique et va souvent aux concerts avec sa mère et sa sœur. 11. Elle ne va pas dans le monde comme les jeunes filles en Amérique. 12. Ses sœurs aînées vont aux bals. 13. Personne n'aime la musique et les bals plus que Charles. 14. Il va donner un bal ce soir en l'honneur de son cousin qui aime à danser. 15. Il présentera tous ses invités à son cousin. 16. Il espère que la soirée sera une des plus agréables que son cousin ait jamais eues. 17. Quand son cousin retournera en France, il aura des nouvelles de toute la famille en Amérique. 18. Ces nouvelles seront très intéressantes.

385. 1. Are you going to the party this evening? 2. What party? 3. The one which Charles is giving at his house. 4. Haven't you heard about it? 5. Charles has a cousin who is traveling in America. 6. He thought it would be pleasant to give this party in honor of his cousin. 7. But he was afraid there was not enough time to write to all the friends whom he wished to invite. 8. He wants to give a party which will be pleasant for everyone. 9. They will dance, and there will be music and refreshments which everyone will enjoy. 10. In fact, the refreshments

[1] In this idiom **venir** occurs only in the present and past descriptive.

will be the best that you have tasted in a long time. 11. Perhaps it is not the refreshments which you like so much as the dancing. 12. You are not the only one who likes dancing. 13. You are the best dancer that I have ever seen. 14. Well, are you coming (**venez**) to the party that Charles is giving this evening? 15. Your invitation is probably in a letter which he has sent you through the post office. 16. I haven't heard of this party which Charles is giving. 17. I saw him yesterday. 18. He said he was glad that this cousin who lives abroad had arrived to visit him. 19. He is glad to have a cousin who is as tall as he, who is about the same age, and who speaks French. 20. If Charles should invite me, I should be glad to go to his party. 21. He is one of the best friends I have.

386. Oral. 1. I have a new hat which I am going to wear to Charles' party. 2. I like a hat that becomes me. 3. This is the one that I bought last year. 4. It is a hat which had flowers and ribbons and which was very pretty when it was new. 5. I wonder if Charles would be glad to see us if we wore the hats we had last year. 6. Is Charles giving a party, or a reception, or a ball? 7. Have you forgotten the first party which you attended? 8. Were not the ladies' dresses the most beautiful you had ever seen? 9. We were the first who arrived (**les premiers à arriver**). 10. We were not the only ones who had pretty hats and gloves. 11. Charles will introduce us to his cousin, who has just arrived in America. 12. He told us yesterday that there is no one who dances better than his cousin. 13. When I attend a ball, I like a partner who dances well. 14. The only persons who dance well are those who have learned to dance. 15. Is it not a pity that we hear good music so seldom? 16. The music one hears at a ball is usually good. 17. There is no music which I do not enjoy. 18. Perhaps Charles will have the best music that we have heard in a long time. 19. Have you a dress that is becoming for this party? 20. It would be a pity if I were the only one who had not a becoming dress.

387. Conversation.

1. Où demeure le cousin de Charles?
2. Pourquoi est-il venu en Amérique?
3. Où a-t-il débarqué?
4. Que pensait-il de New-York?
5. De qui a-t-il apporté des nouvelles?
6. Que dit-il au sujet de sa sœur Jeannette?
7. Va-t-elle dans le monde?
8. Expliquez les mots 'bal' et 'soirée.'
9. En l'honneur de qui Charles va-t-il donner un bal?

10. À qui présentera-t-il tous ses invités?
11. Est-ce que le cousin de Charles parle Français?
12. Aimez-vous les bals?

LESSON XXXV

388. Impersonal Verbs. A verb in the third person singular with the indefinite subject **il**, *it*, is said to be used impersonally. Verbs relating to the weather and time are impersonal.

Il fait beau temps.	It is fine weather.	**Il dégèle.**	It is thawing.
Il est deux heures.	It is two o'clock.	**Il pleut.**	It is raining.
Il neige.	It is snowing.	**Il grèle.**	It is hailing.
Il gèle.	It is freezing.	**Il tonne.**	It is thundering.

NOTE. To the class of true impersonals belongs the idiomatic phrase, **il y a**, *there is, there are.*

389. So-called Impersonals. These are verbs and phrases in which **il**, *it*, anticipates the logical subject.

Il faut sortir. It is necessary to go out.
Il est facile de le comprendre. It is easy to understand him.
Il est toujours convenable d'être poli. It is always fitting to be polite.
Il importe d'arriver à l'heure. It is important to be on time.

NOTE. This use of il permits the subject to appear after the verb or verb phrase. It has the effect of announcing that a subject is coming.

390. Construed with the Infinitive. From the examples in the preceding section it will be seen that in general statements, the so-called impersonals are followed by the infinitive. The infinitive may also be used when the verb has a pronoun as direct or indirect object.

Il me faut sortir. I must set out.
Il nous faut sortir. We must set out.

391. Followed by Subjunctive. Except in general statements, (those not referring to a particular person or thing), certain so-called impersonal verbs and phrases, especially those denoting what is necessary or fitting, may be followed by a **que**-clause with the subjunctive.

Il faut que nous sortions. It is necessary that we go out.
Il convient qu'il aille les voir. It is proper that he should go and see them.
Il est temps qu'il le sache. It is time he should know it.

NOTE. With **il faut** and similar expressions, either the infinitive or the subjunctive is permissible when the subject of the dependent clause is a personal pronoun and can become the object of the principal verb.

Il me faut partir à six heures.
Il faut que je parte à six heures. } I must start at six o'clock.

When the subject of the clause depending on **il faut** is a noun, **que** with the subjunctive is required, as in **il faut que Jean parte à dix heures,** it is necessary for John to set out at ten o'clock.

392. Subjunctive in Time Clauses. Clauses introduced by **jusqu'à ce que, en attendant que,** *until,* and **avant que,** *before,* require the subjunctive.

Il courut jusqu'à ce qu'il fût hors de la ville. He ran until he was out of the city.
Rosa les suivit jusqu'à ce qu'ils eussent tourné le coin de la rue. Rosa followed them until they turned the corner of the street.
Il est parti avant que sa femme soit arrivée. He left before his wife arrived.

NOTE 1. After **attendre,** *to wait,* **que** takes the place of **jusqu'à ce que,** *until.*
Attendez que Jean vienne. Wait until John comes.

NOTE 2. The phrase **jusqu'au moment où,** *until,* is used with the indicative to express an action completed in the past.
Il resta chez moi jusqu'au moment où je suis revenu. He stayed at my house until I returned.

393 VOCABULARY

arracher [araʃe] to dig *or* pull up
automne *m.* [otɔn] autumn
betterave *f.* [bɛtra:v] beet
chaleur *f.* [ʃalœ:r] heat
champ *m.* [ʃã] field
chanter [ʃãte] to sing
chaud [ʃo] warm
chaudement [ʃodmã] warmly
durer [dyre] to last, continue
s'éclaircir [s eklɛrsi:r] to clear up
s'épanouir [s epanwi:r] to blossom
empêcher [ãpeʃe] to prevent
époque *f.* [epɔk] period
emprunter (à) [ãprœ̃te a] to borrow
feuille *f.* [fœ:j] leaf
froid (*noun m. and adj.*) [frwa] cold
hiver *m.* [ivɛ:r] winter
insupportable [ɛ̃sypɔrtabl] unbearable
mériter [merite], to merit, deserve
se mouiller [sə muje] to get wet
nécessaire [nesesɛ:r] necessary
orage *m.* [ɔra:ʒ] storm
oiseau *m.* [wazo] bird
par [par] at, during
parapluie *m.* [paraplɥi] umbrella
pareil, pareille [parɛ:j] like, such
parfois [parfwa] sometimes
patiner [patine] to skate
pluie *f.* [plɥi] rain
se protéger [sə prɔteʒe] to protect oneself
raisin *m.* [rezɛ̃] grape, grapes
récolter [rekɔlte] to gather, harvest
rendre [rã:dr] to return, render
saison *f.* [sɛzɔ̃] season
superbe [sypɛrb] fine, delightful
temps *m.* [tã] weather
tonner [tɔne] to thunder

labourer [labure] to plow **traîneau** *m.* [trɛno] sleigh

cesser de pleuvoir [1] [sɛse də plœvwaːr] to stop raining
faire du brouillard [fɛːr dy brujaːr] to be foggy
faire des éclairs [fɛːr dez ekleːr] to lighten
faire la moisson [fɛːr la mwasɔ̃] to harvest
faire une partie de traîneau [fɛːr yn parti də trɛno] to go sleigh riding
faire du soleil [fɛr dy səleːj] to be sunny
faire un froid de loup [fɛːr œ̃ frwa də lu] to be intensely cold
il se peut [il sə pø] it may be (*with subjunctive*)
le temps est couvert [lə tɑ̃ ɛ kuvɛːr] it is cloudy

EXERCISES

394. 1. Aujourd'hui il fait un temps superbe. 2. Hier nous étions chez un ami. 3. Pendant que nous y étions, il a fait un grand orage. 4. Il a plu pendant trois heures. 5. Nous y sommes restés jusqu'à ce que le temps s'éclaircît. 6. Avant que nous soyons arrivés chez nous, il a commencé à tonner et à faire des éclairs. 7. L'été est la saison des orages. 8. Par un temps pareil il faut prendre un parapluie. 9. Parfois il fait une chaleur insupportable. 10. Il se peut même que la chaleur soit si insupportable qu'elle vous empêche de travailler. 11. Par la saison chaude, beaucoup d'habitants des villes vont à la campagne ou au bord de la mer. 12. En automne, les feuilles commencent à tomber. 13. À cette époque on fait la moisson. 14. On récolte le raisin et on arrache les pommes de terre et les betteraves. 15. L'automne dure jusqu'au mois de décembre. 16. En hiver, il gèle, il neige, et il fait souvent un froid de loup. 17. On s'amuse à patiner et parfois on fait des parties de traîneau. 18. Il faut s'habiller chaudement pour se protéger contre le froid. 19. Au printemps les fleurs s'épanouissent. 20. On laboure les champs et l'on [2] entend chanter les oiseaux.

395. 1. The vacation has come. 2. There is no more school until autumn. 3. « What to do ? » as one says in French. 4. It is necessary to do something because the weather is so fine in summer. 5. It rains sometimes and also hails and thunders. 6. When it thunders it lightens also. 7. In winter it snows and freezes and in the spring it thaws. 8. It is fine weather until winter comes. 9. There is usually not much bad weather before the month of November. 10. But when bad weather begins, it very often continues until the winter is over (**passé**). 11. One day we went by automobile to a town to visit some friends. 12. It was cloudy before we set out, but we thought that it would soon clear up.

[1] Irregular verb; past participle, **plu**.
[2] **On** may take the article to prevent two vowel sounds from coming together.

13. It rained the whole afternoon, and we were very wet. 14. One should have an umbrella when it rains. 15. It is necessary to have one if you do not wish to get wet. 16. It is not necessary [1] that you borrow an umbrella from your neighbor. 17. It is very easy to lose it. 18. It was then time that we return home. 19. The sun was shining before we started, and the weather was fine until we arrived. 20. It is better to remain at home until it stops raining.

396. Oral. 1. Almost everyone talks of the weather. 2. It deserves to be talked about.[2] 3. Very often you hear (some one) say, « What kind of weather is it today? » 4. Sometimes you hear the same question before you have eaten breakfast. 5. What delightful weather! 6. The weather is fine this summer. 7. It does not rain often and it is not too warm. 8. It has been cloudy very little, and there has not been much rain. 9. Summer will soon be over. 10. The weather will not be bad until winter arrives. 11. It is usually bad weather until spring. 12. Did you ever see a worse winter than the last? 13. It snowed almost every day. 14. In winter it rains and snows and freezes. 15. It does not usually begin to thaw until (**avant que**) spring arrives. 16. We are waiting until spring comes. 17. It is necessary to wait until spring for good weather. 18. It is easy to do this (**le**), if it is not too foggy and too cold. 19. It is important to have a good climate.

397. Conversation.

1. Quel temps fait-il aujourd'hui?
2. Quelle saison préférez-vous?
3. Quel temps fait-il ordinairement en hiver? En été? Au printemps (*spring*)? En automne?
4. À quelle époque de l'année va-t-on au bord de la mer?
5. À quelle époque fait-on la moisson?
6. Aimez-vous patiner?
7. Préférez-vous la chaleur au froid?
8. Quand dégèle-t-il?
9. Comment peut-on s'amuser quand il neige?
10. Que faites-vous quand il pleut?

LESSON XXXVI

398. Irregular Verbs. The list of irregular verbs with moods and tenses is given in the Appendix. Those which occur most frequently

[1] Not **il ne faut pas**, which would mean *you must not*, but **il n'est pas nécessaire. A que** clause with the subjunctive follows.

[2] Subjunctive required, see **372.**

and are most needed are taken up for special practice in the following lessons. Mastery of the irregular forms, which the learner will not find of great difficulty, is essential to facility in reading, writing or speaking.

399. Infinitive Endings. Irregular verbs are usually arranged in groups according to the respective endings of the present infinitive, **–er, –e, –ir, –oir.** Only two simple irregular verbs have the infinitive in **–er, aller,** *to go,* and **envoyer,** *to send.* Examples of the other groups are **écrire,** *to write;* **tenir,** *to hold;* **savoir,** *to know.*

400. Variations in Form. Irregular verbs are those which vary from the regular conjugations owing to peculiarities in the personal endings, or in the form of the stem, or in both. The personal endings in fact are the same for irregular as for regular verbs, but they may be affected by changes in the stem and appear to be different from the regular terminations. Compare the present singular indicative of **punir,** *to punish;* and **dormir,** *to sleep:*

je punis [ʒə pyni]	**je dors** [ʒə dɔːr]
tu punis [ty pyni]	**tu dors** [ty dɔːr]
il punit [il pyni]	**il dort** [il dɔːr]

Here the stem **dorm–** changes to **dor–,** the **m** disappearing before a following consonant, the endings appearing as **–s, –s, –t** in both cases.

401. Changes in Stems. Changes in the stems of irregular verbs are due to several causes, one of which is the word accent. In pronunciation the accent falls on the stem, or on the personal ending, as in **j'ai'me,** and **nous aimo'ns.** When it falls on the stem it may have the effect of changing the vowel, as in the present tense of **recevoir,** *to receive:*

je reçois [ʒə rəswa]	**nous recevons** [nu rəsəvɔ̃]
tu reçois [ty rəswa]	**vous recevez** [vu rəsəve]
il reçoit [il rəswa]	**ils reçoivent** [il rəswaːv]

The stem **recev–** is changed to **reçoi–** in the singular and third person plural. The **v** disappears before the consonant of the ending and the **e** is changed to **oi** because it bears the word accent, whereas it is unaffected in the first and second persons plural, the accent falling on the endings.

A similar change takes place in **venir,** *to come,* which, in the present indicative singular exhibits the two stems, **ven–** and **vien–.**

The stems of some irregular verbs take several forms (for example, **aller,** *to go*), but this is not due to word accent.

NOTE. Regular verbs have also been affected by the word accent, but where two stems resulted, these verbs use one to the exclusion of the other. It is this that helps to make them regular. An example is **aimer,** *to love,* which employs the accented stem **aim–** exclusively, though the unaccented one **am–** appears in **amant,** *lover.*

402. Principal Parts. The principal parts of irregular verbs (as of the regular ones) are the present indicative, the present infinitive, the present participle, the past absolute, and the past participle. From the stems contained in these parts, the other tenses can usually be formed as follows:

a. The imperative from the present indicative.

b. The future and the conditional from the present infinitive.

c. The past descriptive and the present subjunctive from the present participle.

d. The past subjunctive from the past absolute.

e. Compound tenses from the past participle + the auxiliaries.

NOTE. The future tense of **être** (**je serai**) is derived from an older form of the infinitive.

403. Synopsis. The following is a synopsis of the verb **dire,** *to say.*

Pres. Indicative	je	dis	Pres. Infinitive		dire
Imperative		dis	Fut. Indicative		je dirai
			Past Future / Conditional		je dirais
Pres. Participle		disant	Past Absolute		je dis
Past Descriptive	je	disais	Past Subjunctive		je disse
Pres. Subjunctive	je	dise			
Past Participle		dit			
Pres. Perfect	j'ai	dit			

404. When it is said that a certain tense may be formed from one of the principal parts it is not meant that the one is derived from the other. The present subjunctive, for example, is not derived from the present participle. What is meant in this and similar cases is that both parts contain the same stem, so that knowing one, the other may be formed by adding the proper endings.

DRILL EXERCISE

405. 1. Referring to the Appendix, write out the principal parts of **dormir, ouvrir, boire, conduire.**

2. Show how the other tenses may be formed from these principal parts.

3. *Identify each of the following forms and state in each case which of the principal parts it resembles most:* **donnait, finissais, vende, trouvasse, chanterai, monterais, punisse, disais, dise, disse, vendisse, finirais, demandions, vendiez, donnes, donnassions, j'ai trouvé, je suis venu, partirais, finit, donnât, entende, dorme, dormions, dormais, dormisse, dormît, ouvrais, buvais, conduisions.**

LESSON XXXVII

406. Present Indicative of *aller, asseoir.*

		Endings
je vais [ʒə vɛ]	I go	**–s**
tu vas [ty va]		**–s**
il va [il va]		**—**
nous allons [nuz alɔ̃]	we go	**–ons**
vous allez [vuz ale]		**–ez**
ils vont [il vɔ̃]		**–nt**
j'assieds [ʒ asje]	I seat	**–s**
tu assieds [ty asje]		**–s**
il assied [il asje]		**—**
nous asseyons [nuz asɛjɔ̃]	we seat	**–ons**
vous asseyez [vuz asɛje]		**–ez**
ils asseyent [ilz asɛːj]		**–ent**

DRILL EXERCISE

407. 1. For complete conjugations see, Appendix **515, 561.**

2. The present singular and third plural of **aller** are derived from a Latin verb **vadere,** *to go.* The future **irai,** comes from Latin **ire,** also meaning *to go.*

3. **Asseoir** is from Latin **assidere,** *to sit down,* which accounts for the **d** of the stem in the singular.

4. Does the stem **vai–** or **va–** occur elsewhere in the conjugation of **aller?**

5. Do you find **d** in the stem of any tense of **asseoir** except the present indicative?

6. Notice that **asseoir,** *to seat,* is transitive, and **s'asseoir,** *to sit down,* though transitive in form, is intransitive in sense. With **aller** compare the much used reflexive **s'en aller,** *to go away* (**en** = adverb *away*).

7. Give the present indicative of **s'asseoir** and **s'en aller.**

8. What is the imperative of these verbs?

9. Write the future and the conditional of **rasseoir,** *to reseat,* **se rasseoir,** *to sit down again,* and **s'en aller.**

10. Write the tenses of these verbs that are formed on the same stem as the present participle.

11. Show the relation between the past absolute of the verbs in 9 and the past subjunctive.

12. What is the past participle of **asseoir?**

13. The accented stem of **asseoir** is **assie–,** the unaccented **ass–.** What stems do you find of a different form?

408. *Identify and translate.*

J'irai; j'irais; il ira; elle irait; allant; allé; il allait; ils allaient; vous vous en alliez; nous nous en allions; que j'aille; qu'il aille; que vous alliez; que nous nous en allions; il s'en est allé; elle était allée; il alla; ils allèrent; nous allâmes; vous allâtes; vous vous en allâtes; nous nous en allâmes; qu'il s'en allât; que vous vous en allassiez; j'assiérai; tu assiérais; ils assiéront; ils assiéraient; je m'assiérai; il s'assiérait; vous vous assiérez; asseyant; s'asseyant; j'asseyais; je m'asseyais; nous asseyions; vous vous asseyiez; qu'il asseye; que nous nous asseyions; j'ai assis; je me suis assis; elle était assise; il assit; ils assirent; nous assîmes; il se rassit; vous vous rassîtes; qu'il s'assît; que vous vous rassissiez; vous vous rasseyez; nous nous asseyons; va-t-en; allez-vous-en; asseyez-vous; nous rasseyons.

409. *Translate into French.*

Sit down; sit down again; let us sit down; I am sitting (**je suis assis**);[1] you are not sitting down; will you not sit down; he will sit down; he would sit down; he would go away; let us go; let us go away; go away; I am going away; are you going away? I did not sit down again; did you go away? Has he gone away? Has she gone? Has she sat down again? I did not sit down; we did not go; they did not go; did you go? Did you not sit down? going; sitting down; seating; gone; seated; he was seating; he has seated; they did not seat; they did not go away; are you going away? We are not going.

[1] To be sitting = **être assis** when it refers to the state and not the act of sitting.

410. Compound Tenses. These are formed by combining the tenses of **avoir** or **être** with the past participle. Reflexives and some intransitives require **être**, while other verbs as a rule have **avoir** (see **164, 174, 185**).

411. Compound Tenses of Indicative. There are four of these tenses, the present perfect, the past perfect, the second past perfect, the future perfect. Note the outline of **parler,** *to speak,* and **arriver,** *to arrive.*

Present Perfect	
j'ai parlé, I have spoken	**je suis arrivé,** I have arrived
Past Perfect	
j'avais parlé, I had spoken	**j'étais arrivé,** I had arrived
2nd Past Perfect	
j'eus parlé, I had spoken	**je fus arrivé,** I had arrived
Future Perfect	
j'aurai parlé, I shall have spoken	**je serai arrivé,** I shall have arrived

412. Past Perfect and Second Past Perfect.

Though both are translated by *had,* these tenses are not precisely equivalent. The past perfect is the more frequent and is used regularly with **si,** *if,* in conditional clauses:

Si j'avais su. If I had known.

Si je vous avais vu, je vous aurais parlé. If I had seen you, I should have spoken to you.

The second past perfect occurs after certain conjunctions of time, such as **à peine . . . que,** *hardly . . . when;* **aussitôt . . . que,** *as soon as;* **quand,** *when.*

À peine eut-il fini de dîner qu'il commença à lire un journal. He had hardly finished his dinner when he began to read a newspaper.

413. Position of Adverbs.

In general, they are placed directly after the verb in simple tenses and between the auxiliary and past participle in compound tenses.

Il lit lentement. He reads slowly.

J'ai bien dormi. I slept well.

Il en a trop parlé. He talked about it too much.

1. **Aujourd'hui, hier, demain, autrefois, tôt, tard, ici, là, ailleurs, partout,** are never placed between the auxiliary and past participle.

Il est parti hier. He went away yesterday.

Il est arrivé tard. He arrived late.

2. Certain adverbs precede the infinitive. Among these are **bien, mieux, beaucoup, peu, trop,** etc.

On ne devrait pas trop parler. One should not talk too much.

414. VOCABULARY

approcher [aprɔʃe] to come near
asseoir [aswaːr] to seat
autrement [otrəmɑ̃] otherwise
camp *m.* [kɑ̃] camp
casque *m.* [kask] helmet
causer [kozeʃ] to talk, chat
complet *m.* [kɔ̃plɛ] suit of clothes
conversation *f.* [kɔ̃vɛrsɑsjɔ̃] conversation
côté *m.* [kote] side
déjà [deʒa] already, by this time
demi [dəmi] half
diligemment [diliʒamɑ̃] diligently
établir [etablɪːr] to establish
irrégulier [iregylje] irregular
là [la] there
mode *m.* [mɔd] mood
partie *f.* [parti] part
plage *f.* [plaːʒ] beach
pourquoi [purkwa] why
remarquer [rəmarke] to notice
seyant [sɛjɑ̃] becoming
soldat *m.* [sɔlda] soldier
temps *m.* [tɑ̃] time, tense
uniforme *m.* [yniform] uniform
verbe *m.* [vɛrb] verb

aller au-devant de [ale o dəvɑ̃ də] to go to meet
aller bien [ale bjɛ̃] to fit well
à merveille [a mɛrveːj] admirably, wonderfully
à peine . . . que [a pɛn . . . kə] hardly . . . when
comment va M. votre frère? [kɔmɑ̃ va məsjø vɔtrə frɛːr] how is your brother?
demander des nouvelles de la santé de quelqu'un [dəmɑ̃de de nuvɛl də la sɑ̃te də kɛlkœ̃] to ask about one's health
le mot qu'il faut [lə mo k il fo] the right word
si tôt [si to] so soon
supposer que (*with subj.*) [sypoze kə] to suppose that
se trouver [sə truve] to be, be found
un peu avant que [œ̃ pø avɑ̃ kə] a little while before
se porter bien [sə pɔrte bjɛ̃] to be well

EXERCISES

415. 1. L'été dernier nous sommes allés au bord de la mer. 2. Il faisait beau tous les jours. 3. Tous les matins nous allions sur la plage où nous restions une grande partie de la journée. 4. Un matin j'y suis arrivé de très bonne heure, et je me suis assis sur le sable pour regarder la mer. 5. J'y étais assis depuis une demi-heure quand mon père est arrivé. 6. Nous nous sommes assis l'un à côté de l'autre et nous avons commencé à causer. 7. « As-tu vu les soldats ce matin, » me demanda-t-il? 8. « Ils ont établi leur camp près d'ici. 9. Leurs uniformes sont beaux et leurs casques leur vont si bien. » 10. J'allais quitter la plage pour aller chercher

ma mère quand je l'ai vue de loin. 11. Je me suis levé tout de suite et je suis allé au devant d'elle. 12. Bonjour, ma mère, comment vas-tu? 13. Très bien, merci. 14. Et toi, mon fils? 15. À merveille. 16. Puis nous nous sommes promenés tous les trois sur la plage. 17. Mais la fin de l'été approche et il faut penser à retourner chez nous. 18. J'aimerais mieux ne pas y aller si tôt. 19. Il fait si beau au bord de la mer. 20. Je voudrais y rester plus longtemps.

416. 1. Come in. 2. Won't you sit down? 3. How are you today? 4. How is your father? 5. How have your mother and sister been this year? 6. Charles was here a few moments ago. 7. He sat in the chair in which you are sitting now. 8. He went away a little while before you came. 9. He was preparing his French lesson for tomorrow and found the irregular verbs a little difficult. 10. He had been studying them for two hours when he decided to come and talk to me. 11. He will have finished his work by this time. 12. He had almost finished it when he was here. 13. I noticed that Charles had a new hat which was very becoming and a new suit which also fits him well. 14. Have you learned all the moods and tenses of the two irregular verbs which are found in the lesson for today? 15. It is necessary that you study them diligently. 16. Suppose that you meet a French friend who does not speak English.[1] 17. You wish to say, «How do you do?» or «Have the goodness to sit down» or «You live in a beautiful city.» 18. If you had studied this lesson which we have for today, this (**cela**) would be easy. 19. Otherwise it would be difficult, for you would not find the right words.

417. Oral. 1. Let's sit down a moment. 2. Here are some comfortable chairs. 3. I was sitting in one (**l'une**) of them yesterday. 4. I had been sitting there about ten minutes when the teacher came in. 5. If he had not been so busy, I should have spoken to him about our lesson. 6. He had hardly entered the room when we began to recite. 7. How do you like these irregular verbs? 8. Why is it necessary that verbs be irregular? 9. Is it necessary that one learn them all? 10. How long have you studied **aller** and **s'asseoir?** 11. I have studied them for an hour. 12. Are you going so soon? 13. We have hardly sat down. 14. How is your brother today? 15. I haven't asked about your mother and sister. 16. How are they? 17. I saw them two months ago. 18. I am going to visit them soon. 19. You say you have a new book. 20. How do you like it? 21. It is no doubt better than mine. 22. Well,

[1] In such expressions, the name of the language being originally expressed by an adverb, the article is omitted. Compare the Latin **latine loqui,** *to speak Latin,* **latine** being an adverb.

I must be going.[1] 23. Thank you for this interesting conversation. Good bye.

418. Conversation.

1. Où sommes-nous allés l'été dernier ?
2. Quel temps faisait-il ?
3. Où allions-nous chaque matin ?
4. Qui ai-je rencontré un matin pendant que j'étais assis sur le sable ?
5. Depuis quand y étais-je assis ?
6. De quoi avons-nous parlé ?
7. Qui est arrivé sur la plage plus tard ?
8. Qu'est-ce que nous avons fait après l'arrivée de ma mère ?
9. Aimez-vous aller au bord de la mer ?
10. Avez-vous appris **avoir** et **être** ?
11. Les verbes irréguliers sont-ils difficiles ?
12. Trouvez-vous la grammaire française plus difficile que la grammaire anglaise ?

LESSON XXXVIII

419. Present Indicative of *devoir*, *pouvoir*, *vouloir*.

		Endings
je dois [ʒə dwa]	I owe, I ought	**–s**
tu dois [ty dwa]		**–s**
il doit [il dwa]		**–t**
nous devons [nu dəvɔ̃]	we owe, we ought	**–ons**
vous devez [vu dəve]		**–ez**
ils doivent [il dwaːv]		**–ent**
je peux (*or* **puis**)[2] [ʒə pø, ʒə pɥi]	I am able, I can	**–x** (*or* **–s**)
tu peux [ty pø]		**–x**
il peut [il pø]		**–t**
nous pouvons [nu puvɔ̃]	we are able, we can	**–ons**
vous pouvez [vu puve]		**–ez**
ils peuvent [il pœːv]		**–ent**
je veux [ʒə vø]	I wish, I will	**–x**
tu veux [ty vø]		**–x**
il veut [il vø]		**–t**
nous voulons [nu vulɔ̃]	we wish, we will	**–ons**
vous voulez [vu vule]		**–ez**
ils veulent [il vœl]		**–ent**

[1] Use **s'en aller** or **partir**.

[2] In questions with the inverted order **puis** is required (thus, **puis-je ?**), and is preferred in negative sentences when **pas** is omitted (**je ne puis m'expliquer cet accident**, *I can not explain this incident*).

DRILL EXERCISE

420. 1. For the complete conjugation of these verbs, see Appendix, **564, 569, 574.**

2. What is the unaccented stem of **devoir?**

3. What does it become when accented?

4. Notice that **doiv-** of the third person plural appears as **doi-** in the singular in accordance with the rule that the final consonant of a stem is dropped before an initial consonant in the ending. Thus **doiv + s** becomes **dois.**

5. Show how the accent affects the stems of **pouvoir** and **vouloir** respectively. Compare the present tense of **mouvoir,** *to move,* and **mourir,** *to die* (see Appendix **567, 525**).

6. Observe the future forms, **devrai, pourrai, voudrai.** What is the rule for forming the future of regular verbs?

7. Inflect the present perfect of **devoir.** What is the past participle?

8. Recite the present and past subjunctive of **pouvoir;** also of **vouloir.**

9. *Identify and translate:*

Ils doivent; je dois; il devait; vous deviez; nous devrons; nous devrions; j'ai dû; il avait dû; dû; devant; je doive; il doive; tu dusses; nous dussions; il dût; il dut; nous dûmes; voulant; voulu; je voulais; il voulut; nous voulûmes; je veuille; nous voulions; il veut; il meut; il meurt; ils veulent; ils meuvent; il voudra; il pourra; nous voudrons; vous pourriez; je voulus; je voulusse; ils voulurent; ils voulussent; il peut; ils peuvent; vous pouviez; pouvant; pu; j'ai pu; il avait pu; je puisse; vous puissiez; il pût; il put; je pusse; ils pussent; je pourrai; je pourrais; ils purent.

10. *Translate into French:*

They owe; we owe; I owe; owing; owed; he was owing; they were owing; he owed; you owed; they have owed; they owed; let him owe; let them owe; I can; you can; they can; we can; he was able; he will be able; they would be able; may he be able; he could; may they be able; we could; I have been able; he had been able; they were able; you will be able; I will; you will; they will; we were willing; you were willing; I have been willing; we had been willing; may he be willing; may you be willing; he will be willing; they will be willing.

421. Devoir occurs alone or with complementary infinitive. It contains the idea of being bound, usually by external circumstances. This is implied in its different uses, two of which are illustrated in this lesson.

1. **Devoir,** *to owe:*

Je lui dois six francs. I owe him six francs.
Je lui devais tous mes maux. I owed him all my misfortunes.

2. **Devoir,** *to be due,* with infinitive. The action of the infinitive is future with respect to the governing verb and has its motive in the situation or circumstances rather than in the speaker's own will.

Je dois me promener tous les jours. I am (due) to take a walk every day.
Il devait arriver à deux heures. He was (due) to arrive at two o'clock.

422. Vouloir occurs very frequently with a complementary infinitive. The principal meanings are *wish, will* and *be willing.* Unlike **devoir,** it emphasizes the initiative of the speaker.

Il veut apprendre le français. He wishes to learn French.
Il ne voulait pas acquitter ses dettes. He was not willing to pay his debts.

NOTE. The imperative form, **veuillez,** *please, have the kindness to,* should be noted, and also the conditional, **je voudrais,** *I should like,* etc.

423. Pouvoir may be followed by the infinitive, which is always complementary, but the phrase **il se peut,** *it may be,* takes the subjunctive. **Pouvoir** denotes chiefly *ability* and *permission* and is often rendered by *may, might, can, could,* and the like.

Il peut le faire. He is able to do it, he can *or* he may do it.
Il pourra le faire. He will be able to do it, he can *or* he may do it.
Il pouvait le faire. He was able to do it, he could *or* might do it.
Il pourrait le faire. He would be able to do it, he could *or* he might do it.
Il se peut qu'il soit déjà arrivé. It may be that he has already arrived.
Il se peut qu'il ait déjà dîné. It may be that he has already dined.
Il se peut que vous le rencontriez dans la rue. It may be that you will meet him on the street.

NOTE 1. *To be able* in the sense of *know how* is **savoir.**
Il sait jouer du piano. He can (*knows how to*) play the piano.

NOTE 2. With **pouvoir** the negative may be expressed by **ne** alone, as in **je ne puis le faire,** I can not do it.

424. Time of Day. Observe the following usage:

1. In telling or asking the hour, use **il** with the proper form of **être,** and the cardinal numbers with **heure.**

Quelle heure est-il? What time is it?
Il est trois heures. It is three o'clock.

2. In telling the hour at which something takes place use the preposition **à.**

Il arrivera à trois heures. He will arrive at three o'clock.

3. Time past the hour follows the hour with or without **et.** With **demi,** *f.* **demie, et** is required and also with **quart,** when the latter is not preceded by the indefinite article.

Il est trois heures et demie. It is half past three.
Il est six heures et (*or* **un**) **quart.** It is a quarter past six.
Il est six heures dix. It is ten minutes past six.
Il est midi et (*or* **un**) **quart.** It is a quarter past twelve.
Il est minuit et demi. It is half past twelve (night).

NOTE 1. **Midi** and not **douze heures** signifies *twelve o'clock* (*noon*).

NOTE 2. **Minutes** in time after or before the hour may be omitted.

4. Time before the hour is preceded by **moins,** *less.* The definite or indefinite article may be used with **quart.**

Il est cinq heures moins (**le** *or* **un**) **quart.** It is a quarter to five.
Il est sept heures moins dix. It is ten minutes of seven.
Il est dix heures moins cinq. It is five minutes of ten.

NOTE. In French railroad schedules the hours are numbered from 1 to 24; minutes past the hour are indicated from 1 to 59.

425. Past Conditional. The tense is formed by using a past participle with the conditional of **avoir** or **être.**

S'il avait trouvé son livre, il me l'aurait montré. If he had found his book, he would have shown it to me.
Si vous aviez fait cela, il l'aurait remarqué. If you had done that, he would have noticed it.

426. VOCABULARY

ainsi [ɛ̃si] thus, therefore
à moins que . . . ne [a mwɛ̃ kə . . . nə] unless
assiduité *f.* [asidɥite] diligence
cabine *f.* [kabin] cabin, stateroom
colis *m.* [koli] parcel, package
découvrir [1] [dekuvriːr] to discover, find out
s'embarquer [s ɑ̃barke] to embark
examen *m.* [egzamɛ̃] examination
fixer [fikse] to set, fix
hôtel *m.* [otɛl] hotel
s'imaginer [simaʒine] to imagine, think
n'importe [nɛ̃port] it makes no difference
ligne *f.* [liɲ] line
manquer [mɑ̃ke] to miss
mari *m.* [mari] husband
nouvelle *f.* [nuvɛl] news, rumor
s'occuper [s ɔkype] to be busy
paquebot *m.* [pakbo] liner, ship
parent *m.*, [parɑ̃] relative
partir [partiːr] to leave, sail
passer [pɑse] to pass (*of examinations*)
rapide [rapid] rapid, fast
retenir [rətniːr] to retain, secure
scolaire (*adj.*) [skɔlɛːr] school

[1] See Appendix **526.**

souhaiter [swɛte] to wish
tôt [to] soon
transatlantique [trɑ̃zatlɑ̃tik] transatlantic

agence de la compagnie maritime *f.* [aʒɑ̃:s də la kɔ̃paɲi maritim] office of steamship company
aller à bord de [ale a bɔ:r də] to go on board of
aussitôt que [osito kə] as soon as
autant que [otɑ̃ kə] *as much as*
couverture de voyage *f.* [kuvɛrty:r də vwaja:ʒ] steamer rug
du reste [dy rɛst] besides, moreover
au moins [o mwɛ̃] at least, at any rate
point du tout [pwɛ̃ dy tu] not at all

EXERCISES

427. 1. Monsieur Thomas, sa femme et son fils ont décidé de passer quelques mois en France. 2. Aussitôt qu'ils ont pu le faire, ils ont fixé le jour de leur départ. 3. Ils devaient s'embarquer le premier juin. 4. Ils auraient bien voulu partir plus tôt, mais Charles a dû[1] attendre jusqu'à la fin de l'année scolaire pour passer ses examens. 5. En attendant, monsieur Thomas s'occupe de ses affaires et prend des renseignements sur les différentes lignes transatlantiques. 6. Il retient d'avance trois places dans un wagon-lit et trois cabines à bord d'un paquebot. 7. Charles étudie avec assiduité et pense au voyage qu'il doit faire. 8. Il parle souvent des pays et des villes qu'il doit visiter. 9. Madame Thomas fait des achats et d'autres préparatifs pour son voyage. 10. Elle achète des robes, un chapeau, et une couverture de voyage. 11. Son mari désire qu'elle se repose un peu avant de partir, mais elle ne veut pas le faire. 12. Personne ne peut l'empêcher de travailler. 13. Ses amies vont souvent la voir et elle fait beaucoup de visites. 14. Enfin le jour de son départ arrive. 15. Le train doit partir à trois heures et demie. 16. Quand monsieur Thomas et sa famille arrivent à la gare, ils y trouvent beaucoup de parents et d'amis qui y sont venus pour leur souhaiter bon boyage. 17. Après avoir dit adieu à ceux qui sont venus les voir, les voyageurs montent dans un wagon-lit et le train part.

428. 1. Have you seen Charles this morning? 2. He was to be here at half past eight and it is now a quarter of nine. 3. Why did you wish to see him so early? 4. Does he owe you something which he has forgotten to pay? 5. Oh, not at all, he does not owe me anything, and besides, Charles always pays what he owes. 6. I wanted to see him because I have heard that he was to go abroad this summer. 7. Can you think of anything more pleasant than a trip to France, especially in the

[1] Past participle of devoir

spring and summer? 8. It may be that this rumor that Charles is going abroad is not true. 9. Well, let us go find him and ask him if it is true. 10. There he is now, talking (**qui parle**) with our professor. 11. We can ask him as soon as they have finished the conversation. 12. What's the good news, Charles, that you were telling the professor? 13. I was saying, when you came in, that I am going abroad this summer. 14. A steamer leaves New York every Wednesday at a quarter past ten. 15. What! You are going abroad this summer? 16. When? With whom? For how long? 17. Yesterday my father was asking me if I could recite the irregular verbs. 18. Suppose that you were in France. 19. Could you ask in French the price of a room in a hotel? 20. If a French friend were to pay you a visit could you ask him to sit down? 21. Could you say, « I owe the waiter ten francs, » and « The train is to arrive at ten minutes past eight »? 22. I thought that I could do so. 23. And then my father asked me if I should like to make a trip to France this summer. 24. Thus we are all going abroad — mother, father, and I.

429. Oral. 1. Are you going abroad this summer? 2. You must make preparations for the trip in advance. 3. You must buy your ticket and register your baggage. 4. Then, unless you wish to remain at home, you must go on board the ship. 5. The ship leaves on time. 6. It makes little difference [1] whether [2] the weather is [3] good, or whether it is bad. 7. Charles' father has been able to secure two comfortable cabins on a good ship. 8. Charles himself went one day to the office of the steamship company. 9. He wanted to know what time the ship was to leave New York. 10. He had not been able to find this information in the newspapers. 11. It may be that ships do not always sail (**partent**) [4] on time. 12. But Charles was right in wanting to be certain about it. 13. Otherwise he might have (**aurait pu**) missed the boat. 14. The ship is to sail on Wednesday at twenty minutes of ten. 15. Would you like to travel on a faster ship? 16. At any rate, buy your ticket, register your baggage, and go on board in time. 17. The company will owe us a good voyage.

430. Conversation.

1. Où monsieur Thomas a-t-il décidé de passer quelques mois?
2. Quand devait-il partir?
3. Pourquoi a-t-il attendu jusqu'à la fin du mois de juin?
4. En attendant, que fait-il?

[1] **Peu importe.**
[2] *Whether . . . whether* is **que . . . que.**
[3] Subjunctive.
[4] Pres. subjunctive of **partir,** see **520.**

5. Que fait Charles?
6. Que fait madame Thomas?
7. Aimez-vous voyager?
8. Avez-vous voyagé en Italie?
9. Voudriez-vous y aller?
10. Qui est allé à la gare pour souhaiter bon voyage à monsieur Thomas et à sa famille?
11. À quelle heure le train part-il?
12. Préférez-vous voyager en chemin de fer ou en automobile?

LESSON XXXIX

431. Present Indicative of *savoir, valoir, voir.*

		Endings
je sais [ʒə se]	I know	**–s**
tu sais [ty se]		**–s**
il sait [il se]		**–t**
nous savons [nu savɔ̃]	we know	**–ons**
vous savez [vu save]		**–ez**
ils savent [il saːv]		**–ent**
je vaux [ʒə vo]	I am worth	**–x**
tu vaux [ty vo]		**–x**
il vaut [il vo]		**–t**
nous valons [nu valɔ̃]	we are worth	**–ons**
vous valez [vu vale]		**–ez**
ils valent [il val]		**–ent**
je vois [ʒə vwa]	I see	**–s**
tu vois [ty vwa]		**–s**
il voit [il vwa]		**–t**
nous voyons [nu vwajɔ̃]	we see	**–ons**
vous voyez [vu vwaje]		**–ez**
ils voient [il vwa]		**–ent**

DRILL EXERCISE

432. 1. For the complete conjugations, see Appendix **571, 572, 573.**

2. Point out the two stems of **savoir.** Why does not final **v** appear in the singular? Compare the present indicative of **devoir.**

3. What two stems has **valoir** in the present indicative? Which one is unaccented?

4. Note that **y** is equivalent to **ii**; thus, **voyons** = **voiions.** Give the

present participle of **entrevoir,** *to catch sight;* of **pourvoir,** *to provide;* and of **prévoir,** *to foresee.*

5. **Verrai,** the future of **voir** is from an old form, **vedrai.** Write the future and the conditional of **voir** and of **revoir,** *to see again.*

6. Write the past absolute and the past subjunctive of **voir.** What is the past participle?

7. Write the future of **valoir** and compare it with the future of **vouloir.** What have these forms in common?

8. What is the present participle of **savoir**? Write the present subjunctive.

9. If **savoir** were a regular verb, what would be the form of the present participle? Compare it with the adjective **savant,** *learned.*

10. In **savoir,** do we find the usual similarity of form between the present participle and the past descriptive?

11. Write the future and the conditional of **savoir.**

12. Show the similarity in form between the past absolute and the past subjunctive of **savoir.**

13. *Identify and translate:*

Voyant; entrevoyant; revoyant; revu; pourvu; je revoyais; tu as prévu; qu'il prévoie; qu'ils pourvoient; pourvoyons; revoyez; je vis; ils virent; nous vîmes; qu'ils vissent; il vit; qu'il vît; il avait vu; je verrai; il verrait; ils verraient; nous reverrions; il vaudra; il vaudrait; il vaut; je valais; nous valions; qu'il vaille; que vous valiez; il a valu; tu vaux; vous valez; il valut; qu'il valût; je valus; que je valusse; valu; valant; sachant; su; que je sache; que nous sachions; qu'ils sachent; je savais; vous saviez; sachons; il sut; qu'il sût; nous sûmes; ils surent; j'ai su; ils avaient su; que nous sussions;

14. *Translate into French:*

It is worth; it will be worth; may it be worth; may they be worth; I am worth; let us be worth; be worth; he has been worth; they had been worth; they will be worth; he will know; they would know; knowing; we were knowing; he knew; I have known; you had known; you will have known; they would have known; may he know; may we know; they will know; I will know; I will be worth; I will see; seeing; I was seeing; I saw; they saw; I have seen; we had seen; they will have seen; have you seen? Will they see? Had we seen? I do not see; I do not know; it is not worth; they will not see; they would not know; they were not worth;

433. Devoir. Note three uses in addition to those of the preceding lesson:

1. **Devoir** with infinitive may express necessity.

Il doit travailler. He is obliged to work.
Il devait faire son chemin dans le monde. He had to make his own way in the world.
J'ai dû partir de bonne heure. I had to set out early.
Je devrai revenir bientôt. I shall be obliged to return soon.
Nous devons obéir aux lois de notre pays. We must obey the laws of our country.

2. **Devoir** in the conditional with the infinitive may express moral obligation.

Il devrait étudier davantage. He ought to study more.
Je devrais aller voir mon père aujourd'hui. I ought to go to see my father today.
Charles aurait dû écrire une lettre à sa mère. Charles ought to have written a letter to his mother.
Il aurait dû être plus diligent. He ought to have been more diligent.

NOTE. In English the past idea is denoted by the infinitive, in French by the governing verb (see the two last examples above).

3. **Devoir** may express a high degree of probability.

On doit être heureux quand on a tant d'argent. One must be happy when one has so much money.
Ils ont dû voyager nuit et jour. They must have travelled night and day.

434. Past Infinitive. It is formed by the use of **avoir** or **être** with the past participle and denotes a preceding action or state.

Après avoir écrit la lettre, il l'a mise à la poste. After having written the letter he mailed it.
J'étais content de l'avoir vu. I was glad to have seen him.

435. Past Active Participle. This is a combination of the past participle with the present participle of **avoir** or **être,** and like the compound infinitive, denotes an action or state that precedes another.

Étant descendu du train, il monta en automobile. Having left the train, he got into an automobile.
Ayant mis son chapeau, il est sorti. Having put on his hat, he went out.

436. VOCABULARY

annoncer [anõse] to announce
s'arranger [s arãʒe] to arrange, settle, come to terms
bruit *m.* [brui] noise
calme [kalm] calm
capitaine *m.* [kapiten] captain
car [kaːr] for
cependant [səpãdã] however
chauffeur *m.* [ʃofœːr] driver
connaissance *f.* [kɔnesãːs] acquaintance
débarquer [debarke] to disembark, land
éclater [eklate] to break forth

impatient [ɛ̃pasjɑ̃] impatient
long, longue [lɔ̃, lɔ̃:g] long
machine *f.* [maʃin] engine
manquer [mɑ̃ke] to miss
mer *f.* [mɛ:r] sea
môle *m.* [mo:l] pier
nœud *m.* [nø] knot
passager *m.* [pasaʒe] passenger (on ships)
passerelle *f.* [pasrɛl] gangway
passer [pase] to spend (*of time*)
péril *m.* [peril] peril
pont *m.* [pɔ̃] deck
possible [pɔsibl] possible
se préparer à [sə prepare] to prepare to
puissant [pɥisɑ̃] powerful
risquer [riske] to risk
sirène *f.* [sirɛ:n] siren, whistle
tempête *f.* [tɑ̃pɛ:t] storm
tranquille [trɑ̃kil] quiet
traverser [traverse] to cross
valise *f.* [vali:r] valise

arriver à [arive a] to reach
à bon port [a bɔ̃ pɔ:r] safely
au moins [o mwɛ̃] at least
avoir le pied marin [avwa:r lə pje marɛ̃] to be a good sailor
avoir le mal de mer [avwa:r lə mal də mɛ:r] to be sea sick
chaise de voyage *f.* [ʃɛz də vwaja:ʒ] steamer chair
filer vite [file vit] to go rapidly
filer 20 nœuds à l'heure [file vɛ̃ nø a lœ:r] to make twenty knots an hour
maître d'hôtel *m.* [mɛ:trə d otɛl] steward
par conséquent [par kɔ̃sekɑ̃] consequently
tout de suite [tu d sɥit] at once
valoir la peine de [valwa:r la pɛn də] to be worth while
venter d'une façon effroyable [vɑ̃te d yn fasɔ̃ efrwajabl] to blow in a frightful manner

EXERCISES

437. 1. Monsieur Thomas et sa famille étaient impatients de partir pour la France. 2. Ayant fait les préparatifs de leur voyage, ils sont montés dans le train. 3. Le train est parti à six heures et quart. 4. Après un long voyage, ils sont arrivés à New-York où ils ont passé la nuit dans un hôtel. 5. Le lendemain matin ils sont montés dans un taxi et ils sont bientôt arrivés au paquebot. 6. Ils y ont trouvé beaucoup de monde. 7. La passerelle était bondée. 8. Ils vont à bord tout de suite. 9. Quelques minutes plus tard ils entendent le bruit de la sirène qui annonce le départ du paquebot. 10. Charles visite la cabine. 11. Il y voit tous ses colis. 12. Puis il monte sur le pont où son père et sa mère étaient assis sur leurs chaises de voyage. 13. Il faisait un temps superbe et la mer était belle et tranquille. 14. Le paquebot filait vite. 15. Monsieur Thomas et sa femme se promenaient souvent sur le pont. 16. Ils étaient heureux d'avoir fait tant de connaissances à bord du paquebot.

17. « Je devrais écrire des lettres aujourd'hui, » dit monsieur Thomas. 18. « Je dois le faire au moins demain. » 19. « J'aurais dû écrire beaucoup de lettres avant de partir, » répondit sa femme. 20. « Cependant il me semble qu'il vaudrait mieux que nous nous reposions autant que possible pendant le voyage. » 21. Un jour une tempête a éclaté. 22. Il a commencé à venter d'une façon effroyable. 23. Madame Thomas n'a pas le pied marin. 24. Par conséquent elle a le mal de mer. 25. Après un voyage de sept jours on est arrivé au Havre. 26. Les passagers ayant débarqué, monsieur Thomas et sa famille sont partis pour Paris.

438. 1. Having arrived in New York Mr. Thomas and his family went to a hotel to spend the night. 2. It was very interesting for Mary who had never seen a great city. 3. After having eaten breakfast the next morning, they prepared to go on board the ship. 4. They would have liked to see the city, but there was not enough time for this (**cela**). 5. Mary did not know how they would reach the pier from which (**d'où**) their ship was to sail at a quarter of ten. 6. Charles, however, called a taxi and paid the driver what they owed him. 7. At last they all went on board. 8. Is it not pleasant to be on board a good ship? 9. Is it not better to take a trip to France than [1] to learn irregular verbs and take examinations. 10. Mary was afraid of storms, but Charles thought it was not worth while to think about them. 11. If you travel on the sea you must risk the perils.[2] 12. The ship must leave on time and almost always it arrives safely. 13. There are many amusements on board and, if you do not enjoy them, you must be seasick.

439. Oral. 1. Let us go on board at once. 2. The ship is to leave at noon. 3. It is now half past eleven. 4. It is better to be on board when the ship sets out. 5. For you do not wish to miss the boat. 6. Do you know how to find the gangway and to go up on deck? 7. Here is a boy who will take our valises and put them in the stateroom. 8. What a fine boat! 9. Yes, and it is a very large one! 10. I did not know that it was so large. 11. It has three decks and very powerful engines. 12. It can cross the ocean in seven days, it goes so swiftly. 13. You ought to have a comfortable steamer chair and a steamer rug. 14. You must arrange (it) with the steward. 15. Perhaps you ought to have arranged (it) sooner. 16. You must pay in advance for the steamer chairs. 17. The ship left New York at noon and made twenty knots an hour. 18. There were no storms and the sea was calm. 19. Several hundred

[1] Use **de** before the infinitive after comparatives.

[2] **Il faut en risquer les périls.**

(**centaines de**) passengers were on board and Mr. Thomas and his family made many delightful acquaintances. 20. Having had (**fait**) a pleasant journey they all disembarked in safety (**sains et saufs**).

440. Conversation.

1. Pourquoi monsieur Thomas et sa famille étaient-ils impatients?
2. À quelle heure le train part-il?
3. Dans quelle ville se sont-ils embarqués?
4. Comment sont-ils allés au paquebot?
5. Qu'est-ce qu'ils entendent quelques minutes après être allés à bord du paquebot?
6. Où Charles trouve-t-il ses colis?
7. Où va-t-il après avoir visité sa cabine?
8. Quel temps faisait-il?
9. Où monsieur Thomas et sa femme se promenaient-ils?
10. Pourquoi étaient-ils heureux?
11. Madame Thomas avait-elle le pied marin?
12. Monsieur Thomas a-t-il écrit des lettres pendant le voyage?

LESSON XL

441. Present Indicative of *acquérir* and *ouvrir*.

		Endings
j'acquiers [ʒ akjɛːr]	I acquire	**–s**
tu acquiers [ty akjɛːr]		**–s**
il acquiert [il akjɛːr]		**–t**
nous acquérons [nuz akerɔ̃]	we acquire	**–ons**
vous acquérez [vuz akere]		**–ez**
ils acquièrent [ilz akjɛːr]		**–ent**
j'ouvre [ʒ uːvr]	I open	**–e**
tu ouvres [ty uːvr]		**–es**
il ouvre [il uːvr]		**–e**
nous ouvrons [nuz uvrɔ̃]	we open	**–ons**
vous ouvrez [vuz uvre]		**–ez**
ils ouvrent [ilz uːvr]		**–ent**

DRILL EXERCISE

442. 1. For complete conjugation, see Appendix **517, 526.**

2. What is the stem of **acquérir** obtained by dropping the ending of the present infinitive?

3. Where does this stem appear in the present indicative?

4. Is it accented in either case?

5. What other form of the stem is found in the present tense?

6. What is the effect of the accent on the stem of this verb?

7. Note that the personal endings are regular.

8. Write the present tense of **conquérir,** *to conquer,* **s'enquérir,** *to enquire;* **requérir,** *to require.*

9. The future tense is **j'acquerrai** (not **j'acquérirai**), being formed on the old infinitive **acquerre.** Write the future in full of **acquérir** and of the verbs given in 8.

10. **Ouvrir** in the present tense is like what regular verb?

11. Write the present tense of **couvrir,** *to cover;* **découvrir,** *to discover;* **offrir,** *to offer;* and **souffrir,** *to suffer.*

12. With the exception of the present tense and the past participle, **ouvert, ouvrir** is like **sentir (520).**

13. *Identify and translate:*

Nous couvrons; vous découvrirez; ils souffriront; j'offris; nous découvrîmes; ils souffrirent; que je couvre; qu'ils découvrent; que je souffrisse; que nous offrissions; il a couvert; nous avons découvert; ils avaient souffert; acquérant; j'acquérais; j'acquis; j'ai acquis; conquérant; nous conquérions; ils avaient conquis; je m'enquiers; ils se sont acquis; il s'acquit; il s'est acquis; nous requîmes; que nous conquissions; qu'ils acquièrent; qu'il s'enquière; je conquerrai; je m'enquerrai; je me suis enquis; ils se sont enquis.

14. *Translate into French:*

He is acquiring; you are acquiring; I seek; I enquire; he requires; he conquers; does he enquire? you do not acquire; he does not conquer; did they conquer? did you enquire? have we sought? may he seek; may they conquer; may you acquire; they will require; I had sought; we had acquired; I open; he discovers; we offer; they suffer; you open; I have opened; they had discovered; they will discover; let them discover; let us offer; let them not suffer; we offered; I discovered; they covered; you did not offer; they will offer; he will not discover.

443. Passive Voice. The French passive is formed by adding the past participle to the simple tenses of **être.** In this construction the participle agrees with the subject in gender and number.

Nous sommes aimés. We are loved.
Je serai aimé. I will *or* shall be loved.
J'étais aimé. I was loved.
Elle serait aimée. She would be loved.

444. The passive voice is not as much used in French as in English. Substitutes are:

1. The reflexive construction.

Ce journal se publie à New-York. This newspaper is published in New York.
Le feu s'éteint. The fire is extinguished.
Le blé se vend. The wheat is sold.

NOTE. — The use of **être** as auxiliary in the compound tenses of reflexive verbs is probably due to the fact that many such constructions are passive in meaning, as **les moutons se sont vendus** (**ont été vendus**), the sheep were sold.

2. The construction with **on**.

Ici on parle français. French is spoken here.
On ferme la bibliothèque à dix heures. The library is closed at ten o'clock.

445. Agent. With passive verbs, the agent is the person (or other animate being) that performs the action. Agency is expressed by **par** or **de**.

1. **Par** is used when the performance of the act as such is emsized and implies the agent's definite participation in the action.

Qui l'accompagnait? Il était accompagné par son fils. Who accompanied him? He was accompanied by his son.
Il fut saisi par des voleurs. He was seized by thieves.
Cette loi a été approuvée par le Sénat. This law has been approved by the Senate.
Ses vêtements ont été mangés par les mites. His clothes were eaten by the moths.
Il fut tué par un assassin. He was killed by an assassin.

2. **De** is used when the speaker's interest is less centered in the performance of the action. With verbs of *honoring*, *respecting* and the like, the agent is in a certain attitude of mind toward the subject but hardly performs a definite action, the whole expression denoting a state or situation. As with **par** the emphasis is on the agent, so with **de** it tends to fall on the subject.

Il est aimé de tous. He is loved by everyone.
Il est loué de tout le monde. He is praised by everybody.
Il est respecté de ses amis. He is respected by his friends.
La reine est accompagnée de ses dames. The queen is accompanied by her ladies.

NOTE 1. Apart from emphasis it might be said that the difference between **par** and **de** is in the degree of clearness with which the idea of agency is realized by the speaker.

NOTE 2. Such constructions as, **il est saisi de crainte**, he is overcome with fear, and **il fut entouré par les eaux**, he was surrounded by water, **il est dévoré d'ambition**, he is consumed with ambition, should not be confused with agency, though they illustrate the distinction between **par** and **de** given above.

446. VOCABULARY

accompagner [akõpaɲe] to accompany
boulevard *m.* [bulvaːr] boulevard
bourse *f.* [burs] purse
célèbre [selɛbr] famous
chemin *m.* [ʃəmɛ̃] road, way
cigare *m.* [sigaːr] cigar
coin *m.* [kwɛ̃] corner
déclarer [deklare] to declare
douane *f.* [dwan] custom-house
douanier *m.* [dwanje] custom-house officer
estime *f.* [ɛstim] esteem
féliciter de [felisite də] to congratulate on
grandeur *f.* [grɑ̃dœːr] greatness
l'Illustration *f.* [l ilystrɑsjõ] name of a French magazine
image *f.* [imaːʒ] picture
s'intéresser à [s ɛ̃terese a] to be interested in
occuper [ɔkype] to occupy
œil *m.*, *pl.* **yeux** [œːj, *pl.* jø] eye
promenade *f.* [prɔmnad] walk
public, publique [pyblik] public
puisque [pɥiskə] as, since
se rendre [sə rɑ̃ːdr] to go
service *m.* [sɛrvis] service
surpris [syrpri] surprised, caught
tabac *m.* [taba] tobacco
tourner [turne] to turn
valeur *f.* [valœːr] value
visiter [vizite] to visit, to examine
vue *f.* [vy] sight, view

à présent [a prezɑ̃] at present
à droite [a drwɑt] to the right
à gauche [a goːʃ] to the left
d'abord [d abɔːr] first
aller en taxi [ale ɑ̃ taksi] to ride in a taxi (*with definite destination*)
aller tout droit [ale tu drwɑ] to go straight ahead
avant tout [avɑ̃ tu] especially, first of all
homme d'état *m.* [ɔm d eta] statesman
par hasard [par azaːr] by chance
se promener en automobile [sə prɔmne ɑ̃n otɔmɔbil] to ride or drive in automobile (*without definite destination*)
par les rues [par le ry] about the streets
sergent de ville *m.* [sɛrʒɑ̃ də vil] policeman

EXERCISES

447. 1. Quand monsieur Thomas est arrivé à Paris, il a dû passer d'abord à la douane. 2. Le douanier lui a demandé, « Avez-vous quelque chose à déclarer ? » 3. « Non, monsieur, je n'ai rien à déclarer, » répondit monsieur Thomas. 4. Mais il lui a fallu ouvrir toutes ses malles et toutes ses valises aussi. 5. Tout le monde est obligé d'ouvrir ses bagages afin que le douanier puisse les visiter. 6. Les bagages étant visités, monsieur

Thomas est monté dans un taxi et il s'est rendu à un hôtel. 7. Quelques minutes après, Charles est sorti pour acheter des journaux. 8. Quand il est rentré, il a dit à son père et à sa mère, « Voici des journaux qui se publient à Paris. 9. J'ai acheté aussi l'Illustration. Elle contient beaucoup de belles images. 10. Voici une image qui représente un homme d'état qui est aimé de tout le monde. 11. Ses services lui ont acquis l'estime publique. » 12. Le lendemain matin, monsieur Thomas, sa femme et son fils ont fait une promenade en autobus pour voir les boulevards et les rues. 13. Le receveur a dit, « Places, s'il vous plaît. » 14. En route, monsieur Thomas et sa famille ont été surpris par un orage. 15. Ils ont dû attendre dans un bureau d'autobus que le temps s'éclaircît. 16. Puis ils ont pris l'autobus pour rentrer chez eux. 17. Quand ils sont descendus de l'autobus, Charles a dit, « J'ai appris la valeur de l'argent français. 18. Je sais que cinq centimes font un sou et que vingt sous font un franc. »

448. 1. The ship arrived at Havre early (in) the morning. 2. Before disembarking, the officers were congratulated by the passengers on having made a pleasant journey. 3. If you are a good sailor you should be congratulated by your friends. 4. Mr. Thomas was a good sailor and was congratulated by everyone on not having been sea-sick. 5. As many of the passengers had not been in France before, they were impatient to have their first sight [1] of a French city. 6. Everything had been arranged by the company. 7. This (**cela**) must always be done by someone in advance. 8. Before they took the train for Paris, Charles wanted to drive in an automobile about the streets. 9. Having enjoyed a first view of the city, they went to the railroad station. 10. On the train Charles and Mary were interested to hear so many people speak French. 11. French is always spoken on a French train. 12. Their ears and eyes were open [2] to see and hear everything.[3] 13. When you make a journey, it is useful to have the eyes and ears open. 14. When the train arrived in Paris, it was two o'clock in the afternoon. 15. Before leaving the station, the trunks and valises were opened by the custom-officers. 16. « Have you anything to declare, » asked the custom-house officer. 17. « Especially, have you any cigars or tobacco? » 18. They had none. 19. Mr. Thomas left the custom-house accompanied by his wife and son and daughter. 20. They rode in a taxi to a hotel and engaged a very pleasant room. 21. Rooms are engaged in hotels every day. 22. Are not Americans respected by the French? 23. Are not the French respected by Americans?

[1] *To see for the first time.*
[2] Use active construction.
[3] Tout precedes infinitive.

449. Oral. 1. Have you ever been in Paris? 2. The city is very famous. 3. It will open your eyes,[1] as we say, to the greatness of France. 4. If you stay long in Paris you must also open your purse. 5. You will discover many interesting things in this great city. 6. By chance Mr. Thomas found an excellent hotel. 7. Suppose that you are looking for a hotel in Paris? 8. Could you ask the way of a policeman? 9. Could you say, « Is it on this side of the street or the other side? 10. Do I go straight ahead or do I turn to the right or the left? » 11. When you had arrived [2] there, could you engage a room? 12. Have you a good room on the third floor? 13. How much does it cost a day? 14. Is it occupied at present by some one? 15. All this (**cela**) was easily arranged by Mr. Thomas. 16. And now they have all gone to ride a little while about the streets on a motor bus. 17. This (**ce**) is the first time they have seen Paris.

450. Conversation.

1. Que veut dire la douane?
2. Qu'est-ce que le douanier a demandé à monsieur Thomas?
3. Avait-il quelque chose à déclarer?
4. Lui a-t-il fallu ouvrir ses malles?
5. Où est-il allé après avoir quitté la douane?
6. Qu'est-ce que Charles a acheté?
7. Qu'est-ce que monsieur Thomas a fait le lendemain matin?
8. Qu'est-ce que le receveur a dit?
9. Par quoi monsieur et madame Thomas ont-ils été surpris?
10. Où ont-ils attendu que le temps s'éclaircît?
11. Comment sont-ils retournés à l'hôtel?
12. Qu'est-ce que Charles a dit quand il est descendu de l'autobus?

LESSON XLI

451. Present Indicative of *tenir*.

		Endings
je tiens [ʒə tjɛ̃]	I hold	**–s**
tu tiens [ty tjɛ̃]		**–s**
il tient [il tjɛ̃]		**–t**

[1] *It will open to you the eyes.*

[2] Past conditional.

nous tenons [nu tənɔ̃]	we hold	**–ons**
vous tenez [vu təne]		**–ez**
ils tiennent [il tjɛn]		**–ent**

For complete conjugation see **527.**

DRILL EXERCISE

452. 1. Show how the stem of **tenir** is like that of **acquérir** in the present tense. What is the reason?

2. Write the present indicative of **appartenir,** *to belong;* **entretenir,** *to hold, entertain;* **retenir,** *to get again, retain.*

3. Following the model of **tenir,** write the present indicative of **devenir,** *to become;* **revenir,** *to come back;* **subvenir,** *to assist.*

4. Observe that the future has the irregular form **tiendrai.** It uses the accented stem **tien–,** drops the **i** of the infinitive ending and inserts **d** between **n** and **r, ndr** being easier to utter than **nr.**

5. Write the future of **contenir,** *to contain;* **maintenir,** *to maintain;* and **soutenir,** *to sustain.*

6. Write the future of **venir,** *to come;* **se souvenir, se ressouvenir,** *to recollect, remember.*

7. Learn the past absolute of **tenir** and write the same tense of **venir; obtenir,** *to obtain;* **s'abstenir,** *to abstain;* **intervenir,** *to intervene;* **appartenir,** *to belong.*

8. The future of **faillir,** *to fail,* is **faudrai** *or* **faillirai.** Compare what is said above in (4) concerning the **d** in **tiendrai.** Write the complete tense.

9. The past participle and past absolute of **faillir** are like the corresponding forms of **finir.** Write the past absolute.

10. *Identify and translate:*

Il faudra; j'ai failli; ils avaient failli; nous faillîmes; ils faillirent; je viendrais; je venais; il devenait; nous reviendrions; ils se ressouvenaient; ils se souviendront; qu'il se ressouvienne; que vous reveniez; qu'ils subviennent; il devint; vous devîntes; qu'il vînt; qu'ils devinssent; il appartient; nous appartenions; ils s'abstiendront; ils s'abstiendraient; contenant; obtenant; maintenant; tenu; contenu; obtenu; je me suis abstenu; il s'était abstenu; je maintins; ils soutinrent; qu'il soutînt; que nous soutinssions; que je soutinsse; qu'il soutienne; j'appartiendrai; il obtiendrait; nous obtînmes.

11. *Translate into French:*

He will fail; they would fail; we failed; he failed; I have failed; he had failed; they failed; you did not fail; shall we fail? I abstain; you will abstain; they will belong; we would belong; he was belonging; they

were abstaining; we were sustaining; you have sustained; they had detained; we abstained; you belonged; he detained; I sustained; they did not sustain; you did not abstain; did you belong? did we sustain? have I obtained? would that he had abstained; would that he had not belonged; I have not belonged; we have not abstained; will you come? would you come? he has become; they are becoming; will they return?

453. Cardinal Numerals.

1. **un, une** [œ̃, yn]
2. **deux** [dø]
3. **trois** [trwɑ]
4. **quatre** [katr]
5. **cinq** [sɛ̃:k]
6. **six** [sis]
7. **sept** [sɛt]
8. **huit** [ɥit]
9. **neuf** [nœf]
10. **dix** [dis]
11. **onze** [õ:z]
12. **douze** [du:z]
13. **treize** [trɛ:z]
14. **quatorze** [katɔrz]
15. **quinze** [kɛ̃:z]
16. **seize** [sɛ:z]
17. **dix-sept** [dis sɛt]
18. **dix-huit** [diz ɥit]
19. **dix-neuf** [diz nœf]
20. **vingt** [vɛ̃]
21. **vingt et un** [vɛ̃t e œ̃]
22. **vingt-deux** [vɛ̃t dø]
23. **vingt-trois** [vɛ̃t trwɑ]
30. **trente** [trɑ̃:t]
31. **trente et un** [trɑ̃:t e œ̃]
32. **trente-deux** [trɑ̃:t dø]
40. **quarante** [karɑ̃:t]
41. **quarante et un** [karɑ̃:t e œ̃]
42. **quarante-deux** [karɑ̃:t dø]
50. **cinquante** [sɛ̃kɑ̃:t]
51. **cinquante et un** [sɛ̃kɑ̃:t e œ̃]
52. **cinquante-deux** [sɛ̃kɑ̃:t dø]
60. **soixante** [swasɑ̃:t]
61. **soixante et un** [swasɑ̃:t e œ̃]
62. **soixante-deux** [swasɑ̃:t dø]
70. **soixante-dix** [swasɑ̃:t dis]
71. **soixante et onze** [swasɑ̃:t e õ:z]
72. **soixante-douze** [swasɑ̃:t du:z]
80. **quatre-vingts** [katrə vɛ̃]
81. **quatre-vingt-un** [katrə vɛ̃ œ̃]
90. **quatre-vingt-dix** [katrə vɛ̃ dis]
91. **quatre-vingt-onze** [katrə vɛ̃ õ:z]
100. **cent** [sɑ̃]
101. **cent un** [sɑ̃ œ̃]
200. **deux cents** [dø sɑ̃]
201. **deux cent un** [dø sɑ̃ œ̃]
1000. **mille** [mil]
1001. **mille un** [mil œ̃]
2000. **deux mille** [dø mil]

1,000,000, **un million** [œ̃ miljõ]
2,000,000, **deux millions** [dø miljõ]
1,000,000,000, **un milliard** [œ̃ miljɑ:r]

NOTE 1. Elision and linking do not occur before **huit** or **onze**: **le huit**; **les huit maisons**; **le onze**; **les onze crayons** [lə ɥit; le ɥit mezõ; lə õ:z; le õz krejõ].

NOTE 2. **X** is pronounced **z** in **dix-huit, dix-neuf,** because the conjunction **et** was originally written between these numerals (**dix et huit, dix et neuf**). For the same reason the **t** of **vingt** is pronounced in **vingt-deux, vingt-trois, vingt-quatre,** etc. Observe that the **t** of **vingt** is silent in the numbers 80 to 99.

NOTE 3. **X** is pronounced **s** instead of **z** in **dix-sept** because of the **s** in **sept.**

NOTE 4. The final consonant of **cinq, six, sept, huit, neuf** is silent before an

initial consonant or aspirate **h** of a noun multiplied by them, but is pronounced in dates, before words beginning with vowels, or before a pause.

Cinq crayons [sɛ̃ krɛjɔ̃] **Le cinq septembre** [lə sɛ̃:k sɛptɑ̃:br]
Nous sommes cinq [nu sɔm sɛ̃:k] **Les cinq amis** [le sɛ̃:k ami]

NOTE 5. Except in dates or when used in ordinals, **vingt** and **cent** add **s** when they are preceded by a number which multiplies them and are not followed by another number: **quatre-vingts livres, trois cents livres.** But: **quatre-vingt-un livres, trois cent un livres, page trois cent, l'an huit cent.**

NOTE 6. Compound numerals under 100 are united by a hyphen except where **et** occurs. **Et** is used in 21, 31, 41, 51, 61, and 71.

NOTE 7. Observe that the nouns of number, **million** and **milliard,** are preceded by the indefinite article and followed by **de,** as follows.

Un million de francs, a million francs.
Un milliard de francs, a billion francs.

Compare **cent francs, mille francs.**

NOTE 8. Examples of multiplicatives: **une fois,** *once*; **deux fois,** *twice*; **quatre fois,** *four times,* etc.

Six fois huit font quarante-huit. Six times eight make forty-eight.

454. VOCABULARY

allée *f.* [ale] walk
ancien [ɑ̃sjɛ̃] old
s'approcher de [s aprɔʃe də] to go near, approach
autrefois [otrəfwa] formerly, once
bois *m.* [bwɑ] wood
connaître [kɔnɛ:tr] to know
couronner [kurɔne] to crown
couvrir [kuvri:r] to cover
date *f.* [dat] date
devenir [dəvni:r] to become
donc [dõ:k, dõ] accordingly
s'égarer [s egare] to lose one's way
forêt *f.* [fɔrɛ] forest
guide *m.* [gid] guide book, guide
herbe *f.* [ɛrb] grass
inférieur [ɛ̃ferjœ:r] lower
lac *m.* [lak] lake
large [larʒ] wide
nécessaire [nesesɛ:r] necessary
obtenir [ɔptəni:r] to obtain
œuvre *f.* [œ:vr] work
parc *m.* [park] park
prévenir [prevni:r] to inform beforehand
retour *m.* [rətu:r] return
supérieur [syperjœ:r] upper
trop [trɔ] too
vivement [vivmɑ̃] earnestly, cordially

à ce sujet [a sə syʒɛ] about it
avec impatience [avɛk ɛ̃pasjɑ̃:s] eagerly
avoir trente ans [avwa:r trɑ̃:t ɑ̃] to be thirty years old
bien entendu [bjɛ̃n ɑ̃tɑ̃dy] of course
en tout cas [ɑ̃ tu kɑ] at all events
il a failli s'égarer [il a faji s egare] he came near losing his way
il me tarde de les voir [il mə tard də le vwa:r] I long to see them
avoir dix mètres de largeur [avwa:r di mɛtrə də larʒœ:r] to be ten meters wide

musique militaire *f.* [myzik militɛːr] military band
ni . . . ni . . . ne [ni . . . ni . . . nə] neither . . . nor
sans faute [sɑ̃ foːt] without fail
tenir beaucoup à [tənirː boku a] to be eager, *or* anxious to
tomber dedans [tõbe dədɑ̃] to fall in

EXERCISES

455. 1. Monsieur Thomas tenait beaucoup à voir les parcs de Paris. 1. Après avoir obtenu tous les renseignements nécessaires sur les différents parcs de la ville, il est parti, accompagné de sa femme, de Marie et de Charles. 3. Ne connaissant pas la ville, ils ont failli s'égarer. 4. Mais la fin couronne l'œuvre. 5. Au bout de trente-cinq minutes ils sont arrivés au jardin du Luxembourg. 6. En y entrant, monsieur Thomas a rencontré monsieur Durand, un ancien ami qui habitait Paris depuis vingt et un ans et qu'il n'avait pas vu depuis vingt-cinq ans. 7. Il a présenté son ami à sa femme, à sa fille, et à son fils. 8. Puis tous les quatre se sont assis pour entendre la musique militaire. 9. « Est-ce que madame votre mère et monsieur votre père vont bien, » demanda monsieur Durand. 10. « Très bien, merci, » répondit monsieur Thomas. 11. « Ils sont très âgés, mais tous les deux sont en bonne santé. 12. Ma mère a quatre-vingts ans et mon père quatre-vingt-deux ans. 13. Je les ai déjà prévenus de la date de notre retour en Amérique et ils nous attendent avec impatience. 14. Bien entendu, il nous tarde aussi de les revoir. » 15. Après avoir passé une heure à causer et à entendre la musique, on s'est levé. 16. En partant, monsieur Durand a vivement prié son ami, sa femme et son fils de venir le voir. 17. Monsieur Thomas est retourné à son hôtel à six heures et demie. 18. Il va sans dire que lui, madame Thomas et Charles étaient enchantés d'avoir passé une après-midi si agréable.

456. 1. Mr. Thomas was anxious to see the parks for which Paris is famous. 2. He also wished to see many other things. 3. There are two parks in Paris which are very well known,[1] one of which is called the Jardin du Luxembourg, the other the Bois de Boulogne. 4. They contain beautiful walks and trees and flowers, and in the afternoon one can hear the military band in (**à**) the Jardin du Luxembourg. 5. The Bois de Boulogne contains two lakes, the upper, which is 100 metres wide and the lower, which is 60 metres wide. 6. One day I came near falling in because I had gone too near the water. 7. «Well,» Mr. Thomas said,[2] « we are going this afternoon to the Luxembourg Garden. 8. Be

[1] **Connu,** past participle of **connaître.**
[2] The subject follows the verb.

ready without fail to start at two o'clock.» 9. We will all be ready without fail. 10. In the garden Mr. Thomas met an old friend who had lived in Paris twenty-one years. 11. Is it you, Mr. Durand? 12. I am delighted to see you after twenty-five years. 13. How are you and all your family? 14. Allow me to introduce you to my wife and my daughter Mary and my son Charles. 15. We have just arrived from America. 16. Indeed, this is our second day in Paris and we are enjoying this beautiful park. 17. When they all returned to the hotel after having passed a most pleasant afternoon, Charles asked his father how many days they would stay in Paris. 18. «If you were here fifty days,» said Charles, «you could see fifty interesting things.»

457. Oral. 1. Mr. Thomas and his family have spent two days in Paris. 2. Mr. and Mrs. Thomas are accompanied by Charles and Mary. 3. Perhaps it is better to say, Charles and Mary are accompanied by Mr. and Mrs. Thomas. They have comfortable rooms on the third [1] floor in a hotel. 4. They are enjoying their stay in Paris and are not anxious to leave. 5. They have just gone to a restaurant for luncheon and are thinking what they can do this afternoon. 6. Mr. Thomas would like to visit the famous Jardin du Luxembourg. 7. He had seen it some years before when he was in Paris. 8. Neither Charles nor Mary nor Mrs. Thomas has [2] ever seen it. 9. But they have just been reading something about it in the guide book. 10. It contains trees and flowers and green grass and pleasant walks. 11. It is open every day in the year. 12. One could go there 365 days in the year. 13. They all thought it would be a pleasant walk. 14. Charles said, «I am anxious to see the Bois de Boulogne, also. 15. It was once a great forest and became a park in 1740. 16. At all events this is what (**c'est ce que**) I have just been reading in the guide book.» 17. Accordingly after paying the bill at the restaurant, they set out and spent a most pleasant afternoon. 18. It was six o'clock when they returned to the hotel. 19. They did not come near losing their way.

458. Conversation.

1. Qu'est-ce que monsieur Thomas voulait voir?
2. Par qui était-il accompagné?
3. Est-ce qu'il connaissait bien la ville?
4. S'est-il égaré?
5. Où est-il arrivé?
6. Qui a-t-il rencontré au jardin du Luxembourg?

[1] Render *third* by **deuxième.** In French houses the first (ground) floor is called **rez-de-chaussée,** the second, **premier étage.**

[2] Use plural verb.

7. Depuis quand monsieur Durand habitait-il Paris?
8. À qui monsieur Thomas l'a-t-il présenté?
9. Quel âge le père de monsieur Thomas a-t-il?
10. Quel âge sa mère a-t-elle?
11. Vont-ils bien?
12. À quelle heure monsieur Thomas est-il retourné à son hôtel?

LESSON XLII

459. Present Indicative of *conduire, écrire, plaire.*

		Endings
je conduis [ʒə kɔ̃dɥi]	I conduct	**–s**
tu conduis [ty kɔ̃dɥi]		**–s**
il conduit [il kɔ̃dɥi]		**–t**
nous conduisons [nu kɔ̃dɥizɔ̃]	we conduct	**–ons**
vous conduisez [vu kɔ̃dɥize]		**–ez**
ils conduisent [il kɔ̃dɥiːz]		**–ent**
j'écris [ʒ ekri]	I write	**–s**
tu écris [ty ekri]		**–s**
il écrit [il ekri]		**–t**
nous écrivons [nuz ekrivɔ̃]	we write	**–ons**
vous écrivez [vuz ekrive]		**–ez**
ils écrivent [ilz ekriːv]		**–ent**
je plais [ʒə plɛ]	I please	**–s**
tu plais [ty plɛ]		**–s**
il plaît [il plɛ]		**–t**
nous plaisons [nu plɛzɔ̃]	we please	**–ons**
vous plaisez [vu plɛze]		**–ez**
ils plaisent [il plɛːz]		**–ent**

DRILL EXERCISE

460. 1. For the complete conjugation, see Appendix **535, 543, 551.**

2. Note that in the plural all the stems have consonant endings. Why do they not occur in the singular?

3. Give the present indicative of **se conduire,** *to conduct oneself, to behave;* **produire,** *to produce;* **traduire,** *to tranlate.*

4. Give the present indicative of **décrire,** *to describe;* **inscrire,** *to inscribe;* **souscrire,** *to subscribe.*

5. Give the present indicative, of **complaire,** *to please;* **déplaire,** *to displease;* **se taire,** *to be silent.*

6. Which stem of **conduire, écrire** and **plaire** appears in the present participle?

7. Write the past descriptive and the present subjunctive of the following: **cuire,** *to cook;* **nuire,** *to injure;* **proscrire,** *to proscribe;* **transcrire,** *to transcribe;* **déplaire,** *to displease.*

8. In the past absolute of **conduire, écrire** and **plaire,** the personal endings are **–s, –s, –t, –mes, –tes, –rent.** What are the stems? How does the past absolute of **plaire** differ from the present with respect to the vowel of the stem?

9. Give the past absolute of **reduire,** *to reduce;* **induire,** *to induce;* **circonscrire,** *to circumscribe;* **récrire,** *to rewrite;* **complaire,** *to please;* **se taire,** *to be silent.*

10. Write the past subjunctive of the verbs given in 9.

11. What are the past participles of these verbs?

12. *Identify and translate:*

Traduisez; traduisons; j'ai traduit; j'écrirai; il souscrirait; ils déplairont; ils souscriraient; je tais; nous tairons; vous tairiez; cuisant; cuit; écrit; nui; plu; j'ai déplu; elle a cuit; je nuis; vous avez nui; nuisant; je traduisais; nous déplaisions; ils écrivaient; vous transcriviez; ils plaisaient; que je conduise; que nous ne nuisions pas; qu'ils ne déplaisent pas; que vous souscriviez; elle ne cuira pas; il ne nuira pas; ils ont déplu; ils ne plurent pas; nous complûmes; vous complûtes; qu'il plût; ils me déplurent; j'écrivis; ils décrivirent; vous conduisîtes; que je conduisisse; qu'il écrivît; que nous plussions; qu'ils déplussent; il avait souscrit; ils avaient décrit.

13. *Translate into French:*

He writes; you describe; they inscribe; we subscribe; you please; he has pleased; they will displease; we will keep silent; they will conduct; they would not injure; we conduct; he behaves well; he has behaved well; he will not behave well; they have not behaved well; let him not subscribe; let them keep silent; let us please; keep silent; behave; subscribe; pleased, pleasing; injuring; translating; cooking; conducting; translated; displeased; rewritten; I was translating; they were rewriting; you were producing; we were pleasing; he translated; you transcribed; he injured; they proscribed; we induced; did you translate? did they rewrite? did you subscribe? I have not subscribed; they had not written; we would not write; they will not transcribe; would that he had not written; would that they had behaved well; would that we had pleased; would that you had not injured.

461. Ordinal Numerals.

The ordinal numerals show the order in a series and, with the exception of **premier** and **second,** they are usually formed by adding

-ième to the last consonant of the corresponding cardinal: **trois, troisième; quatre, quatrième.**

Exceptions.

U is inserted after **q** in **cinquième.**

F is changed to **v** in **neuvième.**

1st	**premier** [prəmje]	9th	**neuvième** [nœvjɛm]
2nd	**second, deuxième** [səgɔ̃, døzjɛm]	10th	**dixième** [dizjɛm]
3rd	**troisième** [trwazjɛm]	11th	**onzième** [ɔ̃zjɛm]
4th	**quatrième** [katriɛm]	20th	**vingtième** [vɛ̃tjɛm]
5th	**cinquième** [sɛ̃kjɛm]	21st	**vingt et unième** [vɛ̃t e ynjɛm]
6th	**sixième** [sizjɛm]	22nd	**vingt-deuxième** [vɛ̃t døzjɛm]
7th	**septième** [sɛtjɛm]	31st	**trente et unième** [trɑ̃:t e ynjɛm]
8th	**huitième** [ɥitjɛm]	32nd	**trente-deuxième** [trɑ̃:t døzjɛm]

462. In compound numbers, **premier** and **second** [1] are replaced by **unième** and **deuxième: trente et unième, quarante-deuxième.**

463. Fractions. The numerator is a cardinal number and the denominator is an ordinal.

Un dixième, one-tenth.
Deux septièmes, two-sevenths.

NOTE. Observe that ⅓ is **un tiers,** ¼, **un quart,** and that *half,* as a noun, is **moitié,** while the corresponding adjective is **demi. La moitié de** + article equals *half the . . .* , while **un demi** + noun is *half a . . .* When standing before a noun, **demi** is joined by a hyphen and is invariable, but agrees when it follows:

La moitié de la journée, half of the day.
Une demi-heure, half an hour.
Une heure et demie, an hour and a half.

464. VOCABULARY

accorder [akɔrde] to give, allow
achever [aʃve] to complete, finish
affiche *f.* [afiʃ] notice, placard
appartenir [apartəni:r] to belong
arrivée *f.* [arive] arrival
conférence *f.* [kɔ̃ferɑ̃:s] lecture
consacrer [kɔ̃sakre] to devote
content [kɔ̃tɑ̃] contented, pleased
cours *m.* [ku:r] course
couramment [kuramɑ̃] fluently
donc [dɔ̃] therefore, so
études *pl. f.* [etyd] studies
expérience *f.* [ɛksperjɑ̃:s] experience

[1] Except in compound ordinals, **second** and **deuxième** are used almost interchangeably. **Second** is more usual in certain phrases, as **en second lieu,** *in the second place,* **de seconde main,** *at second hand.* The rule given by some grammarians that **deuxième** is preferred in referring to a series of more than two is not correct. Thus, in speaking of classes in school, one may say **la seconde classe,** though there are several classes.

fleuve *m.* [flœːv] river
fondateur *m.* [fɔ̃datœːr] founder
grand'mère [grɑ̃mɛːr] grandmother
s'inscrire [s ɛ̃skriːr] to register, enroll
liste *f.* [list] list
littérature *f.* [literatyːr] literature
millier *m.* [milje] thousand
officiel, officielle [ɔfisjɛl] official
offrir [ɔfriːr] (*p. p.* **offert**) to offer
parents *m. f.* [parɑ̃] relatives
philosophie *f.* [filɔzɔfi] philosophy
pardon *m.* [pardɔ̃] pardon
porter [pɔrte] to carry, contain
propre [prɔpr] own
rive *f.* [riːv] bank
science *f.* [sjɑ̃ːs] knowledge, science
seulement [sœlmɑ̃] only, merely
suivant [sɥivɑ̃] according to
suivre [sɥiːvr] to attend (*p. p.* **suivi** [sɥivi])
sujet *m.* [syʒɛ] subject
tourner [turne] to turn
se trouver [sə truve] to be
vestibule *m.* [vɛstibyl] vestibule, hall

s'amuser bien [s amyze bjɛ̃] to have a good time
en même temps [ɑ̃ mɛm tɑ̃] at the same time
faire des excursions [fɛːr dez ɛkskyrsjɔ̃] to go on excursions
Quartier latin *m.* [kartje latɛ̃] Latin Quarter
se faire immatriculer [sə fɛːr imatrikyle] to matriculate, enroll, register
se plaire à [sə plɛːr a] to be pleased with, like

EXERCISES

465. 1. Charles vient de répondre à une lettre qu'il a reçue de sa grand'mère en Amérique. 2. C'est la première fois qu'il lui écrit depuis son arrivée en France. 3. Il a commencé par décrire les plaisirs du voyage qu'il venait de faire. 4. Puis il a dit qu'il habitait au deuxième étage d'un grand hôtel et qu'il se plaisait beaucoup à Paris. 5. Après avoir fini la lettre, il est sorti. 6. Il voulait se faire immatriculer à l'Université de Paris ce jour-là parce que les cours de vacances devaient commencer le lendemain. 7. Ne sachant pas le nom de la rue qui conduit à la Sorbonne, il dit à un sergent de ville: « Pardon, monsieur, la Sorbonne, s'il vous plaît. » 8. Charles n'était à Paris que depuis le premier juin. 9. Mais il savait bien le français avant de quitter l'Amérique. 10. Il le parlait couramment et il comprenait tout ce qu'on lui disait.[1] 11. S'étant fait immatriculer, il a choisi les conférences qu'il allait suivre. 12. Dans le vestibule de l'université, il a trouvé des affiches qui portaient la liste des conférences et indiquaient les noms des professeurs. 13. Charles a décidé d'étudier la philosophie, l'histoire, et la littérature française. 14. Avant de rentrer, il est allé prendre des billets pour un concert. 15. On lui a offert deux places au dixième rang et trois au douzième. 16. Il a pris les trois places au douzième rang, parce qu'il voulait trois places ensemble. 17. Il est arrivé à l'hôtel à une heure et demie.

[1] Past descriptive of **dire**, *to say, tell.*

466. 1. The Sorbonne is the largest university in France and one of the oldest. 2. It is a university of the first rank, and has a large faculty (**corps de professeurs**), whose lectures are attended by more than twenty thousand students. 3. The second street to the left would take you to the Sorbonne, if you wished to matriculate or merely to see the buildings. 4. If you were a student, you would probably have some interesting experiences there. 5. A great many people would ask you, « How do you like the university? 6. Are you pleased to be always attending lectures? 7. How much of your time do you give to your courses — one (**la**) -half, or two [1] -thirds, or three [1] -fourths »? 8. When you wrote [2] letters to your relatives or friends in America, you could speak of all of these things. 9. One day Charles thought that he would like to matriculate at the Sorbonne for the vacation courses for foreigners. 10. He asked a policeman which street led to the university. 11. Pardon me, sir, could (**pourriez**) you tell me the street which leads to the Sorbonne? 12. Is it the first, second, or third one to the right? 13. No, sir, it is the third to the left. 14. When you reach [3] it turn to the right and go straight ahead and in five minutes you will be at the University. 15. In the vestibule, Charles saw a list of the lectures and courses which he wanted to attend and also the names of many famous professors. 16. But how could he attend lectures and at the same time go on excursions with his father and mother and his sister Mary? 17. How could he have a good time in Paris? 18. Was he not also too young to devote himself to such (**de telles**) studies as (**que**) philosophy, literature and history? 19. So Charles returned to the hotel.

467. Oral. 1. Charles was telling (**parler à**) his sister and his mother about the Sorbonne. 2. They were asking what part of the city it was in. 3. Is it on the right bank of the river? 3. Oh, no, it is not on the right bank but on the left bank. 4. It is in the Latin Quarter, and one of the streets which leads to it is called the Rue des Écoles. 5. The principal building according to the guidebook is 270 yards long and 110 wide. 6. It was completed in 1889. 7. What an enormous building! 8. Charles did not notice how high it was.[4] 9. If you were a student you would hear lectures there. 10. The Sorbonne takes its name from the founder, but it is also called the University of Paris. 11. Are there cities in America which have their own universities? 12. I should like to be a student at the University of Paris. 13. But are you old enough

[1] Use the definite article before these numerals.
[2] Use conditional.
[3] Future.
[4] *How it was high.*

to study history and philosophy and science? 14. Perhaps not now, but I shall be [1] in [2] two or three years.

468. Conversation.

1. À qui Charles a-t-il écrit une lettre?
2. Où demeure sa grand'mère?
3. Comment a-t-il commencé la lettre?
4. Quel étage habitait-il?
5. Se plaisait-il à Paris?
6. Quand les cours de vacances devaient-ils commencer?
7. Qu'est-ce que Charles a demandé à un sergent de ville?
8. Est-ce que Charles savait bien le français?
9. Depuis quand était-il à Paris?
10. Où a-t-il trouvé la liste des conférences qu'il allait suivre?
11. Quels cours a-t-il décidé de suivre?
12. À quelle heure est-il arrivé à l'hôtel?

LESSON XLIII

469. Present Indicative of *boire, dire, faire.*

		Endings
je bois [ʒə bwa]	I drink	**–s**
tu bois [ty bwa]		**–s**
il boit [il bwa]		**–t**
nous buvons [nu byvɔ̃]	we drink	**–ons**
vous buvez [vu byve]		**–ez**
ils boivent [il bwaːv]		**–ent**
je dis [ʒə di]	I say	**–s**
tu dis [ty di]		**–s**
il dit [il di]		**–t**
nous disons [nu dizɔ̃]	we say	**–ons**
vous dites [vu dit]		**–es**
ils disent [il diːz]		**–ent**
je fais [ʒə fɛ]	I make, I do	**–s**
tu fais [ty fɛ]		**–s**
il fait [il fɛ]		**–t**
nous faisons [nu fəzɔ̃]	we make, we do	**–ons**
vous faites [vu fɛt]		**–es**
ils font [il fɔ̃]		**–nt**

[1] Insert **le** before the verb. [2] **Dans.**

DRILL EXERCISE

470. 1. For complete conjugation, see Appendix **531, 542, 545.**

2. What is the stem of **boire** in the singular? In the plural? Which is the accented stem? Why is the stem in the third person plural the same as that in the singular?

3. What stems in the present indicative of these verbs have consonant endings? Why do stems in the singular have vowel endings?

4. Which of the personal endings are different from those of the regular verbs?

5. Give the present participles of the following: **reboire,** *to drink again;* **interdire,** *to interdict;* **prédire,** *to predict;* **méfaire,** *to do evil;* **satisfaire,** *to satisfy.*

6. Write the past descriptive and the present subjunctive of **boire, dire, faire.** In which verb are the two tenses most alike? Where else in **boire** do you find the stem of the present subjunctive?

7. What is the stem of the future of **faire?** In what other tense is it found?

8. Give the future and conditional of **méfaire, prédire.**

9. Write the past absolute of the same words.

10. Using the verbs in 5, show the similarity in form between the past absolute and the past subjunctive.

11. Give the present perfect of the words in 8.

12. *Identify and translate:*

Je boirai; nous reboirons; il dira; je ferai; vous ferez; vous direz; je ferais; ils feraient; vous boiriez; nous dirions; ils interdiraient; je prédis; il méfait; vous rebuvez; ils satisfont; vous satisfaites; faisant; méfaisant; rebuvant; interdisant; prédisant; prédit; rebu; interdit; satisfait; méfait; je faisais; il dirait; nous buvions; vous rebuviez; ils satisfont; vous satisfaites; faisant; méfaisant; il satisfaisait; nous ne méfaisions pas; ils ne rebuvaient pas; vous ne prédisiez pas; est-ce que vous avez prédit? Est-ce qu'ils avaient méfait? Est-ce que nous avions rebu? Je bus; je buvais; j'ai bu; que je busse; il dit; il disait; il a dit; qu'il disse; nous fîmes; nous faisions; nous avons fait; que nous fissions; il méfit; qu'il ne méfît pas; vous satisfîtes; que vous satisfissiez; nous rebûmes; que nous rebussions; il rebut; qu'il rebût; vous prédîtes; que vous prédissiez; il prédit; qu'il ne prédît pas; rebuvons; satisfaisons; prédisons; rebuvez; satisfaites; prédites.

13. *Translate into French:*

Predicting; interdicting; doing; doing evil; drinking; predicted; interdicted; done; I will not predict; will they drink? will he do evil?

they would not do evil; they will satisfy us; he would predict; would they predict? we were saying; what were you doing? you are predicting; what were they doing; I was drinking; he was saying; you were predicting; what were they saying; were they drinking? Were they doing evil? Were you predicting? I have predicted; he has not done evil; they have not drunk; we had not done evil; you had not predicted; we drank again; we predicted; he drank again; he predicted; he is satisfied; let us drink; let us be satisfied; let us predict.

471. Faire with Infinitive. **Faire,** *to make, cause, have,* with infinitive, offers some difficulty. Compare the English:

1. The teacher makes Charles study.
2. The teacher makes him study.
3. The teacher makes Charles study his lessons.
4. The teacher makes him study his lessons.

In these sentences *Charles* and *him* are the subjects of the infinitive *study*, the infinitive phrase as a whole being the direct object of *makes*.

In French:

5. Le maître fait étudier Charles.
6. Le maître le fait étudier.
7. Le maître fait étudier ses leçons à Charles.
8. Le maître lui fait étudier ses leçons.

It is to be noted that in French the infinitive follows **faire** immediately while in English it is preceded by its subject. If this subject is a noun (as *Charles* in 1) and the infinitive has no direct object, it follows the infinitive. If the subject of the infinitive is a personal pronoun (as *him* in 2), it is placed in French before the main verb, taking the form of the direct object (as **le** in 6). If the infinitive has a direct object and the subject is a noun (as *Charles* in 3), the latter follows the subject with the preposition **à**, while, if the subject is a pronoun, it precedes the main verb, taking the form of the indirect object (as **lui** in 8).

NOTE. **Lui** and **à Charles** in the foregoing examples are not grammatically indirect objects but have taken this form in the development of the construction.

472. *Translate into French:*

1. I will have him cut my hair (**cheveux**).
2. I will have the barber (**coiffeur**) cut my hair.
3. He had him write every day.
4. They will have us write every day.

5. We will have them write letters.
6. They will have him write a letter.

473. Dates. In dates, cardinal numerals are used except for *first*.

Le premier juin, the first of June **Le quatre juin,** the fourth of June

474. Titles. In titles of sovereigns, cardinals are also used, except for *first*.

Henri premier, Henry the first **Henri quatre,** Henry the fourth

NOTE. Observe the omission of the article.

475. VOCABULARY

affranchissement *m.* [afrɑ̃ʃismɑ̃] freedom
anniversaire *m.* [aniverseːr] anniversary
célébration *f.* [selebrɑsjɔ̃] celebration
célébrer [selebre] to celebrate
chroniqueur *m.* [krɔnikœːr] chronicler
cortège *m.* [kɔrteːʒ] procession, parade
dès [dɛ] from, since, as early as
détruire [detrɥiːr] to destroy
détenir [detniːr] to confine in prison
détention *f.* [detɑ̃sjɔ̃] confinement
distingué [distɛ̃ge] distinguished
émancipation *f.* [emɑ̃sipɑsjɔ̃] liberation
emprisonner [ɑ̃prizɔne] to imprison
fête *f.* [fɛːt] holiday
foule *f.* [ful] crowd
fréquemment [frekamɑ̃] frequently
idée *f.* [ide] idea
lieu *m.* [ljø] place
mentionner [mɑ̃sjɔne] to mention
mouvement *m.* [muvmɑ̃] movement
obliger à [ɔbliʒe a] to make, compel
ordinaire [ɔrdineːr] usual, regular
origine *f.* [ɔriʒin] origin
partout [partu] everywhere
philosophe *m.* [filɔzɔf] philosopher
pourboire *m.* [purbwaːr] tip, gratuity
piéton *m.* [pjetɔ̃] pedestrian
plein de [plɛ̃] full, crowded
prise *f.* [priːz] taking, capture
prison *f.* [prizɔ̃] prison
prisonnier *m.* [prizɔnje] prisoner
publiciste *m.* [pyblisist] publicist, political writer
recevoir [rəsəvwaːr] to receive (past absolute, **je reçus**)
règne *m.* [rɛɲ] reign
réprimer [reprime] to repress
réputation *f.* [repytɑsjɔ̃] reputation
se retirer [sə rətire] to retire, withdraw
révolution *f.* [revɔlysjɔ̃] revolution
savourer [savure] to relish, enjoy
séjourner [seʒurne] to stay
torture *f.* [tɔrtyːr] torture, punishment
traverser [traverse] to pass through
trottoir *m.* [trɔtwaːr] sidewalk
vers [vɛr] toward

à ce moment [a sə mɔmɑ̃] just then
de plus [də ply] besides
peu importe [pø ɛ̃pɔrt] it matters little
servir à [sɛrviːr a] to serve for, be used for
servir de [sɛrviːr də] to serve as
Vive la France! [viːv la frɑ̃ːs] long live France!

EXERCISES

476. 1. « C'est aujourd'hui le 14 juillet, » dit monsieur Thomas. 2. « Faisons une promenade en automobile pour voir comment on célèbre

la fête nationale en France. 3. « Pourquoi la fête nationale tombe-t-elle le 14 juillet ? » demanda Charles. 4. « Parce que le peuple de Paris a détruit la Bastille dans la journée du 14 juillet, 1789. » 5. « À quoi servait la Bastille » ? 6. « Elle servait de prison d'état. 7. Dès le règne de Charles VI elle est fréquemment mentionnée par les chroniqueurs, mais c'est sous Louis XI qu'elle commença d'acquérir sa réputation de lieu de torture. 8. Sous le règne de Louis XIV elle reçut un grand nombre de prisonniers et pendant tout le XVIIIème siècle, elle fut employée à réprimer le mouvement vers les idées d'émancipation et d'affranchissement. 9. C'est l'époque où les philosophes et les publicistes y sont détenus en grand nombre. 10. Depuis l'année 1880, l'anniversaire de la prise de la Bastille est devenu la fête nationale. » 11. Charles a remercié son père de lui avoir expliqué l'origine de la fête nationale française. 12. Monsieur Thomas a fait venir un taxi et puis il est parti accompagné de sa femme, de sa fille, et de son fils. 13. Ils ont trouvé une foule dans les rues. 14. On s'amusait bien partout. 15. Après avoir passé une journée très agréable, monsieur Thomas est rentré chez lui. 16. Étant descendu du taxi, il a donné au chauffeur ce qu'il lui devait, et de plus un pourboire.

477. 1. One morning Charles and Mary and their father and mother, Mr. and Mrs. Thomas, were at breakfast in the hotel where they were staying. 2. They were drinking their coffee or chocolate and enjoying the French rolls which were very good. 3. Just then someone asked, « What shall we do today ? » 4. Charles said, « You have forgotten what day of the month it is. 5. Today is the 14th of July. 6. If you were in the United States the fourth of July, would you ask what to do [1] today? 7. In France the 14th of July is the national holiday when (**où**) everyone celebrates the taking of the Bastille. » 8. Mary said: « I thought the Bastille was a prison. » 9. « You are right, » said Mr. Thomas, « but the Bastille has not always been used as a prison. 10. It was [2] only under Louis XIII that it became a regular place of confinement. 11. Under Louis XIV, Louis XV, and Louis XVI, the government had many men of distinction imprisoned there. 12. The Bastille was destroyed on Monday, July 14th, 1789, during the French Revolution. » 13. Charles said, « I am wondering whether (**si**) this celebration will be finer than our celebration on the 4th of July. » 14. « It is time to get ready, » said Mrs. Thomas, « if we do not wish to miss the parade. »

478. Oral. 1. The 14th of July is a holiday. 2. It matters not whether it falls (on) Monday or Tuesday or Wednesday or Thursday or

[1] **ce qu'il faudrait faire.** [2] French idiom requires the present.

Friday or Saturday. 3. It is a holiday everywhere in France. 4. The people do not work (on) the national holiday [1] but have a good time. 5. This year it fell on Thursday. 6. In Paris the streets were crowded with men, women, and children. 7. When the procession arrived, the police made all the pedestrians retire to the sidewalks. 8. It was a splendid procession. 9. It passed through the Place de la Bastille where the Bastille once was. 10. The weather was fine. 11. Everybody enjoyed the spectacle greatly and Charles shouted, « Long live France! » 12. When it was over, they all returned to the hotel.

479. Conversation.

1. Quel jour du mois sommes-nous aujourd'hui?
2. Pourquoi la fête nationale française tombe-t-elle le 14 juillet?
3. À quoi servait la Bastille?
4. Quand a-t-elle commencé d'acquérir sa réputation de lieu de torture?
5. Depuis quelle année l'anniversaire de la prise de la Bastille est-il devenu la fête nationale?
6. Comment célèbre-t-on la fête nationale en France?
7. Quel jour la fête nationale américaine tombe-t-elle?
8. Comment monsieur Thomas est-il rentré chez lui?
9. Avait-il passé une journée agréable?
10. Qu'est-ce qu'il a donné au chauffeur?
11. Avez-vous jamais été en France le 14 juillet?
12. Qui était Louis XIV?

LESSON XLIV

480. Present Indicative of *connaître, coudre, vivre.*

		Endings
je connais [ʒə kɔnɛ]	I know	**–s**
tu connais [ty kɔnɛ]		**–s**
il connaît [il kɔnɛ]		**–t**
nous connaissons [nu kɔnɛsɔ̃]	we know	**–ons**
vous connaissez [vu kɔnɛse]		**–ez**
ils connaissent [il kɔnɛs]		**–ent**
je couds [ʒə ku]	I sew	**–s**
tu couds [ty ku]		**–s**
il coud [il ku]		**—**

[1] *The day of the national holiday.*

nous cousons [nu kuzɔ̃]	we sew	**–ons**
vous cousez [vu kuze]		**–ez**
ils cousent [il kuːz]		**–ent**
je vis [ʒə vi]	I live	**–s**
tu vis [ty vi]		**–s**
il vit [il vi]		**–t**
nous vivons [nu vivɔ̃]	we live	**–ons**
vous vivez [vu vive]		**–ez**
ils vivent [il viːv]		**–ent**

DRILL EXERCISE

481. 1. For complete conjugation, see Appendix **537, 538, 560.**

2. Where does the full stem of **vivre** occur? Why is the **v** lost in the singular?

3. Give the present indicative of **revivre,** *to revive,* and **survivre,** *to survive.*

4. What change takes place in the stem of **coudre** in the plural? Why is there no personal ending in the third person singular?

5. The stem of **connaître** in the singular is **connais–.** Why is there no personal ending in the first and second persons singular? What does the circumflex in the third person singular indicate? Does this explain the **ss–** in the plural?

6. Show that the future of **connaître, coudre,** and **vivre** is regular.

7. Give the conditional of **paraître,** *to appear,* **recoudre,** *to sew again,* and **revivre,** *to revive.*

8. Give the present participle and the present subjunctive of the verbs in **7.**

9. Write the stem and the personal endings of **connaître, coudre,** and **vivre** in the past absolute.

10. Write the past absolute of the following:
méconnaître, *not to know;* **reconnaître,** *to recognize;* **disparaître,** *to disappear;* **découdre,** *to rip;* **naître,** *to be born;* **survivre,** *to survive.*

11. Give the past subjunctive of the verbs in 10.

12. Make a list of the verbs mentioned in this exercise and give the past participle of each.

13. *Identify and translate:*

Je reconnaîtrai; il méconnaîtrait; ils disparaîtront; ils disparaîtraient; méconnaissant; disparaissant; reconnaissant; naissant; cousant; vivant; survivant; vous disparaissiez; nous reconnaissions; ils méconnaissaient; elle cousait; elle décousait; nous vivions; ils survivaient; elle coudra; elles coudront; il survivra; ils survivraient; connaissons;

vivons; survivons; reconnaissez; disparaissez; cousons; décousez; connu; reconnu; vécu; cousu; décousu; elle a décousu; vous avez connu; ils ont vécu; nous avons reconnu; que je reconnaisse; que nous vivions; qu'ils cousent; je connus; il reconnut; il naquit; il vécut; nous survécûmes; ils survécurent; nous cousîmes; vous décousîtes; nous méconnûmes; ils disparurent; vous disparûtes; il disparut; qu'il disparût; que nous disparussions; nous disparûmes; il vécut; qu'il vécût; vous survécûtes; que vous survécussiez; il avait reconnu; nous avions vécu.

14. *Translate into French:*

Let us survive; let us recognize; let us sew; survive; live; recognize; disappear; sew; surviving; recognizing; disappearing; sewing; ripping; reviving; living; born; recognized; disappeared; known; sewn; ripped; I will survive; we will disappear; you would revive; they would sew; they disappeared; they survived; we revived; we were born; you were sewing; we were disappearing; I did not disappear; Did you disappear? Did he not recognize you? Will they not survive? He has not revived; they have not recognized him; I have lived; I have sewn; I have known; I knew; she sewed; we survived; he survived; would that he had survived; would that they had known; they did not know; would that you had recognized them.

482. Doubt. A **que** clause depending on **douter,** *to doubt,* or **il est douteux,** *it is doubtful,* takes the subjunctive.[1]

Je doute qu'il ait assez d'argent. I doubt that he has enough money.

Doutez-vous qu'il ne soit honnête? Do you doubt that he is honest?

Il ne doute pas que vous ne réussissiez. He does not doubt that you will succeed.

Il n'est pas douteux que nous ne partions demain. There is no doubt we shall leave tomorrow.

483. Possibility. A **que** clause depending on **il se peut,** *it is possible,* takes the subjunctive (see **423**).

Il se peut que je le fasse. It is possible that I will do it.

484. Implied Doubt or Possibility. A **que** clause takes the subjunctive when it depends on a negative or interrogative verb or phrase which implies that the statement of the dependent clause is doubtful, or merely possible in the mind of the speaker. Verbs fre-

[1] After verbs and expressions of doubting, when used interrogatively or negatively, a redundant **ne** occurs.

quently used in this construction are those of seeing, thinking, knowing, saying, and equivalent phrases.

Je n'ai pas remarqué qu'il soit paresseux. I did not notice that he is lazy (*he may be*).

Je ne dirai pas que je sois son ami. I will not say that I am his friend (*it is possible that I am*).

Je ne savais pas qu'on pût faire cela. I did not know that one could do it (*it is possible they could*).

Pensez-vous qu'elle soit malade? Do you think that she is ill? (*she may be*)

NOTE 1. This subjunctive may be due to the analogy of the subjunctive with **douter** and **il se peut.** A negative verb in the main clause or one implying a negative is not a reason for the subjunctive, unless it gives rise to the idea of doubt or possibility in the subordinate clause, which is properly expressed by the subjunctive.

NOTE 2. When the governing clause (though negative or interrogative) does not imply that the statement of the dependent clause is doubtful or merely possible, the indicative is the rule.

Je ne dis pas qu'il a tort, mais j'en suis persuadé. I do not say that he is wrong, but I am convinced of it.

Avez-vous remarqué qu'il est triste? Have you noticed that he is sad? (*He is sad; have you noticed it?*)

485. *Translate into French:*

1. I do not think that he is at home.
2. I do not believe that he will succeed (**réussir**).
3. We are not sure that he will come.
4. It is not probable that he understood (**comprendre**) me.
5. I did not say that he was wrong.
6. Do you think that he has enough money?

486. VOCABULARY

attirer [atire] to draw, attract
baisser [bɛse] to let down, lower
bourgeois *m.* [burʒwa] citizen of the middle class
buffet *m.* [byfɛ] refreshment room
comédie *f.* [kɔmedi] comedy, theater
considérer [kõsidere] to consider
coup *m.* [ku] stroke
culte *m.* [kylt] devotion (to), cultivation (of)
dater [date] to date, date from
distinctement [distɛ̃ktəmã] distinctly
écrivain *m., f.* [ekrivɛ̃] writer
entr'acte *m.* [ãtrakt] intermission
entretenir [ãtrətniːr] to foster, keep up, promote
fonder [fõde] to establish, found
fort [fɔːr] very
foyer *m.* [fwaje] lobby
galerie *f.* [galri] gallery
généralement [ʒeneralmã] generally
gentilhomme *m.* [ʒãtijɔm] nobleman
indiquer [ɛ̃dike] to indicate
institution *f.* [ɛ̃stitysjõ] institution

maître *m.* [mɛtr] master
se lever [sə lɔve] to rise
occasion *f.* [ɔkɔzjɔ̃] opportunity
originairement [ɔrizinɛrmɑ̃] originally
parmi [parmi] among
parisien, parisienne [parizjɛ̃, parizjɛn] Parisian
poète *m.* [pɔɛt] poet
preuve *f.* [prœv] proof
représentation *f.* [rɛprezɑ̃tɔsjɔ̃] performance
signe *m.* [siɲ] sign, signal
talent *m.* [talɑ̃] talent, ability
traditionnel [tradisjɔnɛl] traditional
tranquillement [trɑ̃kilmɑ̃] quietly
veille *f.* [vɛj] evening before
volontiers [vɔlɔ̃tje] with pleasure, gladly

à l'égard de [a l egaɾ də] about
au sujet de [o syʒɛ də] about
à juste titre [a ʒyst tiɾ] deservedly, justly
avec éclat [avɛk ekla] brilliantly
pendant les entr'actes [pɑ̃dɑ̃ lɛz ɑ̃trakt] between the acts
lever du rideau *m.* [lɔve dy ridɔ] rising of the curtain
père et mère [pɛɾ e mɛɾ] parents
profiter de l'occasion de [profite də l ɔkɔzjɔ̃] to take advantage of the opportunity to
favorable [favɔrabl] favorable
plus . . . plus [ply . . . ply] the more . . . the more

EXERCISES

427. 1. Madame Thomas se passionne pour le théâtre. 2. Elle y va très souvent pendant son séjour à Paris. 3. Un matin elle dit à son mari, « Allons à la Comédie-Française ce soir. 4. On va donner *Le Bourgeois Gentilhomme* aujourd'hui et je tiens beaucoup à le voir. » 5. « Très volontiers, » répondit monsieur Thomas. 6. « Les pièces classiques sont fort intéressantes. » 7. Charles est allé au bureau de location où il a pris quatre places de première galerie. 8. Pendant le dîner il a raconté à son père et à sa mère ce que son professeur de littérature avait dit au sujet de la Comédie-Française. 9. Le Théâtre-Français, qu'on appelle aussi la Maison de Molière, date de 1680. 10. C'est le premier théâtre de France. 11. Il est considéré à juste titre comme une institution nationale. 12. Il entretient le culte des œuvres des maîtres de la scène française et il attire à lui tous les écrivains qui ont donné des preuves de talent. 13. Monsieur Thomas, sa femme, sa fille et son fils sont entrés dans la salle de spectacle quelques minutes avant le lever du rideau. 14. Bientôt après leur arrivée ils ont entendu les trois coups traditionnels, signe qu'on allait commencer la pièce. 15. Ils ont bien compris les acteurs qui ont tous parlé très distinctement. 16. Pendant les entr'actes ils sont allés au foyer et au buffet où ils ont vu quelques Américains et quelques Américaines qu'ils connaissaient. 17. Comme les théâtres parisiens finissent

généralement très tard, ils sont rentrés chez eux à une heure du matin. 18. Pendant qu'ils prenaient leur petit déjeuner le lendemain matin, ils parlaient tranquillement de la pièce qu'ils avaient vue la veille.

488. 1. One evening while they were in Paris, Charles and Mary went with their parents to the Comédie-Française. 2. They already knew something about this interesting theatre. 3. It is sometimes called the House of Molière because it was originally established by this poet, who lived in the (**au**) seventeenth century. 4. It was founded in 1680; it was the first theatre in France and became the most important, and is now regarded as a national institution. 5. That evening they gave the *Le Bourgeois Gentilhomme*, a comedy of Molière, which was brilliantly presented. 6. The actors spoke so distinctly that everyone could understand them easily. 7. After the three traditional strokes of the French stage, which indicate that the play is going to begin, the curtain went up slowly. 8. Between acts they met some Americans in the lobby whom they knew and who were also enjoying the play. 9. Many Americans, when they are in Paris, take the opportunity to go to the Comédie-Française. 10. (The) more one knows (of) it (the) more interesting it is.

489. Oral. 1. Charles bought four tickets for the first gallery. 2. The seats were excellent. 3. One could hear distinctly what the actors were saying. 4. When the curtain had gone up the play began. 5. Mr. Thomas had bought a program of the play which contained a cast of the characters. 6. Thus they knew what rôles the different actors were playing. 7. The actors at the Comédie-Française are among the best in the world. 8. This evening they acted their rôles most brilliantly.[1] 9. The play, as every one knows,[2] is divided into five acts. 10. Between acts, Mr. Thomas met some American friends in (**à**) the lobby, whom he had known for a long time. 11. One lets down the curtain at the end of each act. 12. When it is lowered at the end of the last act, the play is finished. 13. At this performance the actors were frequently applauded.

490. Conversation.

1. Madame Thomas va-t-elle souvent au théâtre?
2. Que dit-elle à son mari?
3. Quelle pièce va-t-on donner à la Comédie-Française?
4. Qui a écrit le Bourgeois Gentilhomme?
5. Où Charles est-il allé prendre des billets?
6. De quelle année le Théâtre-Français date-t-il?
7. Pourquoi est-il considéré comme une institution nationale?

[1] **Avec beaucoup d'éclat.** [2] *Insert* **le** *before* **sait.**

8. Expliquez les trois coups traditionnels.
9. Monsieur Thomas et sa famille ont-ils bien compris les acteurs?
10. Où sont-ils allés pendant les entr'actes?
11. À quelle heure sont-ils rentrés chez eux?
12. De quoi ont-ils parlé le lendemain matin?

LESSON XLV

491. Present Indicative of *craindre, mettre, vaincre.*

		Endings
je crains [ʒə krɛ̃]	I fear	**–s**
tu crains [ty krɛ̃]		**–s**
il craint [il krɛ̃]		**–t**
nous craignons [nu krɛɲõ]	we fear	**–ons**
vous craignez [vu krɛɲe]		**–ez**
ils craignent [il krɛɲ]		**–ent**
je mets [ʒə mɛ]	I place	**–s**
tu mets [ty mɛ]		**–s**
il met [il mɛ]		**–t**
nous mettons [nu mɛtõ]	we place	**–ons**
vous mettez [vu mɛte]		**–ez**
ils mettent [il mɛt]		**–ent**
je vaincs [ʒə vɛ̃]	I conquer	**–s**
tu vaincs [ty vɛ̃]		**–s**
il vainc [il vɛ̃]		**—**
nous vainquons [nu vɛ̃kõ]	we conquer	**–ons**
vous vainquez [vu vɛ̃ke]		**–ez**
ils vainquent [il vɛ̃:k]		**–ent**

DRILL EXERCISE

492. 1. For complete conjugations, see Appendix **539, 548, 559.**

2. In the stem **craind–** why is **d** dropped in the singular of the present indicative? What stem occurs in the plural?

3. Why is there no personal ending in the third person singular of **mettre?**

4. In the present indicative of **vaincre** what does the **c** of the stem become before personal endings beginning with a vowel?

5. From the model of **craindre** write the present indicative of **plaindre,** *to pity;* **peindre,** *to paint;* **joindre,** *to join.*

6. Write the present indicative of **se mettre,** *to begin;* **admettre,** *to admit;* and **convaincre,** *to convince.*

7. What stems of **craindre** and **vaincre** occur respectively in the present participle?

8. Write the present participle of **atteindre,** *to attain;* **éteindre,** *to extinguish;* **oindre,** *to anoint.*

9. Give the past descriptive and the present subjunctive of the verbs in 8.

10. Write the personal endings of the past absolute of **craindre, mettre,** and **vaincre.** What are the stems? Where does the circumflex occur? What does it signify?

11. Write the past absolute of **se plaindre,** *to complain;* **ceindre,** *to gird on;* and **convaincre,** *to convince.*

12. What is the past subjunctive of the verbs in **11**?

13. Give the past participle of the following: **craindre, oindre, ceindre.**

14. *Identify and translate:*

Plaignant; atteignant; oignant; plaint; atteint; oint; j'ai plaint: tu avais atteint; vous avez oint; il a peint; je peins; il atteint; nous plaignons; ils oignent; il craignait; je peignais; vous atteigniez; nous peindrons; vous peindriez; ils se plaindraient; je craignis; il atteignit; nous nous plaignîmes; ils oignirent; vous atteignîtes; il peignit; qu'il plaignît; qu'il atteignît; qu'il éteignît; que nous plaignissions; mettant; mis; je mettais; je mis; je mettrai; il admettra; ils se mettraient; je me mettais; il s'est mis; ils se sont mis; il admit; nous admîmes; que nous admissions; vous admîtes; que vous admissiez; je vainquais; il convaincra; nous convaincrions; vous convainquez; que nous convainquissions; il convainquit; qu'il convainquît; ils convainquirent; qu'ils convainquissent; j'ai convaincu; il avait convaincu; nous avions convaincu; ils ont convaincu.

15. *Translate into French:*

He complains; he extinguishes; he anoints; we pity; we paint; we join; you will paint; I would pity; they would complain; we would extinguish; you would attain; complaining; pitying; painting; extinguishing; attaining; attained; painted; extinguished; I have painted; they have complained; they have pitied; we were complaining; you were pitying; I have complained; you pitied; they attained; we extinguished; would that he had complained; would that we had conquered; would that they had convinced; he conquered; I convinced; we convinced; they conquered; conquering; he was convincing; they were convincing; they will convince; we would convince; I will conquer; I came; I saw; I conquered; complain; pity; join; extinguished; con-

quer; convince; place; I will place; he will admit; they would admit; they will admit; placing; admitting; placed; admitted; I was admitting; they were placing; we admitted, you admitted; he admitted; would that he had admitted.

493. Oui and Si.

1. English *yes* used to express assent is rendered by **oui.**

Êtes-vous allé au théâtre hier soir? Oui, monsieur. Did you go to the theatre last night? Yes, sir.

Le train part à deux heures, n'est-ce pas? Oui, monsieur. The train leaves at two o'clock, does it not? Yes, sir.

2. **Si** is used to correct a negative statement or question.

Jean n'est pas ici. Si, monsieur, il est ici. John is not here. Yes, sir, he is here.

Vous n'êtes pas allé à l'école aujourd'hui? Si, monsieur, j'y suis allé. You didn't go to school today? Yes, sir, I went.

3. **Que** precedes **oui, si,** and **non,** after verbs of thinking, saying, and believing, and occurs without a verb in exclamations.

Je pense que oui. I think so.

Il croit que non. He thinks not.

Il dit que si. He says yes.

Oh, que si! Oh, yes!

494. Non is used as negative:

1. In naming the negative as opposed to **oui.**

Répondez par oui ou par non. Answer *yes* or *no.*

2. In replacing a single word or expression.

Malice ou non, le mal est fait. Malice or not, the evil is done.

3. In replacing a verb or clause.

Si de tous les hommes les uns mouraient, les autres non. If of all men, some died, and others did not.

4. With phrases or in rejecting a previous suggestion.

Il vécut non sans gloire. He lived not without glory.

Non, vraiment, je ne le ferai pas. No, certainly, I will not do it.

495. English *how* is rendered in French in various ways.

Comment allez-vous? How do you do?

Elle nous raconta de quelle manière la chose s'était passée. She told us how it happened.

Combien y a-t-il d'ici? How far is it from here?

Vous ne savez pas combien j'aime la France. You don't know how I like France.

Que la vertu est aimable! How amiable is virtue!

Quel âge Marie a-t-elle? How old is Mary?
Depuis quand êtes-vous ici? How long have you been here?
Comme il est changé! How he is changed!

496. VOCABULARY

accident *m.* [aksidã] accident
accomplir [akõpli:r] to achieve
aéroplane *m.* [aerɔplan] aeroplane
courageux [1] [kuraʒø] courageous
dangereux [dãʒrø] dangerous
environs *m. pl.* [ãvirõ] suburbs
européen [œrɔpeẽ] European
frugal [frygal] frugal
se hasarder [sə azarde] to take risk
'hasardeux [azardø] hazardous
industrieux [ẽdystriø] industrious
liberté *f.* [liberte] liberty
merveilleux [mɛrvɛjø] wonderful
se mettre à [sə mɛtr a] to begin
musée *m.* [myze] museum
port *m.* [pɔ:r] harbor
profiter [prɔfite] to profit
ravissant [ravisã] delightful
répliquer [replike] to reply, answer
spécialement [spesjalmã] especially
statue *f.* [staty] statue
se terminer [sə tɛrmine] to end, terminate
traversée *f.* [traverse] voyage

en cas que [ã ka kə] in case that
s'exposer au risque [s ɛkspoze o risk] to take the risk
finir par [2] **décider** [finir par deside] to decide finally
la Manche [la mã:ʃ] English Channel
se mettre en danger [sə mɛtr ã dãʒe] to get into danger
se mettre à table [sə mɛtr a tabl] to sit down at table

EXERCISES

497. 1. Un jour monsieur Thomas a demandé à Charles s'il croyait qu'il était temps de penser à retourner en Amérique. 2. « Je crois que oui, » dit Charles. 3. « Mais les cours de vacances ne sont pas encore finis, » répondit monsieur Thomas. 4. « Si, mon père, ils se sont terminés hier, » répliqua Charles. 5. Alors la famille Thomas a decidé de partir pour l'Amérique à la fin du mois de septembre. 6. Ils se sont mis à faire leurs préparatifs de voyage longtemps avant leur départ. 7. Ils avaient bien profité de leur séjour en France, et ils étaient convaincus que c'est un des plus beaux pays du monde. 8. Ils avaient visité bien des fois les musées, les théâtres, les grands magasins, les parcs, les églises, et les environs de Paris. 9. Ils avaient passé quelques jours à la campagne et ils avaient vu les villes les plus importantes de la France. 10. Avant de s'embarquer, ils ont voyagé dans d'autres pays européens. 11. La veille de leur départ ils se sont mis à table très tard, ayant été très occupés pen-

[1] Adjectives in **–eux** have the feminine in **–euse** (see **145**, 3). The feminine termination **e** was added to an original **s** in the masculine singular which later changed to **x**.

[2] **Par** occurs before infinitives only after verbs of commencing and finishing.

dant toute la journée. 12. Le lendemain matin, ils sont allés à la gare en automobile. 13. Enfin, les voilà partis! 14. Tout de suite après leur arrivée au Havre, ils se sont embarqués. 15. Une demi-heure plus tard, le paquebot s'est mis en mouvement. 16. Madame Thomas craignait qu'une tempête n'éclatât. 17. Si elle en avait peur, c'est parce qu'elle craignait d'avoir le mal de mer, en cas qu'il fît mauvais temps. 18. Enfin on a débarqué à New-York. 19. Deux heures plus tard les Thomas ont pris le train pour Chicago où les attendaient des parents et des amis. 20. Qu'ils furent heureux de se revoir!

498. 1. One morning when they were all eating breakfast Mr. Thomas said, « It is time to think of going home (**rentrer**). 2. We must begin to prepare for the voyage at once. 3. It is already September [1] and it will be October before we arrive in America. » 4. Charles said, « Suppose [2] we go from Paris to London by aeroplane. » 5. « What a wonderful experience, » said his mother. 6. « But we do not want to get into danger, and I am afraid we should fall into the English channel. » 7. « I am not very much afraid that we should fall into the channel, » said Mr. Thomas. 8. « The trip is not very dangerous. 9. A great many people make it every day and there are few accidents. » 10. However, they decided finally not to take the risk. 11. There is not enough time to tell of their interesting experiences in going from Paris to London or (**ni**) to describe the voyage across the ocean, or (**ni**) to say how glad they were to see the statue of Liberty in the New York harbor. 12. But they were also very sorry to leave France. 13. Not only had they passed a very pleasant vacation, but they had become acquainted with the French people. [3] 14. How frugal and industrious and courageous they are! 15. What fine things they have achieved in art, science, and literature! 16. And so, in leaving France, our friends did not say **adieu** but **au revoir.**

LESSON XLVI

499. Adverbs.

1. *Position.* For the general rule and the special position of certain adverbs in compound tenses see **190** n., **413.** Note the following:

a. Adverbs of degree, *e.g.* **que, combien, comme,** *how,* in exclamations and indirect questions are separated from the word they modify. So also correlatives, such as **plus . . . moins,** *the more . . . the less,* in statements.

[1] *We are already in September.*
[2] *Suppose* here is **si.**
[3] Omit in translation.

Que vous êtes heureux! How happy you are!

Vous comprenez combien cette idée est fausse. You understand how false this idea is.

Plus on apprend, plus on veut apprendre. The more one learns the more one wants to learn.

Plus vous êtes vertueux, plus vous serez heureux. The more virtuous you are, the happier you will be.

b. An interrogative adverb may be preceded in very informal speech by a noun subject, which is repeated by a subject pronoun.

Votre cousine, quand arrivera-t-elle? When will your cousin arrive?

c. Certain adverbs such as **ne . . . pas, ne . . . point, ne . . . jamais, ne . . . plus, beaucoup, trop, bien, mal, mieux** usually precede the present infinitive; with the past infinitive the position of **ne . . . pas** is optional, the others being placed between the infinitive and the participle, following the rule for compound tenses.

Je crains d'avoir mal compris. I fear I have misunderstood.

Vous m'aviez promis de ne jamais le faire. You had promised never to do it.

Je crains de ne pas avoir (*or* **de n'avoir pas**) **compris.** I fear I have not understood.

2. *Form.* French adverbs in general are exceedingly varied in form, owing partly to the derivation of many of them from the widely diverging forms of the Latin adverbs, partly to the different methods of forming adverbs from adjectives, and partly to the use of noun phrases as adverbs, *e.g.* **longtemps, toujours** (**tous les jours**), **quelquefois,** *etc.*

3. *With the suffix* **-ment.** This constitutes a large class consisting of adverbs of manner. As a class they arose in an early stage of the language from the use of feminine adjectives with the Latin noun **mente,** *mind* or *manner,* e.g. **dignement,** *worthily* (Lat. **digna mente**); **honnêtement,** *honestly* (Lat. **honesta mente**); **lentement,** *slowly* (Lat. **lenta mente**); **purement,** *purely* (Lat. **pura mente**). Later, **-ment** having come to be regarded merely as an adverbial suffix, was attached to the feminine form (if such existed) of any suitable adjective without reference to Latin for the purpose of forming new adverbs, *e.g.* **heureusement,** *fortunately* (m. **heureux**); **sèchement,** *dryly* (m. **sec**); **spécialement** *especially* (m. **spécial**).

Note 1. The Latin **mente** (ablative case singular of **mens**) is feminine and therefore requires modifying adjectives of the same gender. The addition of

–ment to the feminine form of the adjective is due to this fact. **Mente** with an adjective expressed manner, not (as is sometimes said) accompaniment.

NOTE 2. Some Latin adjectives in **–ans** and **–ens** (e.g. **prudens** and **constans**) had the same form for masculine and feminine, so that when combined with **mente** in the ablative singular, this common form was employed. These adjectives also have consonant stems, which in forming French adverbs lose final **–ti** and assimilate **n** to **m**, *e.g.* Lat. **constanti mente**, becomes **constamment**, *constantly*, and Lat. **prudenti mente**, *in a prudent manner*, becomes **prudemment**, *cautiously*. This method of forming the adverb has given rise to the practical rule that **–ment** is added to the masculine of adjectives in **–ant** and **–ent**, final **–t** being dropped and **–n** being assimilated to **–m**, as in **élégamment**, *elegantly*, from the adjective **élégant**.[1]

NOTE 3. A small group of adverbs in **–ment** of which **confusément**, *confusedly*, **impunément**, *with impunity*, **obscurément**, *obscurely*, and **profondément**, *profoundly*, are examples, instead of neutral **e** show **é**. This may be due to the fact that in Latin these words had an adverbial form in long **e** (*e.g.* **confusē, impunē, obscurē**, *etc.*,) and that the suffix was added directly to this form.[2]

NOTE 4. Observe that in **récemment** [resamū], *recently*, **prudemment** [prydamū], *cautiously* and **fréquemment** [frekamū], *frequently*, **e** is pronounced **a**. This is due to the fact that this vowel was formerly nasalized.

4. *Special forms.* The following have special forms for the comparative degree: **beaucoup**, *much*, **bien**, *well*, **mal**, *badly*, **peu**, *little*.

Positive	*Comparative*	*Superlative*
beaucoup	**plus**	**le plus**
bien	**mieux**	**le mieux**
mal	**pis** (or **plus mal**)	**le pis** (or **le plus mal**)
peu	**moins**	**le moins**

NOTE 1. These irregular comparatives come from similar (and also irregular) forms in Latin. **Plus**, Lat. **plus**; **mieux**, Lat. **melius**; **pis**, Lat. **peius**, and **moins**, Lat. **minus**.

NOTE 2. **Plus bien** is not permissible for **mieux**, but **moins bien**, *less well*, is common. The regular **plus mal** and **le plus mal** are more frequent than **pis** and **le pis**. Compare **l'un agit mal, l'autre fera pis.** The one acts badly, the other will do worse.

Il agit plus mal que son voisin. He acts worse than his neighbor.

---

[1] Adverbs ending in **–ment** formed from adjectives ending in a vowel, such as **joliment** (*prettily*), **crûment** (*crudely*) show the suffix added to the feminine form. In such cases it is possible, as the circumflex in some of them seems to indicate, that **–ment** was added originally to the feminine, the neutral **e** of the latter dropping out.

[2] Some adverbs of this type may be derived from past participles, *e.g.*, **aveuglément** and **conformément** from **aveuglé** and **conformé**.

NOTE 3. **Davantage,** *more, more so, any more,* is not used (like **plus**) with an adjective or adverb to form specific comparisons, and it cannot precede **de** with a following noun. Thus, it is not correct to say, **il est davantage riche que moi,** or **l'ennemi a davantage de soldats que nous.** With **davantage** the second member of the comparison is not formally expressed but is rather implied.

Je ne puis vous en dire davantage. I cannot tell you any more about it.
Ne tardez pas davantage. Do not delay any longer.
Si vous êtes embarrassé, je le suis bien davantage. If you are embarrassed, I am very much more so.

5. *Meaning.* Adverbs express the relations of place, position, direction, time, manner, degree, quantity, affirmation and negation.

Là, *there,* **partout,** *everywhere,* **par ici,** *this way,* **jadis,** *formerly,* **ainsi,** *thus,* **presque,** *almost,* **combien,** *how much,* **vraiment,** *truly,* **nullement,** *in no wise.*

NOTE 1. Of the intensives **beaucoup, fort, très,** *very, much, very much,* **beaucoup** modifies verbs, adverbs and adjectives in the comparative degree; **très** and **fort,** adjectives, adverbs, past participles and adjectives in the positive degree.

NOTE 2. Note the correlatives **plus . . . plus,** *the more . . . the more* and **moins . . . moins,** *the less . . . the less.*

DRILL EXERCISE

500. 1. Form adverbs in **-ment** from the following adjectives: **fort,** *strong,* **grand,** *great,* **loyal,** *loyal,* **vil,** *vile,* **courant,** *fluent,* **franc** (*f.* **franche**), *frank,* **nouveau** (*f.* **nouvelle**), *new,* **clair,** *clear,* **premier,** *first.*

2. Write French sentences illustrating the use of **plus . . . plus, plus . . . moins,** and **moins . . . moins.**

3. *Translate into French:*

1. I do not live there any longer. 2. I never lived there long. 3. I have no longer the same desire. 4. He is better known than his brother. 5. He is the best known of French authors. 6. They acted worse than some others, but not the worst of all. 7. You speak French badly. 8. All languages are sometimes badly spoken. 9. English is not at all the worst spoken language. 10. We are certainly not all rich, but some always have more than others. 11. I truly have little wisdom (**sagesse**), but you have very much more. 12. How wise (**sage**) the young are! 13. But we are not infallible (**infaillible**), not [1] even the youngest of us.[2] 14. The more he reads, the wiser he becomes. 15. It is not possible to learn too much. 16. It was not possible to do it better. 17. Charles studies very diligently but does less well than his sister. 18. How well

[1] Use **pas,** not **ne . . . pas** (see **244,** n.)
[2] Omit *of us* in translation.

you did that! 19. Did you do better than Charles? Certainly not, sir. 20. Did the professor praise you highly (**beaucoup**)? 21. Not very often.

501. VOCABULARY

agriculture *f.* [agrikyltyːr] farming
animal *m.* [animal] animal
aspect *m.* [aspɛ] appearance
bas [bɑ] low (*of price*)
bêche *f.* [bɛːʃ] spade
blé [ble] grain, wheat
brebis *f.* [brəbi] sheep
charrue *f.* [ʃary] plow
chat *m.* [ʃa] cat
cheval *m.* [ʃəval] horse
chien *m.* [ʃjɛ̃] dog
compléter [kɔ̃plete] to complete
désirable [dezirabl] desirable
difficilement [difisilmɑ̃] with difficulty
diplôme *m.* [diploːm] diploma
drapeau *m.* [drapo] flag
s'empêcher (de) [sɑ̃peʃe] to keep from, forbear, abstain
ferme *f.* [ferm] farm, farmhouse
fermier *m.* [fɛrmje] farmer
feuille *f.* [fœːj] leaf
frais *m. pl.* [frɛ] expense
'houe *f.* [u] hoe
indispensable [ɛ̃dispɑ̃sabl] indispensible
instrument *m.* [ɛ̃strymɑ̃] implement, tool
jaune [ʒoːn] yellow
maïs *m.* [mais] maize, corn (Indian)
orge *f.* [ɔrʒ] barley
portière *f.* [pɔrtjɛːr] car window
pourvoir (de) [purvwaːr də] to provide (with)
prospère [prɔspɛːr] prosperous
regret *m.* [rəgrɛ] regret
sagement [saʒmɑ̃] wisely
sagesse *f.* [saʒɛs] wisdom
sérieusement [serjøzmɑ̃] seriously
situé [situe] situated, lying
soin *m.* [swɛ̃] care
vache *f.* [vaʃ] cow
varier [varje] to vary

mettre à même de [mɛtr a mɛːm də] to enable
à l'ordinaire [a l ɔrdinɛːr] as usual
outillage agricole *m.* [utijaːʒ agrikɔl] agricultural implements
de retour [də rətuːr] back again.

EXERCISES

502. 1. « Que je suis heureux de revoir mon pays après avoir voyagé à l'étranger, » dit monsieur Thomas. 2. Madame Thomas, Charles et Marie étaient très heureux aussi d'être de retour en Amérique. 3. Ils n'avaient jamais passé un été plus agréable. 4. Ils avaient quitté la France avec beaucoup de regret, mais ils étaient très contents de revoir le drapeau américain. 5. Deux heures après avoir débarqué, ils ont quitté New-York. 6. La ville où ils demeurent a plusieurs chemins de fer très importants, ce qui rend les voyages faciles. 7. Peu de villes sont mieux situées ou mieux pourvues d'écoles, d'églises et de toutes les choses les plus désirables et les plus utiles. 8. Avant de quitter New-York les Thomas avaient fait avec soin tous les préparatifs de leur voyage, de sorte qu'ils étaient beaucoup moins fatigués en arrivant à leur destination.

9. Ils sont partis à onze heures du matin. 10. C'était l'automne et ils ne pouvaient pas s'empêcher de remarquer que les feuilles commençaient à tomber. 11. Ils ont remarqué aussi qu'elles n'étaient plus vertes, mais qu'elles étaient déjà devenues jaunes. 12. En regardant par les portières du wagon où ils étaient assis, ils ont vu beaucoup de choses intéressantes. 13. Ils traversaient la partie des États-Unis qui produit beaucoup de blé et de maïs. 14. Monsieur Thomas a remarqué que la récolte était beaucoup meilleure qu'à l'ordinaire. 15. L'agriculture n'est pas toujours prospère. 16. La récolte varie d'année en année. 17. Quelquefois le fermier gagne difficilement sa vie. 18. Du reste, il y a beaucoup de choses dont il a besoin et qu'il est obligé d'acheter. 19. Avez-vous jamais pensé à l'outillage agricole dont il se sert, tel que la charrue et la bêche? 20. Ces instruments ont toujours été coûteux, mais ils le sont davantage aujourd'hui. 21. « Il y a une autre chose, » dit Charles, « qui rend la vie du fermier plus difficile qu'autrefois, c'est à dire que ses fils et ses filles veulent aller à l'université et les frais nécessaires pour les mettre à même de compléter leurs études et d'obtenir un diplôme sont assez élevés. » 22. « C'est vrai, » répondit monsieur Thomas, « mais comment le fermier pourrait-il mieux employer son argent? »

503. 1. Farming is a very interesting subject. 2. It is indeed a very great pleasure to speak of it, if it happens that you know something about it. 3. If you do not,[1] it is perhaps better not to speak of it at all, or to listen to some one who speaks wisely. 4. Almost every one knows how important farming is. 5. Even Charles, who has never thought seriously about it, knows that it makes a difference whether[2] the crops are good or bad, and whether the farmer sells his corn and wheat and barley at a low or high price. 6. Accordingly, he was much interested in looking through the car window at the farmhouses, the fields, and the well kept roads. 7. We have already spoken of the implements that are employed by the farmer, such as the hoe, the spade and the plow. 8. There are also certain animals which are useful in agriculture, for example, horses, cows and sheep. 9. One ought not to omit the dog and the cat which are always found in the country. 10. Indeed, a good dog is almost indispensible to the farmer. 11. However, it was the appearance of the whole country-side that especially interested Mr. Thomas and the others. 12. It had never seemed more beautiful to them. 13. Perhaps it was because they had been abroad and were now home again.

[1] *If you do not* is **si on n'en sait rien.**

[2] *It makes a difference whether*, **cela fait quelque chose que** (with subjunctive).

APPENDIX

Conjugation of *parler*, *finir*, *vendre* [1]

504. Parler.

		Indicative	*Endings*
Present	je parle	*I speak, am speaking*, etc.	–e
	tu parles		–es
	il parle		–e
	nous parlons	*we speak, are speaking*	–ons
	vous parlez		–ez
	ils parlent		–ent
Past Descriptive	je parlais	*I spoke, was speaking*	–ais
	tu parlais		–ais
	il parlait		–ait
	nous parlions	*we spoke, were speaking*	–ions
	vous parliez		–iez
	ils parlaient		–aient
Past Absolute	je parlai	*I spoke*	–ai
	tu parlas		–as
	il parla		–a
	nous parlâmes	*we spoke*	–âmes
	vous parlâtes		–âtes
	ils parlèrent		–èrent
Future	je parlerai	*I shall speak*	–ai
	tu parleras		–as
	il parlera		–a
	nous parlerons	*we shall speak*	–ons
	vous parlerez		–ez
	ils parleront		–ont
Past Future	je parlerais	*I should speak*	–ais
	tu parlerais		–ais
	il parlerait		–ait
	nous parlerions	*we should speak*	–ions
	vous parleriez		–iez
	ils parleraient		–aient

[1] The conjugations and synopses of the Appendix are given only in the active voice. For the formation of the passive see **443.**

Present Perfect	j'ai parlé tu as parlé il a parlé	*I have spoken*
	nous avons parlé vous avez parlé ils ont parlé	*we have spoken*
Past Perfect	j'avais parlé tu avais parlé il avait parlé	*I had spoken*
	nous avions parlé vous aviez parlé ils avaient parlé	*we had spoken*
2nd Past Perfect	j'eus parlé tu eus parlé il eut parlé	*I had spoken*
	nous eûmes parlé vous eûtes parlé ils eurent parlé	*we had spoken*
Future Perfect	j'aurai parlé tu auras parlé il aura parlé	*I shall have spoken*
	nous aurons parlé vous aurez parlé ils auront parlé	*we shall have spoken*

	Conditional		*Endings*
Present [1]	je parlerais tu parlerais il parlerait	*I should speak*	–ais –ais –ait
	nous parlerions vous parleriez ils parleraient	*we should speak*	–ions –iez –aient
Past	j'aurais parlé tu aurais parlé il aurait parlé	*I should have spoken*	
	nous aurions parlé vous auriez parlé ils auraient parlé	*we should have spoken*	

[1] From the standpoint of the present.

		Subjunctive	*Endings*
Present	je parle	(translation according to context)	–e
	tu parles		–es
	il parle		–e
	nous parlions		–ions
	vous parliez		–iez
	ils parlent		–ent
Past	je parlasse		–asse
	tu parlasses		–asses
	il parlât		–ât
	nous parlassions		–assions
	vous parlassiez		–assiez
	ils parlassent		–assent
Present Perfect	j'aie parlé		
	tu aies parlé		
	il ait parlé		
	nous ayons parlé		
	vous ayez parlé		
	ils aient parlé		

Imperative

parle	*speak*	–e
parlons	*let us speak*	–ons
parlez	*speak*	–ez

Infinitive

Present	parler	*to speak*	–er
Past	avoir parlé	*to have spoken*	

Participles

Present	parlant	*speaking*	–ant
Present Perfect	ayant parlé	*having spoken*	
Past	parlé	*spoken*	–é

505. Finir.

Indicative

Present	je finis	*I finish*	–s
	tu finis		–s
	il finit		–t
	nous finissons	*we finish*	–ons
	vous finissez		–ez
	ils finissent		–ent

			Endings
Past Descriptive	je finissais	*I was finishing*	–ais
	tu finissais		–ais
	il finissait		–ait
	nous finissions	*we were finishing*	–ions
	vous finissiez		–iez
	ils finissaient		–aient
Past Absolute	je finis	*I finished*	–is
	tu finis		–is
	il finit		–it
	nous finîmes	*we finished*	–îmes
	vous finîtes		–îtes
	ils finirent		–irent
Future	je finirai	*I shall finish*	–ai
	tu finiras		–as
	il finira		–a
	nous finirons	*we shall finish*	–ons
	vous finirez		–ez
	ils finiront		–ont
Past Future	je finirais	*I should finish*	–ais
	tu finirais		–ais
	il finirait		–ait
	nous finirions	*we should finish*	–ions
	vous finiriez		–iez
	ils finiraient		–aient
Present Perfect	j'ai fini	*I have finished*	
	tu as fini		
	il a fini		
	nous avons fini	*we have finished*	
	vous avez fini		
	ils ont fini		
Past Perfect	j'avais fini	*I had finished*	
	tu avais fini		
	il avait fini		
	nous avions fini	*we had finished*	
	vous aviez fini		
	ils avaient fini		
2nd Past Perfect	j'eus fini	*I had finished*	
	tu eus fini		
	il eut fini		
	nous eûmes fini	*we had finished*	
	vous eûtes fini		
	ils eurent fini		

Future Perfect	**j'aurai fini**	*I shall have finished*	
	tu auras fini		
	il aura fini		
	nous aurons fini	*we shall have finished*	
	vous aurez fini		
	ils auront fini		
		Conditional	*Endings*
Present	**je finirais**	*I should finish*	**–ais**
	tu finirais		**–ais**
	il finirait		**–ait**
	nous finirions	*we should finish*	**–ions**
	vous finiriez		**–iez**
	ils finiraient		**–aient**
Past	**j'aurais fini**	*I should have finished*	
	tu aurais fini		
	il aurait fini		
	nous aurions fini	*we should have finished*	
	vous auriez fini		
	ils auraient fini		
		Subjunctive	
Present [1]	**je finisse**	(translation according to context)	**–e**
	tu finisses		**–es**
	il finisse		**–e**
	nous finissions		**–ions**
	vous finissiez		**–iez**
	ils finissent		**–ent**
Present Perfect	**j'aie fini**		
	tu aies fini		
	il ait fini		
	nous ayons fini		
	vous ayez fini		
	ils aient fini		
		Imperative	
	finis	*finish*	**–s**
	finissons	*let us finish*	**–ons**
	finissez	*finish*	**–ez**
		Infinitive	
Present	**finir**	*to finish*	**–ir**
Past	**avoir fini**	*to have finished*	

[1] The past subjunctive is not given in full, being like the present except in the 3*d* sing., which is **finît**.

		Participles	*Endings*
Present	finissant	*finishing*	–ant
Present Perfect	ayant fini	*having finished*	
Past	fini	*finished*	–i

506. Vendre.

Indicative

Present	je vends	*I sell, am selling,* etc.	–s
	tu vends		–s
	il vend		—
	nous vendons	*we sell, are selling,* etc.	–ons
	vous vendez		–ez
	ils vendent		–ent
Past Descriptive	je vendais	*I was selling,* etc.	–ais
	tu vendais		–ais
	il vendait		–ait
	nous vendions	*we sold, were selling,* etc.	–ions
	vous vendiez		–iez
	ils vendaient		–aient
Past Absolute	je vendis	*I sold*	–is
	tu vendis		–is
	il vendit		–it
	nous vendîmes	*we sold*	–îmes
	vous vendîtes		–îtes
	ils vendirent		–irent
Future	je vendrai	*I shall sell*	–ai
	tu vendras		–as
	il vendra		–a
	nous vendrons	*we shall sell*	–ons
	vous vendrez		–ez
	ils vendront		–ont
Past Future	je vendrais	*I should sell*	–ais
	tu vendrais		–ais
	il vendrait		–ait
	nous vendrions	*we should sell*	–ions
	vous vendriez		–iez
	ils vendraient		–aient
Present Perfect	j'ai vendu	*I have sold*	
	tu as vendu		
	il a vendu		

	nous avons vendu	*we have sold*
	vous avez vendu	
	ils ont vendu	
Past Perfect	**j'avais vendu**	*I had sold*
	tu avais vendu	
	il avait vendu	
	nous avions vendu	*we had sold*
	vous aviez vendu	
	ils avaient vendu	
2nd Past Perfect	**j'eus vendu**	*I had sold*
	tu eus vendu	
	il eut vendu	
	nous eûmes vendu	*we had sold*
	vous eûtes vendu	
	ils eurent vendu	
Future Perfect	**j'aurai vendu**	*I shall have sold*
	tu auras vendu	
	il aura vendu	
	nous aurons vendu	*we shall have sold*
	vous aurez vendu	
	ils auront vendu	

	Conditional		*Endings*
Present	**je vendrais**	*I should sell*	**–ais**
	tu vendrais		**–ais**
	il vendrait		**–ait**
	nous vendrions	*we should sell*	**–ions**
	vous vendriez		**–iez**
	ils vendraient		**–aient**
Past	**j'aurais vendu**	*I should have sold*	
	tu aurais vendu		
	il aurait vendu		
	nous aurions vendu	*we should have sold*	
	vous auriez vendu		
	ils auraient vendu		

	Subjunctive		
Present	**je vende**	(translation according to context)	**–e**
	tu vendes		**–es**
	il vende		**–e**

			Endings
	nous vendions		–ions
	vous vendiez		–iez
	ils vendent		–ent
Past	je vendisse	(translation according to context)	–isse
	tu vendisses		–isses
	il vendît		–ît
	nous vendissions		–issions
	vous vendissiez		–issiez
	ils vendissent		–issent
Present Perfect	j'aie vendu	(translation according to context)	
	tu aies vendu		
	il ait vendu		
	nous ayons vendu		
	vous ayez vendu		
	ils aient vendu		
		Imperative	
	vends	*sell*	–s
	vendons	*let us sell*	–ons
	vendez	*sell*	–ez
		Infinitive	
Present	vendre	*to sell*	–re
Present Perfect	avoir vendu	*to have sold*	
		Participles	
Present	vendant	*selling*	–ant
Present Perfect	ayant vendu	*having sold*	
Past	vendu	*sold*	–u

507. Avoir.

		Indicative	
Present	j'ai	*I have*	—
	tu as		–s
	il a		—
	nous avons	*we have*	–ons
	vous avez		–ez
	ils ont		–nt
Past Descriptive	j'avais	*I had, was having,* etc.	–ais
	tu avais		–ais
	il avait		–ait

			Endings
	nous avions	*we had, were having*	–ions
	vous aviez		–iez
	ils avaient		–aient
Past Absolute	j'eus	*I had*	–s
	tu eus		–s
	il eut		–t
	nous eûmes	*we had*	–mes
	vous eûtes		–tes
	ils eurent		–rent
Future	j'aurai	*I shall have*	–ai
	tu auras		–as
	il aura		–a
	nous aurons	*we shall have*	–ons
	vous aurez		–ez
	ils auront		–ont
Past Future	j'aurais	*I should have*	–ais
	tu aurais		–ais
	il aurait		–ait
	nous aurions	*we should have*	–ions
	vous auriez		–iez
	ils auraient		–aient
Present Perfect	j'ai eu	*I have had*	
	tu as eu		
	il a eu		
	nous avons eu	*we have had*	
	vous avez eu		
	ils ont eu		
Past Perfect	j'avais eu	*I had had*	
	tu avais eu		
	il avait eu		
	nous avions eu	*we had had*	
	vous aviez eu		
	ils avaient eu		
2nd Past Perfect	j'eus eu	*I had had*	
	tu eus eu		
	il eut eu		
	nous eûmes eu	*we had had*	
	vous eûtes eu		
	ils eurent eu		

Future Perfect	j'aurai eu	*I shall have had*	
	tu auras eu		
	il aura eu		
	nous aurons eu	*we shall have had*	
	vous aurez eu		
	ils auront eu		
		Conditional	*Endings*
Present	j'aurais	*I should have*	–ais
	tu aurais		–ais
	il aurait		–ait
	nous aurions	*we should have*	–ions
	vous auriez		–iez
	ils auraient		–aient
Past	j'aurais eu	*I should have had*	
	tu aurais eu		
	il aurait eu		
	nous aurions eu	*we should have had*	
	vous auriez eu		
	ils auraient eu		
		Subjunctive	
Present	j'aie	(translation according to context)	–e
	tu aies		–es
	il ait		–t
	nous ayons		–ons
	vous ayez		–ez
	ils aient		–ent
Past	j'eusse	(translation according to context)	–sse
	tu eusses		–sses
	il eût		–t
	nous eussions		–ssions
	vous eussiez		–ssiez
	ils eussent		–ssent
Present Perfect	j'aie eu	(translation according to context)	
	tu aies eu		
	il ait eu		
	nous ayons eu		
	vous ayez eu		
	ils aient eu		

		Imperative	*Endings*
Present	aie	*have*	– e
	ayons	*let us have*	–ions
	ayez	*have*	–iez
		Infinitive	
Present	avoir	*to have*	–oir
Past	avoir eu	*to have had*	
		Participles	
Present	ayant	*having*	–ant
Present Perfect	ayant eu	*having had*	
Past	eu	*had*	

508. Être.

		Indicative	
Present	je suis	*I am*	–s
	tu es		–s
	il est		–t
	nous sommes	*we are*	–mes
	vous êtes		–es
	ils sont		–nt
Past Descriptive	j'étais	*I was*	–ais
	tu étais		–ais
	il était		–ait
	nous étions	*we were*	–ions
	vous étiez		–iez
	ils étaient		–aient
Past Absolute	je fus	*I was*	–s
	tu fus		–s
	il fut		–t
	nous fûmes	*we were*	–mes
	vous fûtes		–tes
	ils furent		–rent
Future	je serai	*I shall be*	–ai
	tu seras		–as
	il sera		–a
	nous serons	*we shall be*	–ons
	vous serez		–ez
	ils seront		–ont
Past Future	je serais	*I should be*	–ais
	tu serais		–ais
	il serait		–ait

			Endings
	nous serions	*we should be*	–ions
	vous seriez		–iez
	ils seraient		–aient
Present Perfect	j'ai été	*I have been*	
	tu as été		
	il a été		
	nous avons été	*we have been*	
	vous avez été		
	ils ont été		
Past Perfect	j'avais été	*I had been*	
	tu avais été		
	il avait été		
	nous avions été	*we had been*	
	vous aviez été		
	ils avaient été		
2nd Past Perfect	j'eus été	*I had been*	
	tu eus été		
	il eut été		
	nous eûmes été	*we had been*	
	vous eûtes été		
	ils eurent été		
Future Perfect	j'aurai été	*I shall have been*	
	tu auras été		
	il aura été		
	nous aurons été	*we shall have been*	
	vous aurez été		
	ils auront été		

Conditional

Present	je serais	*I should be*	–ais
	tu serais		–ais
	il serait		–ait
	nous serions	*we should be*	–ions
	vous seriez		–iez
	ils seraient		–aient
Past	j'aurais été	*I should have been*	
	tu aurais été		
	il aurait été		
	nous aurions été	*we should have been*	
	vous auriez été		
	ils auraient été		

		Subjunctive	*Endings*
	je sois	(translation according to context)	–s
	tu sois		–s
	il soit		–t
	nous soyons		–ions
	vous soyez		–iez
	ils soient		–ent
Past	je fusse	(translation according to context)	–sse
	tu fusses		–sses
	il fût		–t
	nous fussions		–ssions
	vous fussiez		–ssiez
	ils fussent		–ssent
Present Perfect	j'aie été	(translation according to context)	
	tu aies été		
	il ait été		
	nous ayons été		
	vous ayez été		
	ils aient été		
		Imperative	
	sois	*be*	–s
	soyons	*let us be*	–ions
	soyez	*be*	–iez
		Infinitive	
Present	être	*to be*	–re
Past	avoir été	*to have been*	
		Participles	
Present	étant	*being*	–ant
Present Perfect	ayant été	*having been*	
Past	été	*been*	–é

Peculiarities of Spelling in Certain Verbs of the First Conjugation

509. **ç** (= s) for **c.** Verbs ending in **–cer** change **c** to **ç** before **a** and **o** in order to retain the s-sound of **c** throughout their conjugation (see **40, 73**).

Menacer, *to threaten.*

Pres. Part.	Pres. Indic.	Past Descr.	Past Abs.	Past Subj.
menaçant	menace	menaçais	menaçai	menaçasse
	menaces	menaçais	menaças	menaçasses
	menace	menaçait	menaça	menaçât
	menaçons	menacions	menaçâmes	menaçassions
	menacez	menaciez	menaçâtes	menaçassiez
	menacent	menaçaient	menacèrent	menaçassent

510. ge for g. Verbs ending in **–ger** change **g** to **ge** before **a** and **o** to preserve the ʒ sound of **g** throughout their conjugation (see **43**).

Venger, *to avenge.*

Pres. Part.	Pres. Indic.	Past Descr.	Past Abs.	Past Subj.
vengeant	venge	vengeais	vengeai	vengeasse
	venges	vengeais	vengeas	vengeasses
	venge	vengeait	vengea	vengeât
	vengeons	vengions	vengeâmes	vengeassions
	vengez	vengiez	vengeâtes	vengeassiez
	vengent	vengeaient	vengèrent	vengeassent

511. i for y. Verbs in **–oyer** and **–uyer** change **y** to **i** when it occurs before neutral **e** in conjugation.

Employer, *to employ.*

Pres. Indic.	Future	Past Future & Conditional	Pres. Subj.
emploie, etc.	emploierai, etc.	emploierais, etc.	emploie, etc.

512. i for y. Verbs in **–ayer** and **–eyer** may either retain **y** or change it to **i** before neutral **e.**

Payer, *to pay.*

Pres. Indic.	Future	Past Future & Conditional	Pres. Subj.
paye / paie etc.	payerai / paierai etc.	payerais / paierais etc.	paye / paie etc.

513. Grave **è** for **e** or acute **é.** In verbs whose stem vowel is **é** or neutral **e,** this vowel becomes **è** before a neutral or silent **e** in the next syllable.

Lever, *to raise.*

Pres. Indic.	Pres. Subj.	Future	Past Future & Conditional
lève	lève	lèverai	lèverais
lèves	lèves	lèveras	lèverais
lève	lève	lèvera	lèverait
levons	levions	lèverons	lèverions
levez	leviez	lèverez	lèveriez
lèvent	lèvent	lèveront	lèveraient

NOTE. In verbs whose stem vowel is é, this vowel remains unchanged in the future and conditional.

Espérer, *to hope.*

Pres. Indic.	Pres. Subj.	Future	Past Future & Conditional
espère	espère	espérerai, etc.	espérerais, etc.
espères	espères		
espère	espère		
espérons	espérions		
espérez	espériez		
espèrent	espèrent		

NOTE. In levé-je? [ləveːʒ] the stem vowel is not changed to è as the e of the ending is not neutral (see 115).

514. ll or tt for l or t. The majority of verbs in –eler, –eter double the l or t before neutral e.

Appeler, *to call,* and jeter, *to throw.*

Pres. Indic.	Pres. Subj.	Future	Past Future & Conditional
appelle	appelle	appellerai	appellerais
appelles	appelles	appelleras	appellerais
appelle	appelle	appellera	appellerait
appelons	appelions	appellerons	appellerions
appelez	appeliez	appellerez	appelleriez
appellent	appellent	appelleront	appelleraient
jette, etc.	jette, etc.	jetterai, etc.	jetterais, etc.

NOTE 1. Acheter is like lever.

achète, etc.	achète, etc.	achèterai, etc.	achèterais, etc.

NOTE 2. Like **acheter** are:

agneler, *to lamb*
becqueter, *to peck*
bourreler, *to goad*
démanteler, *to dismantle*
écarteler, *to quarter*
étiqueter, *to label*
geler, *to freeze*
harceler, *to harass*
marteler, *to hammer*
modeler, *to model*
peler, *to peel*
rapiéceter, *to piece*
trompeter, *to trumpet*

Synopsis of Irregular and Defective Verbs

515. Aller, *to go.*

Pres. Indicative	vais, vas, va, allons, allez, vont
Imperative	va, allons, allez
Pres. Infinitive	aller
Future	irai, etc.
Past Future / Conditional	irais, etc.
Pres. Participle	allant
Past Descriptive	allais, etc.
Pres. Subjunctive	aille, ailles, aille, allions, alliez, aillent
Past Absolute	allai, allas, alla, allâmes, allâtes, allèrent
Past Subjunctive	allasse, allasses, allât, allassions, allassiez, allassent
Past Participle	allé
Pres. Perfect	je suis allé, etc.

516. Envoyer, *to send.*

Pres. Indicative	envoie, envoies, envoie, envoyons, envoyez, envoient
Imperative	envoie, envoyons, envoyez
Pres. Infinitive	envoyer
Future	enverrai, etc.
Past Future / Conditional	enverrais, etc.
Pres. Participle	envoyant
Past Descriptive	envoyais, etc.
Pres. Subjunctive	envoie, envoies, envoie, envoyions, envoyiez, envoient
Past Absolute	envoyai, envoyas, envoya, envoyâmes, envoyâtes, envoyèrent
Past Subjunctive	envoyasse, envoyasses, envoyât, envoyassions, envoyassiez, envoyassent
Past Participle	envoyé
Pres. Perfect	j'ai envoyé, etc.

517. Acquérir, *to acquire.*

Pres. Indicative	acquiers, acquiers, acquiert, acquérons, acquérez, acquièrent
Pres. Subjunctive	acquière, acquières, acquière, acquérions, acquériez, acquièrent
Imperative	acquiers, acquérons, acquérez
Pres. Infinitive	acquérir
Future	acquerrai, etc.
Conditional / Past Future	acquerrais, etc.
Pres. Participle	acquérant
Past Descriptive	acquérais
Past Absolute	acquis, acquis, acquit, acquîmes, acquîtes, acquirent
Past Subjunctive	acquisse, acquisses, acquît, acquissions, acquissiez, acquissent
Past Participle	acquis
Pres. Perfect	j'ai acquis, etc.

518. Courir, *to run.*

Pres. Indicative	cours, cours, court, courons, courez, courent
Imperative	cours, courons, courez
Pres. Infinitive	courir
Future	courrai, etc.
Past Future / Conditional	courrais, etc.
Pres. Participle	courant
Past Descriptive	courais, etc.
Pres. Subjunctive	coure, coures, coure, courions, couriez, courent
Past Absolute	courus, courus, courut, courûmes, courûtes, coururent
Past Subjunctive	courusse, courusses, courût, courussions, courussiez, courussent
Past Participle	couru
Pres. Perfect	j'ai couru, etc.

519. Cueillir, *to gather, pick.*

Pres. Indicative	cueille, cueilles, cueille, etc.
Imperative	cueille, cueillons, cueillez
Pres. Infinitive	cueillir
Future	cueillerai, etc.
Past Future / Conditional	cueillerais, etc.

Pres. Participle	**cueillant**
Past Descriptive	**cueillais**, etc.
Pres. Subjunctive	**cueille, cueilles, cueille, cueillions, cueilliez, cueillent**
Past Absolute	**cueillis, cueillis, cueillit, cueillîmes, cueillîtes, cueillirent**
Past Subjunctive	**cueillisse, cueillisses, cueillît, cueillissions, cueillissiez, cueillissent**
Past Participle	**cueilli**
Pres. Perfect	**j'ai cueilli**, etc.

520. Dormir, *to sleep.*

Pres. Indicative	**dors, dors, dort, dormons, dormez, dorment**
Imperative	**dors, dormons, dormez**
Pres. Infinitive	**dormir**
Future	**dormirai**, etc.
Past Future / Conditional	**dormirais**, etc.
Pres. Participle	**dormant**
Past Descriptive	**dormais**, etc.
Pres. Subjunctive	**dorme, dormes, dorme, dormions, dormiez, dorment**
Past Absolute	**dormis, dormis, dormit, dormîmes, dormîtes, dormirent**
Past Subjunctive	**dormisse, dormisses, dormît, dormissions, dormissiez, dormissent**
Past Participle	**dormi**
Pres. Perfect	**j'ai dormi**, etc.

521. Faillir,[1] *to fail.*

Pres. Indicative	**faux, faux, faut, faillons, faillez, faillent**
Pres. Subjunctive	**faille, failles, faille, faillions, failliez, faillent**
Pres. Infinitive	**faillir**
Future	**faudrai** or **faillirai**, etc.
Past Future / Conditional	**faudrais** or **faillirais**, etc.
Present Participle	**faillant**
Past Descriptive	**faillais**, etc.
Past Absolute	**faillis, faillis, faillit, faillîmes, faillîtes, faillirent**
Past Subjunctive	**faillisse, faillisses, faillît, faillissions, faillissiez, faillissent**
Past Participle	**failli**
Pres. Perfect	**j'ai failli**, etc.

522. Fuir, *to flee.*

Pres. Indicative	**fuis, fuis, fuit, fuyons, fuyez, fuient**
Imperative	**fuis, fuyons, fuyez**
Pres. Subjunctive	**fuie, fuies, fuie, fuyions, fuyiez, fuient**

[1] The present tenses of this verb are scarcely used at present. In the future and conditional the regular forms (**faillirai**, etc.) are preferred.

Pres. Infinitive	fuir
Future	fuirai, etc.
Past Future / Conditional	fuirais, etc.
Pres. Participle	fuyant
Past Descriptive	fuyais, etc.
Past Absolute	fuis, fuis, fuit, fuîmes, fuîtes, fuirent
Past Subjunctive	fuisse, fuisses, fuît, fuissions, fuissiez, fuissent
Past Participle	fui
Pres. Perfect	j'ai fui, etc.

523. Gésir, *to lie, lie buried.*

Pres. Indicative	—, —, gît, gisons, gisez, gisent
Imperative	—, —, —
Pres. Infinitive	gésir
Future	—
Past Future / Conditional	—
Pres. Participle	gisant
Past Descriptive	gisais, etc.
Pres. Subjunctive	—
Past Absolute	—
Past Subjunctive	—
Past Participle	—

524. Haïr, *to hate.*

Pres. Indicative	hais, hais, hait, haïssons, haïssez, haïssent
Imperative	hais, haïssons, haïssez
Pres. Infinitive	haïr
Future	haïrai, etc.
Past Future / Conditional	haïrais, etc.
Pres. Participle	haïssant
Past Descriptive	haïssais, etc.
Pres. Subjunctive	haïsse, haïsses, haïsse, haïssions, haïssiez, haïssent
Past Absolute	haïs, haïs, haït, haïmes, haïtes, haïrent
Past Subjunctive	haïsse, haïsses, haït, haïssions, haïssiez, haïssent
Past Participle	haï
Pres. Perfect	j'ai haï, etc.

525. Mourir, *to die.*

Pres. Indicative	meurs, meurs, meurt, mourons, mourez, meurent
Pres. Subjunctive	meure, meures, meure, mourions, mouriez, meurent
Imperative	meurs, mourons, mourez
Pres. Infinitive	mourir
Future	mourrai, etc.
Past Future / Conditional	mourrais, etc.
Pres. Participle	mourant
Past Descriptive	mourais, etc.
Past Absolute	mourus, mourus, mourut, mourûmes, mourûtes, moururent
Past Subjunctive	mourusse, mourusses, mourût, mourussions, mourussiez, mourussent
Past Participle	mort
Pres. Perfect	je suis mort, etc.

526. Ouvrir, *to open.*

Pres. Indicative	ouvre, ouvres, ouvre, ouvrons, ouvrez, ouvrent
Imperative	ouvre, ouvrons, ouvrez
Pres. Infinitive	ouvrir
Future	ouvrirai, etc.
Past Future / Conditional	ouvrirais, etc.
Pres. Participle	ouvrant
Past Descriptive	ouvrais, etc.
Pres. Subjunctive	ouvre, ouvres, ouvre, ouvrions, ouvriez, ouvrent
Past Absolute	ouvris, ouvris, ouvrit, ouvrîmes, ouvrîtes, ouvrirent
Past Subjunctive	ouvrisse, ouvrisses, ouvrît, ouvrissions, ouvrissiez, ouvrissent
Past Participle	ouvert
Pres. Perfect	j'ai ouvert, etc.

527. Tenir, *to hold.*

Pres. Indicative	tiens, tiens, tient, tenons, tenez, tiennent
Pres. Subjunctive	tienne, tiennes, tienne, tenions, teniez, tiennent
Imperative	tiens, tenons, tenez
Pres. Infinitive	tenir
Future	tiendrai, etc.
Past Future / Conditional	tiendrais, etc.

Pres. Participle	**tenant**
Past Descriptive	**tenais**, etc.
Past Absolute	**tins, tins, tint, tînmes, tîntes, tinrent**
Past Subjunctive	**tinsse, tinsses, tînt, tinssions, tinssiez, tinssent**
Past Participle	**tenu**
Pres. Perfect	**j'ai tenu**, etc.

528. Venir, *to come.*

Pres. Indicative	**viens, viens, vient, venons, venez, viennent**
Pres. Subjunctive	**vienne, viennes, vienne, venions, veniez, viennent**
Imperative	**viens, venons, venez**
Pres. Infinitive	**venir**
Future	**viendrai**, etc.
Past Future / Conditional	**viendrais**, etc.
Pres. Participle	**venant**
Past Descriptive	**venais**, etc.
Past Absolute	**vins, vins, vint, vînmes, vîntes, vinrent**
Past Subjunctive	**vinsse, vinsses, vînt, vinssions, vinssiez, vinssent**
Past Participle	**venu**
Pres. Perfect	**je suis venu**, etc.

529. Vêtir, *to dress.*

Pres. Indicative	**vêts, vêts, vêt, vêtons, vêtez, vêtent**
Imperative	**vêts, vêtons, vêtez**
Pres. Infinitive	**vêtir**
Future	**vêtirai**, etc.
Past Future / Conditional	**vêtirais**, etc.
Pres. Participle	**vêtant**
Past Descriptive	**vêtais**, etc.
Pres. Subjunctive	**vête, vêtes, vête, vêtions, vêtiez, vêtent.**
Past Absolute	**vêtis, vêtis, vêtit, vêtîmes, vêtîtes, vêtirent**
Past Subjunctive	**vêtisse, vêtisses, vêtît, vêtissions, vêtissiez, vêtissent**
Past Participle	**vêtu**
Pres. Perfect	**j'ai vêtu**

530. Battre, *to beat.*

One **t** is omitted in the present indicative singular; **bats, bats, bat**; otherwise, like **vendre.**

531. Boire, *to drink.*

Pres. Indicative	**bois, bois, boit, buvons, buvez, boivent**
Imperative	**bois, buvons, buvez**
Pres. Infinitive	**boire**
Future	**boirai**, etc.
Past Future / Conditional	**boirais**, etc.
Pres. Participle	**buvant**
Past Descriptive	**buvais**, etc.
Pres. Subjunctive	**boive, boives, boive, buvions, buviez, boivent**
Past Absolute	**bus, bus, but, bûmes, bûtes, burent**
Past Subjunctive	**busse, busses, bût, bussions, bussiez, bussent**
Past Participle	**bu**
Pres. Perfect	**j'ai bu**, etc.

532. Bruire, *to murmur, rustle.*

Pres. Indicative	—, —, **bruit**, —, —, **bruissent**
Imperative	—
Pres. Infinitive	**bruire**
Pres. Participle	**bruyant** *or* **bruissant**
Past Descriptive	**bruyait** *or* **bruissait, bruyaient** *or* **bruissaient**
Pres. Subjunctive	—, —, **bruisse**, —, —, **bruissent**
Past Absolute	—
Past Subjunctive	—

NOTE. The present participle **bruyant**, *noisy*, is used as an adjective only.

533. Clore, *to close, enclose.*

Pres. Indicative	**clos, clos, clôt**, —, —, —
Imperative	—
Pres. Infinitive	**clore**
Future	**clorai**, etc.
Past Future / Conditional	**clorais**, etc.
Pres. Participle	—
Past Descriptive	—
Pres. Subjunctive	**close, closes, close, closions, closiez, closent**
Past Absolute	—
Past Subjunctive	—
Past Participle	**clos**
Pres. Perfect	**j'ai clos**, etc.

534. Conclure, *to conclude.*

Pres. Indicative	conclus, conclus, conclut, concluons, concluez, concluent
Imperative	conclus, concluons, concluez
Pres. Infinitive	conclure
Future	conclurai, etc.
Past Future / Conditional	conclurais, etc.
Pres. Participle	concluant
Past Descriptive	concluais, etc.
Pres. Subjunctive	conclue, conclues, conclue, concluions, concluiez, concluent
Past Absolute	conclus, conclus, conclut, conclûmes, conclûtes, conclurent
Past Subjunctive	conclusse, conclusses, conclût, conclussions, conclussiez, conclussent
Past Participle	conclu
Pres. Perfect	j'ai conclu, etc.

535. Conduire, *to conduct.*

Pres. Indicative	conduis, conduis, conduit, conduisons, conduisez, conduisent
Imperative	conduis, conduisons, conduisez
Pres. Infinitive	conduire
Future	conduirai, etc.
Past Future / Conditional	conduirais, etc.
Pres. Participle	conduisant
Past Descriptive	conduisais, etc.
Pres. Subjunctive	conduise, conduises, conduise, conduisions, conduisiez, conduisent
Past Absolute	conduisis, conduisis, conduisit, conduisîmes, conduisîtes, conduisirent
Past Subjunctive	conduisisse, conduisisses, conduisît, conduisissions, conduisissiez, conduisissent
Past Participle	conduit
Pres. Perfect	j'ai conduit, etc.

536. Confire, *to preserve.*

Pres. Indicative	confis, confis, confit, confisons, confisez, confisent
Imperative	confis, confisons, confisez
Pres. Infinitive	confire
Future	confirai, etc.
Past Future / Conditional	confirais, etc.

Pres. Participle	confisant
Past Descriptive	confisais, etc.
Pres. Subjunctive	confise, confises, confise, confisions, confisiez, confisent
Past Absolute	confis, confis, confit, confîmes, confîtes, confirent
Past Subjunctive	confisse, confisses, confît, confissions, confissiez, confissent
Past Participle	confit
Pres. Perfect	j'ai confit, etc.

537. Connaître, *to know, be acquainted with.*

Pres. Indicative	connais, connais, connaît, connaissons, connaissez, connaissent
Imperative	connais, connaissons, connaissez
Pres. Infinitive	connaître
Future	connaîtrai, etc.
Past Future / Conditional	connaîtrais, etc.
Pres. Participle	connaissant
Past Descriptive	connaissais, etc.
Pres. Subjunctive	connaisse, connaisses, connaisse, connaissions, connaissiez, connaissent
Past Absolute	connus, connus, connut, connûmes, connûtes, connurent
Past Subjunctive	connusse, connusses, connût, connussions, connussiez, connussent
Past Participle	connu
Pres. Perfect	j'ai connu, etc.

538. Coudre, *to sew.*

Pres. Indicative	couds, couds, coud, cousons, cousez, cousent
Imperative	couds, cousons, cousez
Pres. Infinitive	coudre
Future	coudrai, etc.
Past Future / Conditional	coudrais, etc.
Pres. Participle	cousant
Past Descriptive	cousais, etc.
Pres. Subjunctive	couse, couses, couse, cousions, cousiez, cousent
Past Absolute	cousis, cousis, cousit, cousîmes, cousîtes, cousirent
Past Subjunctive	cousisse, cousisses, cousît, cousissions, cousissiez, cousissent
Past Participle	cousu
Pres. Perfect	j'ai cousu, etc.

539. Craindre, *to fear.*

Pres. Indicative	crains, crains, craint, craignons, craignez, craignent
Imperative	crains, craignons, craignez
Pres. Infinitive	craindre
Future	craindrai, etc.
Past Future / Conditional	craindrais, etc.
Pres. Participle	craignant
Past Descriptive	craignais, etc.
Pres. Subjunctive	craigne, craignes, craigne, craignions, craigniez, craignent
Past Absolute	craignis, craignis, craignit, craignîmes, craignîtes, craignirent
Past Subjunctive	craignisse, craignisses, craignît, craignissions, craignissiez, craignissent
Past Participle	craint
Pres. Perfect	j'ai craint

540. Croire, *to believe.*

Pres. Indicative	crois, crois, croit, croyons, croyez, croient
Imperative	crois, croyons, croyez
Pres. Infinitive	croire
Future	croirai, etc.
Past Future / Conditional	croirais, etc.
Pres. Participle	croyant
Past Descriptive	croyais, etc.
Pres. Subjunctive	croie, croies, croie, croyions, croyiez, croient
Past Absolute	crus, crus, crut, crûmes, crûtes, crurent
Past Subjunctive	crusse, crusses, crût, crussions, crussiez, crussent
Past Participle	cru
Pres. Perfect	j'ai cru, etc.

541. Croître, *to grow.*

Pres. Indicative	croîs, croîs, croît, croissons, croissez, croissent
Imperative	croîs, croissons, croissez
Pres. Infinitive	croître
Future	croîtrai, etc.
Past Future / Conditional	croîtrais, etc.
Pres. Participle	croissant
Past Descriptive	croissais, etc.
Pres. Subjunctive	croisse, croisses, croisse, croissions, croissiez, croissent

Past Absolute	crûs, crûs, crût, crûmes, crûtes, crûrent
Past Subjunctive	crûsse, crûsses, crût, crûssions, crûssiez, crûssent
Past Participle	crû, *f.* crue
Pres. Perfect	j'ai crû, etc.

NOTE. Observe that the circumflex distinguishes the singular forms of the present indicative, the singular and third plural of the past absolute, and the past participle, from the corresponding forms of **croire**. The use of the circumflex is optional in the past subjunctive of **croître** except in the third singular.

542. Dire, *to say, tell.*

Pres. Indicative	dis, dis, dit, disons, dites, disent
Imperative	dis, disons, dites [1]
Pres. Infinitive	dire
Future	dirai, etc.
Past Future / Conditional	dirais, etc.
Pres. Participle	disant
Past Descriptive	disais, etc.
Pres. Subjunctive	dise, dises, dise, disions, disiez, disent
Past Absolute	dis, dis, dit, dîmes, dîtes, dirent
Past Subjunctive	disse, disses, dît, dissions, dissiez, dissent
Past Participle	dit
Pres. Perfect	j'ai dit, etc.

543. Écrire, *to write.*

Pres. Indicative	écris, écris, écrit, écrivons, écrivez, écrivent
Imperative	écris, écrivons, écrivez
Pres. Infinitive	écrire
Future	écrirai, etc.
Past Future / Conditional	écrirais, etc.
Pres. Participle	écrivant
Past Descriptive	écrivais, etc.
Pres. Subjunctive	écrive, écrives, écrive, écrivions, écriviez, écrivent
Past Absolute	écrivis, écrivis, écrivit, écrivîmes, écrivîtes, écrivirent
Past Subjunctive	écrivisse, écrivisses, écrivît, écrivissions, écrivissiez, écrivissent
Past Participle	écrit
Pres. Perfect	j'ai écrit, etc.

[1] The only compound of **dire** which has **-tes** in the second plural of the pres. indic. and imperative is **redire**. The others have **-sez**, except **maudire**, which has **-ssez**.

544. Être. For full conjugation, see **508.**

545. Faire, *to do, make.*

Pres. Indicative	fais, fais, fait, faisons, faites, font
Imperative	fais, faisons, faites
Pres. Infinitive	faire
Future	ferai, etc.
Past Future / Conditional	ferais, etc.
Pres. Participle	faisant
Past Descriptive	faisais, etc.
Pres. Subjunctive	fasse, fasses, fasse, fassions, fassiez, fassent
Past Absolute	fis, fis, fit, fîmes, fîtes, firent
Past Subjunctive	fisse, fisses, fît, fissions, fissiez, fissent
Past Participle	fait
Pres. Perfect	j'ai fait, etc.

546. Frire, *to fry.*

Pres. Indicative	fris, fris, frit, (*pl. wanting*)
Imperative	fris (*pl. wanting*)
Pres. Infinitive	frire
Future	frirai, etc.
Past Future / Conditional	frirais, etc.
Past Participle	frit
Pres. Perfect	j'ai frit, etc.

547. Lire, *to read.*

Pres. Indicative	lis, lis, lit, lisons, lisez, lisent
Imperative	lis, lisons, lisez
Pres. Infinitive	lire
Future	lirai, etc.
Past Future / Conditional	lirais, etc.
Pres. Participle	lisant
Past Descriptive	lisais, etc.
Pres. Subjunctive	lise, lises, lise, lisions, lisiez, lisent
Past Absolute	lus, lus, lut, lûmes, lûtes, lurent
Past Subjunctive	lusse, lusses, lût, lussions, lussiez, lussent
Past Participle	lu
Pres. Perfect	j'ai lu, etc.

548. Mettre, *to put, place.*

Pres. Indicative	mets, mets, met, mettons, mettez, mettent
Imperative	mets, mettons, mettez
Pres. Infinitive	mettre
Future	mettrai, etc.
Past Future / Conditional	mettrais, etc.
Pres. Participle	mettant
Past Descriptive	mettais, etc.
Pres. Subjunctive	mette, mettes, mette, mettions, mettiez, mettent
Past Absolute	mis, mis, mit, mîmes, mîtes, mirent
Past Subjunctive	misse, misses, mît, missions, missiez, missent
Past Participle	mis
Pres. Perfect	j'ai mis, etc.

549. Moudre, *to grind.*

Pres. Indicative	mouds, mouds, moud, moulons, moulez, moulent
Imperative	mouds, moulons, moulez
Pres. Infinitive	moudre
Future	moudrai, etc.
Past Future / Conditional	moudrais, etc.
Pres. Participle	moulant
Past Descriptive	moulais, etc.
Pres. Subjunctive	moule, moules, moule, moulions, mouliez, moulent
Past Absolute	moulus, moulus, moulut, moulûmes, moulûtes, moulurent
Past Subjunctive	moulusse, moulusses, moulût, moulussions, moulussiez, moulussent
Past Participle	moulu
Pres. Perfect	j'ai moulu, etc.

550. Naître, *to be born.*

Pres. Indicative	nais, nais, naît, naissons, naissez, naissent
Imperative	nais, naissons, naissez
Pres. Infinitive	naître
Future	naîtrai, etc.
Past Future / Conditional	naîtrais, etc.
Pres. Participle	naissant
Past Descriptive	naissais, etc.
Pres. Subjunctive	naisse, naisses, naisse, naissions, naissiez, naissent

Past Absolute	naquis, naquis, naquit, naquîmes, naquîtes, naquirent
Past Subjunctive	naquisse, naquisses, naquît, naquissions, naquissiez, naquissent
Past Participle	né
Pres. Perfect	je suis né, etc.

551. Plaire, *to please.*

Pres. Indicative	plais, plais, plaît, plaisons, plaisez, plaisent
Imperative	plais, plaisons, plaisez
Pres. Infinitive	plaire
Future	plairai, etc.
Past Future / Conditional	plairais, etc.
Pres. Participle	plaisant
Past Descriptive	plaisais, etc.
Pres. Subjunctive	plaise, plaises, plaise, plaisions, plaisiez, plaisent
Past Absolute	plus, plus, plut, plûmes, plûtes, plurent
Past Subjunctive	plusse, plusses, plût, plussions, plussiez, plussent
Past Participle	plu
Pres. Perfect	j'ai plu

552. Prendre, *to take.*

Pres. Indicative	prends, prends, prend, prenons, prenez, prennent
Imperative	prends, prenons, prenez
Pres. Infinitive	prendre
Future	prendrai, etc.
Past Future / Conditional	prendrais, etc.
Pres Participle	prenant
Past Descriptive	prenais, etc.
Pres. Subjunctive	prenne, prennes, prenne, prenions, preniez, prennent
Past Absolute	pris, pris, prit, prîmes, prîtes, prirent
Past Subjunctive	prisse, prisses, prît, prissions, prissiez, prissent
Past Participle	pris
Pres. Perfect	j'ai pris, etc.

553. Résoudre, *to resolve.*

Pres. Indicative	résous, résous, résout, résolvons, résolvez, résolvent
Imperative	résous, résolvons, résolvez
Pres. Infinitive	résoudre
Future	résoudrai, etc.
Past Future / Conditional	résoudrais, etc.

Pres. Participle	**résolvant**
Past Descriptive	**résolvais**, etc.
Pres. Subjunctive	**résolve, résolves, résolve, résolvions, résolviez, résolvent**
Past Absolute	**résolus, résolus, résolut, résolûmes, résolûtes, résolurent**
Past Subjunctive	**résolusse, résolusses, résolût, résolussions, résolussiez, resolussent**
Past Participle	**résolu, résous**
Pres. Perfect	**j'ai résolu**, etc.

NOTE: **Dissoudre** has two past participles, **dissolu**, *dissolute*, and **dissous** (*f.* **dissoute**), *dissolved* (*of chemical solutions*).

554. Rire, *to laugh.*

Pres. Indicative	**ris, ris, rit, rions, riez, rient**
Imperative	**ris, rions, riez**
Pres. Infinitive	**rire**
Future	**rirai**, etc.
Past Future / Conditional	**rirais**, etc.
Pres. Participle	**riant**
Past Descriptive	**riais**, etc.
Pres. Subjunctive	**rie, ries, rie, riions, riiez, rient**
Past Absolute	**ris, ris, rit, rîmes, rîtes, rirent**
Past Subjunctive	**risse, risses, rît, rissions, rissiez, rissent**
Past Participle	**ri**
Pres. Perfect	**j'ai ri**

555. Sourdre,[1] *to rise.*

Pres. Indicative	**—, —, sourd, —, —, sourdent**
Pres. Infinitive	**sourdre**
Future	**il sourdra**
Past Future / Conditional	**il sourdrait**
Pres. Participle	**sourdant**
Past Descriptive	**il sourdait**
Pres. Subjunctive	**il sourde**
Past Absolute	**il sourdit**
Past Subjunctive	**il sourdît**
Past Participle	*wanting*

[1] Only the infinitive and the third singular and plural of the present indicative in use at present.

/ 556. Suivre, *to follow.*

Pres. Indicative	suis, suis, suit, suivons, suivez, suivent
Imperative	suis, suivons, suivez
Pres. Infinitive	suivre
Future	suivrai, etc.
Past Future / Conditional	suivrais, etc.
Pres. Participle	suivant
Past Descriptive	suivais, etc.
Pres. Subjunctive	suive, suives, suive, suivions, suiviez, suivent
Past Absolute	suivis, suivis, suivit, suivîmes, suivîtes, suivirent
Past Subjunctive	suivisse, suivisses, suivît, suivissions, suivissiez, suivissent
Past Participle	suivi
Pres. Perfect	j'ai suivi, etc.

557. Tistre, *to weave* (obsolete).

Past Participle	tissu
Pres. Perfect	j'ai tissu, etc.

Only the past participle and the compound tenses in use. Replaced by tisser.

/ 558. Traire, *to milk.*

Pres. Indicative	trais, trais, trait, trayons, trayez, traient
Imperative	trais, trayons, trayez
Pres. Infinitive	traire
Future	trairai, etc.
Past Future / Conditional	trairais, etc.
Pres. Participle	trayant
Past Descriptive	trayais, etc.
Pres. Subjunctive	traie, traies, traie, trayions, trayiez, traient
Past Absolute	*wanting*
Past Subjunctive	*wanting*
Past Participle	trait
Pres. Perfect	j'ai trait, etc.

/ 559. Vaincre, *to conquer.*

Pres. Indicative	vaincs, vaincs, vainc, vainquons, vainquez, vainquent
Imperative	vaincs, vainquons, vainquez
Pres. Infinitive	vaincre
Future	vaincrai, etc.
Past Future / Conditional	vaincrais, etc.

Pres. Participle	vainquant
Past Descriptive	vainquais, etc.
Pres. Subjunctive	vainque, vainques, vainque, vainquions, vainquiez, vainquent
Past Absolute	vainquis, vainquis, vainquit, vainquîmes, vainquîtes, vainquirent
Past Subjunctive	vainquisse, vainquisses, vainquît, vainquissions, vainquissiez, vainquissent
Past Participle	vaincu
Pres. Perfect	j'ai vaincu, etc.

560. Vivre, *to live.*

Pres. Indicative	vis, vis, vit, vivons, vivez, vivent
Imperative	vis, vivons, vivez
Pres. Infinitive	vivre
Future	vivrai, etc.
Past Future / Conditional	vivrais, etc.
Pres. Participle	vivant
Past Descriptive	vivais, etc.
Pres. Subjunctive	vive, vives, vive, vivions, viviez, vivent
Past Absolute	vécus, vécus, vécut, vécûmes, vécûtes, vécurent
Past Subjunctive	vécusse, vécusses, vécût, vécussions, vécussiez, vécussent
Past Participle	vécu
Pres. Perfect	j'ai vécu

561. Asseoir, *to seat.*

Pres. Indicative	assieds, assieds, assied, asseyons, asseyez, asseyent *or* assois, assois, assoit, assoyons, assoyez, assoient
Imperative	assieds, asseyons, asseyez, *or* assois, assoyons, assoyez
Pres. Infinitive	asseoir
Future	assiérai, *or* asseyerai, *or* assoirai, etc.
Past Future / Conditional	assiérais, *or* asseyerais, *or* assoirais, etc.
Pres. Participle	asseyant, *or* assoyant
Past Descriptive	asseyais, *or* assoyais, etc.
Pres. Subjunctive	asseye, etc., *or* assoie, assoies, assoie, assoyions, assoyiez, assoient
Past Absolute	assis, assis, assit, assîmes, assîtes, assirent
Past Subjunctive	assisse, assisses, assît, assissions, assissiez, assissent
Past Participle	assis
Pres. Perfect	j'ai assis, etc.

562. avoir, *to have.* For complete conjugation of this verb, see **507.**

563. Déchoir, *to decay, decline.*

Pres. Indicative	déchois, déchois, déchoit, déchoyons, déchoyez, déchoient
Pres. Subjunctive	déchoie, déchoies, déchoie, déchoyions, déchoyiez, déchoient
Pres. Infinitive	déchoir
Future	décherrai, etc., *or* déchoirai
Past Future / Conditional	décherrais, etc., *or* déchoirais
Pres. Participle	*wanting*
Past Descriptive	*wanting*
Past Absolute	déchus, déchus, déchut, déchûmes, déchûtes, déchurent
Past Subjunctive	déchusse, déchusses, déchût, déchussions, déchussiez déchussent
Past Participle	déchu
Pres. Perfect	j'ai déchu, *or* je suis déchu

564. Devoir, *to owe.*

Pres. Indicative	dois, dois, doit, devons, devez, doivent
Imperative	dois, devons, devez
Pres. Subjunctive	doive, doives, doive, devions, deviez, doivent
Pres. Infinitive	devoir
Future	devrai, etc.
Past Future / Conditional	devrais, etc.
Pres. Participle	devant
Past Descriptive	devais, etc.
Past Absolute	dus, dus, dut, dûmes, dûtes, durent
Past Subjunctive	dusse, dusses, dût, dussions, dussiez, dussent
Past Participle	dû (*f.* due)
Pres. Perfect	j'ai dû, etc.

565. Échoir, *to fall due, expire.*

Pres. Indicative	il échoit, ils échoient
Pres. Subjunctive	il échoie, *or* il échée, ils echéent
Imperative	*wanting*
Pres. Infinitive	échoir
Future	il écherra, (*or* échoira), ils écherront
Past Future / Conditional	il écherrait, (*or* échoirait), ils écherraient
Prés. Participle	échéant
Past Descriptive	il échéait, échéaient

Past Absolute	**il échut, ils échurent**
Past Subjunctive	**il échût, ils échussent**
Past Participle	**échu**
Pres. Perfect	**il est échu, ils sont échus**

566. Falloir, *to be necessary.*

Pres. Indicative	**il faut**
Imperative	*wanting*
Pres. Infinitive	**falloir**
Future	**il faudra**
Past Future / Conditional	**il faudrait**
Pres. Participle	*wanting*
Past Descriptive	**il fallait**
Pres. Subjunctive	**il faille**
Past Absolute	**il fallut**
Past Subjunctive	**il fallût**
Past Participle	**fallu**
Pres. Perfect	**il a fallu**, etc.

The third singular of the other compound tenses is also in use.

567. Mouvoir, *to move.*

Pres. Indicative	**meus, meus, meut, mouvons, mouvez, meuvent**
Pres. Subjunctive	**meuve, meuves, meuve, mouvions, mouviez, meuvent**
Imperative	**meus, mouvons, mouvez**
Pres. Infinitive	**mouvoir**
Future	**mouvrai**, etc.
Past Future / Conditional	**mouvrais**, etc.
Pres. Participle	**mouvant**
Past Descriptive	**mouvais**, etc.
Past Absolute	**mus, mus, mut, mûmes, mûtes, murent**
Past Subjunctive	**musse, musses, mût, mussions, mussiez, mussent**
Past Participle	**mû** (*f.* **mue**)
Pres. Perfect	**j'ai mû**, etc.

568. Pleuvoir, *to rain*

Pres. Indicative	**il pleut**
Imperative	*wanting*
Pres. Infinitive	**pleuvoir**
Future	**il pleuvra**
Past Future / Conditional	**il pleuvrait**

Pres. Participle	pleuvant
Past Descriptive	il pleuvait
Pres. Subjunctive	il pleuve
Past Absolute	il plut
Past Subjunctive	il plût
Past Participle	plu
Pres. Perfect	il a plu

569. Pouvoir, *to be able.*

Pres. Indicative	peux (*or* puis), peux, peut, pouvons, pouvez, peuvent
Pres. Subjunctive	puisse, puisses, puisse, puissions, puissiez, puissent
Imperative	*wanting*
Pres. Infinitive	pouvoir
Future	pourrai, etc.
Past Future / Conditional	pourrais, etc.
Pres. Participle	pouvant
Past Descriptive	pouvais, etc.
Past Absolute	pus, pus, put, pûmes, pûtes, purent
Past Subjunctive	pusse, pusses, pût, pussions, pussiez, pussent
Past Participle	pu
Pres. Perfect	j'ai pu, etc.

570. Recevoir, *to receive.*

Pres. Indicative	reçois, reçois, reçoit, recevons, recevez, reçoivent
Pres. Subjunctive	reçoive, reçoives, reçoive, recevions, receviez, reçoivent
Imperative	reçois, recevons, recevez
Pres. Infinitive	recevoir
Future	recevrai, etc.
Past Future / Conditional	recevrais, etc.
Pres. Participle	recevant
Past Descriptive	recevais, etc.
Past Absolute	reçus, reçus, reçut, reçûmes, reçûtes, reçurent
Past Subjunctive	reçusse, reçusses, reçût, reçussions, reçussiez, reçussent
Past Participle	reçu
Pres. Perfect	j'ai reçu, etc.

571. Savoir, *to know.*

Pres. Indicative	sais, sais, sait, savons, savez, savent
Past Descriptive	savais, etc.

Pres. Infinitive	**savoir**
Future	**saurai**, etc.
Past Future / Conditional	**saurais**, etc.
Pres. Participle	**sachant**
Pres. Subjunctive	**sache, saches, sache, sachions, sachiez, sachent**
Imperative	**sache, sachons, sachez**
Past Absolute	**sus, sus, sut, sûmes, sûtes, surent**
Past Subjunctive	**susse, susses, sût, sussions, sussiez, sussent**
Past Participle	**su**
Pres. Perfect	**j'ai su**, etc.

572. Valoir, *to be worth.*

Pres. Indicative	**vaux, vaux, vaut, valons, valez, valent**
Imperative	**vaux, valons, valez**
Pres. Infinitive	**valoir**
Future	**vaudrai**, etc.
Past Future / Conditional	**vaudrais**, etc.
Pres. Participle	**valant**
Past Descriptive	**valais**, etc.
Pres. Subjunctive	**vaille, vailles, vaille, valions, valiez, vaillent**
Past Absolute	**valus, valus, valut, valûmes, valûtes, valurent**
Past Subjunctive	**valusse, valusses, valût, valussions, valussiez, valussent**
Past Participle	**valu**
Pres. Perfect	**j'ai valu**, etc.

573. Voir, *to see.*

Pres. Indicative	**vois, vois, voit, voyons, voyez, voient**
Pres. Subjunctive	**voie, voies, voie, voyions, voyiez, voient**
Imperative	**vois, voyons, voyez**
Pres. Infinitive	**voir**
Future	**verrai**, etc.
Past Future / Conditional	**verrais**, etc.
Pres. Participle	**voyant**
Past Descriptive	**voyais**, etc.
Past Absolute	**vis, vis, vit, vîmes, vîtes, virent**
Past Subjunctive	**visse, visses, vît, vissions, vissiez, vissent**
Past Participle	**vu**
Pres. Perfect	**j'ai vu**, etc.

574. Vouloir, *to wish, will.*

Pres. Indicative	**veux, veux, veut, voulons, voulez, veulent**
Imperative	**veuillez** [1]
Pres. Infinitive	**vouloir**
Future	**voudrai, etc.**
Past Future / Conditional	**voudrais, etc.**
Pres. Participle	**voulant**
Past Descriptive	**voulais, etc.**
Pres. Subjunctive	**veuille, veuilles, veuille, voulions, vouliez, veuillent**
Past Absolute	**voulus, voulus, voulut, voulûmes, voulûtes, voulurent**
Past Subjunctive	**voulusse, voulusses, voulût, voulussions, voulussiez, voulussent**
Past Participle	**voulu**
Pres. Perfect	**j'ai voulu, etc.**

[1] The regular imperative forms **veux, voulons, voulez** are seldom used, e.g. **veux et tu réussiras.** The second plural **veuillez** occurs regularly in the sense of *please, be so good as to,* etc.

575. List of Irregular and Defective Verbs.

(The number prefixed refers to the section containing the synopsis of the verb or the model for its conjugation.)

530. abattre, *to fell*
553. absoudre,[1] *to absolve*
527. abstenir, *to abstain*
557. abstraire, *to abstract*
518. accourir, *to run up, hasten*
540. accroire,[2] *to believe (that which is not true)*
541. accroître,[3] *to increase*
519. accueillir, *to welcome*
517. acquérir, *to acquire*
539. adjoindre, *to adjoin*
548. admettre, *to admit*
528. advenir,[4] *to happen*
515. aller, *to go*
570. apercevoir, *to perceive*
537. apparaître, *to appear*
537. apparoir,[5] *to appear*
527. appartenir, *to belong*
552. apprendre, *to learn*
519. assaillir,[6] *to assail*
561. asseoir, *to seat*

539. astreindre, *to compel*
539. atteindre, *to attain*
557. attraire, *to allure, entice*
528. avenir,[7] *to happen*
562. avoir, *to have*
530. battre, *to beat*
505. bénir,[8] *to bless*
531. boire, *to drink*
520. bouillir, *to boil*
557. braire,[9] *to bray*
532. bruire, *to murmur, rustle*
539. ceindre, *to enclose, gird on*
572. chaloir,[10] *to matter*
563. choir,[11] *to fall*
536. circoncire,[12] *to circumcise*
543. circonscrire, *to circumscribe*
528. circonvenir, *to circumvent*
533. clore, *to close, enclose*
530. combattre, *to fight, oppose*
548. commettre, *to commit*
537. comparaître, *to appear (law term)*
537. comparoir,[13] *to appear (in court)*
551. complaire, *to please*
552. comprendre, *to understand*
548. compromettre, *to compromise*
570. concevoir, *to conceive*
534. conclure, *to conclude*
518. concourir, *to coöperate, concur, compete*
535. conduire, *to conduct*
536. confire, *to preserve*
539. conjoindre, *to conjoin*
537. connaître, *to know*
517. conquérir, *to conquer*
520. consentir, *to consent*
535. construire, *to construct*
527. contenir, *to contain*
539. contraindre, *to constrain*
542. contredire,[14] *to contradict*
545. contrefaire, *to imitate*
528. contrevenir, *to violate*
559. convaincre, *to convince*
528. convenir, *to agree, suit*
538. coudre, *to sew*
518. courir, *to run*
518. courre,[15] *to chase (of hunting)*

526. couvrir, *to cover*
539. craindre, *to fear*
540. croire, *to believe*
541. croître, *to grow*
519. cueillir, *to gather, pick*
535. cuire, *to cook*
530. débattre, *to debate*
570. décevoir, *to deceive, disappoint*
563. déchoir, *to decay, decline*
532. déclore, *to throw open*
536. déconfire, *to discomfort*
535. déconstruire, *to take apart*
538. découdre, *to rip, unsew*
526. découvrir, *to discover*
543. décrire, *to describe*
540. décroire,[16] *to disbelieve, discredit*
541. décroître, *to decrease* (past participle **décru**)
542. dédire,[17] *to retract, deny*
535. déduire, *to deduct*
521. défaillir,[18] *to faint, fail*
545. défaire, *to undo*
539. déjoindre, *to disjoin*
520. démentir, *to contradict, belie*
548. démettre, *to dismiss*
520. départir, *to distribute*
539. dépeindre, *to depict*
551. déplaire, *to displease*
573. dépourvoir, *to leave destitute, unprovided*
552. déprendre, *to part, loosen*
552. désapprendre, *to unlearn*
520. desservir, *to clear the table*
539. déteindre, *to fade*
527. détenir, *to detain*
535. détruire, *to destroy*
528. devenir, *to become*
529. dévêtir, *to undress*
564. devoir, *to owe*
542. dire, *to say, tell*
528. disconvenir, *to be inconvenient, unsuitable, disagree*
518. discourir, *to discourse*
539. disjoindre, *to disjoin*
537. disparaître, *to disappear*
553. dissoudre,[19] *to dissolve*
557. distraire, *to distract*
520. dormir, *to sleep*

535. **duire**,[20] *to suit, fit*
520. **ébouillir**, *to boil away*
565. **échoir**, *to fall due*
533. **éclore**,[21] *to hatch, open (of flowers)*
535. **éconduire**, *to show out, dismiss*
543. **écrire**, *to write*
547. **élire**, *to elect*
531. **emboire**, *to coat (with oil or wax)*
548. **émettre**, *to emit, give out*
549. **émoudre**, *to whet, grind, sharpen*
567. **émouvoir**, *to move, excite*
539. **empreindre**, *to imprint, impress*
539. **enceindre**, *to inclose, encompass*
533. **enclore**,[22] *to inclose, fence in*
518. **encourir**, *to incur*
520. **endormir**, *to put to sleep, lull*
535. **enduire**, *to lay over, coat, smear*
539. **enfreindre**, *to infringe, violate*
522. **enfuir (s')**, *to flee, escape*
539. **enjoindre**, *to enjoin*
517. **enquérir (s')**, *to inquire*
556. **ensuivre**,[23] *to ensue*
548. **entremettre (s')**, *to interpose, meddle*
552. **entreprendre**, *to undertake*
527. **entretenir**, *to entertain*
573. **entrevoir**, *to catch sight of*
526. **entr'ouvrir**, *to open slightly*
516. **envoyer**, *to send*
539. **épreindre**, *to squeeze out*
552. **éprendre (s')**, *to become enamored (of)*
572. **équivaloir**, *to be equivalent*
539. **éteindre**, *to extinguish*
508. **être**, *to be*
503. **exclure**, *to exclude*
557. **extraire**, *to extract*
521. **faillir**, *to fail*
545. **faire**, *to do, make*
566. **falloir**, *to be necessary (impersonal)*
539. **feindre**, *to feign*
férir,[24] *to strike*
505. **fleurir**,[25] *to bloom, flourish*
533. **forclore**,[26] *to foreclose, estop*
545. **forfaire**, *to transgress*
546. **frire**, *to fry*
522. **fuir**, *to flee, shun*

539. geindre, *to groan*
523. gésir, *to lie*
524. haïr, *to hate*
531. imboire, *to imbibe, imbue*
534. inclure,[27] *to include, inclose*
535. induire, *to induce*
543. inscrire, *to inscribe*
535. instruire, *to instruct*
542. interdire,[28] *to interdict*
528. intervenir, *to intervene*
535. introduire, *to introduce*
issir,[29] *to issue*
539. joindre, *to join*
547. lire, *to read*
535. luire,[30] *to shine*
527. maintenir, *to maintain*
545. malfaire,[31] *to do evil*
542. maudire,[32] *to curse, imprecate*
537. méconnaître, *to fail to recognize, misjudge*
542. médire [33] (de), *to slander*
545. méfaire, *to harm*
520. mentir, *to tell an untruth*
552. méprendre (se), *to be mistaken*
561. messeoir,[34] *to be unbecoming, unsuitable*
548. mettre, *to place, put*
549. moudre, *to grind*
525. mourir, *to die*
567. mouvoir, *to move*
550. naître, *to be born*
535. nuire,[35] *to injure*
527. obtenir, *to obtain*
526. offrir, *to offer*
539. oindre, *to anoint*
548. omettre, *to omit*
ouïr,[36] *to hear*
526. ouvrir, *to open*
537. paître,[37] *to graze*
537. paraître, *to appear*
518. parcourir, *to run over*
545. parfaire, *to complete*
520. partir, *to set out*
528. parvenir, *to attain, arrive*
539. peindre, *to paint*
570. percevoir, *to collect (of taxes), perceive*
548. permettre, *to permit*

539. **plaindre,** *to pity*
551. **plaire,** *to please*
568. **pleuvoir,** *to rain (impersonal)*
539. **poindre,**[38] *to dawn, begin to grow*
556. **poursuivre,** *to pursue*
573. **pourvoir,**[39] *to provide*
569. **pouvoir,** *to be able, can*
542. **prédire,**[40] *to predict*
552. **prendre,** *to take*
543. **prescrire,** *to prescribe*
520. **pressentir,** *to foresee, have a presentiment of*
572. **prévaloir,**[41] *to prevail*
528. **prévenir,** *to precede, prevent*
573. **prévoir,**[42] *to foresee*
535. **produire,** *to produce*
548. **promettre,** *to promise*
567. **promouvoir,**[43] *to promote*
543. **proscrire,** *to proscribe*
528. **provenir,** *to proceed*
517. **querir** *or* **quérir,**[44] *to seek*
530. **rabattre,** *to beat down, press down (of a seam)*
552. **rapprendre,** *to learn again*
561. **rasseoir,** *to seat again*
539. **ratteindre,** *to overtake, retake*
507. **ravoir,**[45] *to have again*
531. **reboire,** *to drink again*
520. **rebouillir,** *to boil again*
570. **recevoir,** *to receive*
563. **rechoir,**[46] *to fall again, lapse*
534. **reclure,**[47] *to shut up*
535. **reconduire,** *to lead back*
537. **reconnaître,** *to recognize*
517. **reconquérir,** *to reconquer*
535. **reconstruire,** *to reconstruct*
538. **recoudre,** *to sew again*
518. **recourir,** *to run again, apply, have recourse to*
526. **recouvrir,** *to cover again, conceal*
543. **récrire,** *to rewrite*
541. **recroître,** *to grow again*
519. **recueillir,** *to gather, collect*
535. **recuire,** *to cook again*
545. **redéfaire,** *to undo again*
528. **redevenir,** *to become again*
564. **redevoir,** *to still owe*
542. **redire,** *to say again*

520. redormir, *to sleep again*
535. réduire, *to reduce*
547. réélire, *to re-elect*
545. refaire, *to do again*
539. rejoindre, *to rejoin*
547. relire, *to read again*
535. reluire,[48] *to glisten*
548. remettre, *to put back, hand to*
549. remoudre, *to regrind (corn)*
549. rémoudre, *to sharpen again*
550. renaître, *to be born again, grow again, revive*
520. rendormir, *to put to sleep again*
557. rentraire, *to darn*
516. renvoyer, *to send away, dismiss*
537. repaître, *to feed, nourish*
537. reparaître, *to reappear*
520. repartir, *to set out again, reply*
539. repeindre, *to paint again, retouch*
520. repentir (se), *to repent, rue*
552. reprendre, *to take back, recover, resume*
535. reproduire, *to reproduce*
548. repromettre, *to promise again*
517. requérir, *to require, claim*
553. résoudre, *to resolve*
520. ressentir, *to feel, resent*
520. ressortir, *to go out again*
528. ressouvenir (se), *to recollect*
539. restreindre, *to restrict, limit*
539. reteindre, *to dye again*
527. retenir, *to retain*
557. retraire, *to redeem*
572. revaloir, *to pay back, get even with*
528. revenir, *to come back*
529. revêtir, *to clothe, invest*
560. revivre, *to revive*
573. revoir, *to see again*
554. rire, *to laugh*
526. rouvrir, *to open again*
519. saillir,[49] *to jut out, protrude*
545. satisfaire, *to satisfy*
571. savoir, *to know, know how to*
518. secourir, *to succor, help*
535. séduire, *to seduce*
520. sentir, *to feel, perceive*
561. seoir,[50] *to be becoming, fit, suit*

520. **servir,** *to serve*
520. **sortir,** *to go out*
526. **souffrir,** *to suffer, endure, tolerate*
548. **soumettre,** *to submit*
555. **sourdre,** *to issue, gush out, rise (of a cloud)*
554. **sourire,** *to smile*
543. **souscrire,** *to subscribe*
557. **soustraire,** *to substract*
527. **soutenir,** *to sustain*
528. **souvenir (se),** *to recollect, remember*
528. **subvenir,** *to aid, meet the expenses*
536. **suffire,**[51] *to suffice*
556. **suivre,** *to follow*
541. **surcroître,** *to overgrow*
545. **surfaire,** *to overcharge for, exaggerate*
552. **surprendre,** *to surprise*
561. **surseoir,**[52] *to suspend, reprieve*
528. **survenir,** *to occur*
560. **survivre,** *to survive*
551. **taire,**[53] *to pass over in silence, suppress*
539. **teindre,** *to dye*
527. **tenir,** *to hold*
558. **tistre,** *to weave*
535. **traduire,** *to translate*
557. **traire,** *to milk*
543. **transcrire,** *to transcribe*
548. **transmettre,** *to transmit*
519. **tressaillir,**[6] *to start, tremble*
559. **vaincre,** *to conquer*
572. **valoir,** *to be worth*
528. **venir,** *to come*
529. **vêtir,** *to clothe*
560. **vivre,** *to live*
573. **voir,** *to see*
574. **vouloir,** *to wish, will, want, be willing*

NOTES

[1] The past absolute and past subjunctive are wanting. The past participle is **absous** (*f.* **absoute**).

[2] **Accroire** occurs only in **faire accroire,** *to cause to believe what is not true.*

[3] The past participle has no circumflex.

[4] Used only in the third singular and in the infinitive.

[5] **Apparoir** (variant of **apparaître**) used only in infinitive and in the phrase **il appert,** *it appears.*

[6] Regular in future and in past future and conditional **assaillirai**, etc., **assaillirais**, etc.

[7] Impersonal. A popular form of **advenir**.

[8] **Bénir** is like **finir**, except that it has two past participles, **béni**, and **bénit**, the latter being used only as an adjective. **De l'eau bénite**, *holy water*.

[9] Used in the infinitive and the third person singular and plural of the present indicative, future, past future and conditional.

[10] Used impersonally and only in the present indicative. **Il ne m'en chaut.** *That does not interest me.*

[11] Hardly used except in the infinitive and past participle (**chu**).

[12] The past participle of **circoncire** is **circoncis**.

[13] **Comparoir** (variant of **comparaître**) occurs only in the infinitive and present participle **comparant**.

[14] The second plural present indicative and imperative is **contredisez**.

[15] **Courre** (variant of **courir**), *to hunt*, used only in the infinitive. **Laisser courre**, *to slip the hounds*.

[16] Occurs only in **je ne crois ni ne décrois**, *I neither believe nor disbelieve*.

[17] The second plural present indicative and imperative of **dédire** is **dédisez**.

[18] The following persons and tenses of this verb are in use: Present Indicative **nous défaillons, vous défaillez, ils défaillent**; Past Descriptive **je défaillais**, etc.; Past Absolute **je défaillis**, etc.; the compound tenses **j'ai défailli**, etc. One also uses sometimes the present indicative singular **je défaux, tu défaus, il défaut**; the future **je défaudrai**; the conditional, **je défaudrais**. The present participle is **défaillant**.

[19] The past participle is **dissous** (*f.* **dissoute**).

[20] The following forms are given by Littré: **il duit, ils duisent, il duisait, il duira, il duirait**.

[21] **Éclore** occurs in the 3rd singular and plural, present indicative, future, conditional, present subjunctive, and in the past participle.

[22] **Enclore** is conjugated like **clore**.

[23] **Ensuivre** (**s'**) is used impersonally. **Il s'ensuit**, *it follows*.

[24] **Férir** is used only in the infinitive and past participle, **féru**, *wounded, smitten*. **Sans coup férir**, *without striking a blow*.

[25] **Fleurir** also has a second present participle and past descriptive, **florissant, florissais**, etc., from the old infinitive **florir**. The forms with **o** are always used in a figurative sense.

[26] Scarcely occurs except in the present infinitive and past participle.

[27] The past participle of **inclure** is **inclus**.

[28] The second plural present indicative and imperative of **interdire** is **interdisez**.

[29] Used in past participle (**issu**).

[30] Past participle of **luire** is **lui**.

[31] Occurs only in infinitive.

[32] **Maudire** is like **dire** in the infinitive and past participle; otherwise, it is like **finir**.

[33] The second plural present indicative and imperative of **médire** is **médisez**.

[34] Occurs in the third person present indicative, **messied, messiéent**; past descriptive, **messeyait, messeyaient**; future, **messiéra, messiéront**; **messiérait, messiéraient,** pres. participle **messeyant,** and compound tenses.

[35] The past participle is **nui.**

[36] Used in the infinitive and past participle. **J'ai ouï dire.** *I have heard said.*

[37] The past absolute, past subjunctive and past participle are wanting.

[38] Rare as transitive, *to prick.*

[39] Past absolute **pourvus,** etc.; past subjunctive **pourvusse**; future **pourvoirai,** etc.; past future and conditional **pourvoirais,** etc.

[40] The second plural present indicative and imperative is **prédisez.**

[41] Present subjunctive of **prévaloir** is **prévale,** etc.

[42] Future **prévoirai,** etc.; past future and conditional **prévoirais,** etc.

[43] Used in the compound tenses. The past participle is **promu.**

[44] Only the present infinitive is in use.

[45] Used only in the present infinitive.

[46] Not used except in infinitive and past participle (**rechu**).

[47] Used only in the infinitive and compound tenses.

[48] The past participle is **relui.**

[49] **Saillir,** *to gush out,* is used especially in the infinitive and in the third person present indicative **saillit**; past descriptive **saillissait**; past absolute **saillit**; future **saillira**; present participle **saillissant**; past participle **sailli.**

[50] Used as follows: Present indicative **sied, siéent**; past descriptive **seyait, seyaient**; future, **siéra, siéront**; past future and conditional **siérait, siéraient**; and also the present participle, **seyant, séant.**

[51] The past participle of **suffire** is **suffi.**

[52] Like the **oi** (**oy**) forms of **asseoir,** but the future is **surseoirai,** etc.; the past future and conditional, **surseoirais,** etc.

[53] **Taire** is conjugated like **plaire,** but has a feminine past participle **tue,** and the third singular, pres. indicative, has no circumflex.

FRENCH–ENGLISH VOCABULARY

A

a [a] *pres. indic. 3rd sing. of* **avoir**
à [a] *prep.* at, to, in, on, by, with; *distributive,* by; *with places,* at, to, in, on; *with attendant circumstance,* with; *denoting function,* for; *with certain verbs,* for
abonné [abɔne] *m.* subscriber
abonnement [abɔnmɑ̃] *m.* subscription
abonner (s') [s abɔne] to subscribe
abord (d') [d abɔːr] *adv.* at first, in the first place
abstenir (s') [s apstəniːr] to abstain
accident (aksidɑ̃] *m.* accident
accompagner [akɔ̃paɲe] to accompany
accomplir [akɔ̃pliːr] to accomplish
accorder [akɔrde] to accord, grant
achat [aʃa] *m.* purchase
acheter [aʃte] to buy
acquérir [akeriːr] to acquire
acquitter [akite] to pay, pay off
acte [akt] *m.* act
acteur [aktœːr] *m.* actor
actif [aktif] *adj.* active
actrice [aktris] *f.* actress
addition [adisjɔ̃] *f.* addition, (*in restaurant*) bill, reckoning
adepte [adɛpt] *m.* adept
adieu [adjø] *m.* farewell, goodbye
admettre [admɛtr] to admit
admirer [admire] to admire
adorer [adɔre] to adore, worship
adresse [adrɛs] *f.* address; **écrire l'— sur une lettre** to address a letter
adresser [adrɛse] to address; **s'— à** to apply to
aéroplane [aerɔplan] *m.* aeroplane
affairé [afɛre] *adj.* busy
affaire [afɛːr] *f.* affair
affaires [afɛːr] *f. pl.* business, things; **être dans les —** to be in business
affiche [afiʃ] *f.* placard, notice
affranchir [afrɑ̃ʃiːr] to prepay, stamp
affranchissement [afrɑ̃ʃismɑ̃] *m.* freedom, liberation
afin de [afɛ̃ də] *prep.* in order to
afin que [afɛ̃ kə] *conj.* in order that
âge [aːʒ] *m.* age
âgé [aʒe] *adj.* old, aged
agence [aʒɑ̃ːs] *f.* agency; **— de la compagnie maritime** agency of steamship company
agent [aʒɑ̃] *m.* agent; **— de police** policeman
agité [aʒite] *past partic.* excited
agréable [agreabl] *adj.* agreeable, pleasant; **rendre —** to make agreeable
agriculture [agrikyltyːr] *f.* agriculture, farming
ai [e] *pres. indic.* 1*st sing. of* **avoir**
aie [ɛ] *pres. subj.* 1*st sing. of* **avoir**
aille [aːj] *pres. subj.* 1*st and 3rd pers. sing. of* **aller**
ailleurs (d') [d ajœːr] *adv.* moreover
aimer [ɛme] to like, be fond of; **— mieux** to prefer
ainsi [ɛ̃si] *adv.* thus, so
ait [ɛ] *pres. subj. 3rd sing. of* **avoir**
aller [ale] to go, (*referring to health*) to be, (*of clothes*) to fit; **s'en —** to go away
allo [alo] *interj.* hello (*at the telephone*)
alors [alɔːr], *adv.* then
amant [amɑ̃] *m.* lover
amateur [amatœːr] *m.* amateur, one who practises an art as a non-professional.
ambition [ɑ̃bisjɔ̃] *f.* ambition
américain [amerikɛ̃] *adj.* American
Amérique [amerik] *f.* America
ami, amie [ami] *m. f.* friend
amitié [amitje] *f.* friendship
amusant [amyzɑ̃] *adj.* amusing
amuser (s') [s amyze] to enjoy one's self, have a good time; **s'— à**

(+ *infinitive*) to enjoy doing something
an [ɑ̃] *m.* year
ancien, ancienne [ɑ̃sjɛ̃, ɑ̃sjɛn] *adj.* ancient, former
angle [ɑ̃:gl] *m.* angle, corner
Angleterre [ɑ̃glətɛ:r] *f.* England
animal [animal] *m.* animal
année [ane] *f.* year
anniversaire [aniversɛ:r] *m.* anniversary
annonce [anõ:s] *f.* advertisement
annoncer [anõse] to announce
appartenir [apartəni:r] to belong
appel [apɛl] *m.* call
appeler [aple] to call; **s'—** to be called *or* named
applaudir [aplodi:r] to applaud
apporter [apɔrte] to bring
apprendre [aprɑ̃:dr] to learn
approcher (s') de [s aprɔʃe də] to approach
approuver [apruve] to approve
après [aprɛ] *prep.* after
après-midi [aprɛ midi] *m. f.* afternoon
aptitude [aptityd] *f.* aptitude, talent
arbre [arbr] *m.* tree
ardeur [ardœ:r] *f.* ardor, enthusiasm
argent [arʒɑ̃] *m.* money, silver
armée [arme] *f.* army
arracher [araʃe] to tear out *or* away
arranger [arɑ̃ʒe] to arrange
arrêt [arɛ] *m.* stop, stopping-place
arrêter [arɛte] to stop (*trans.*); **s'—** to stop (*intrans.*)
arrivée [arive] *f.* arrival
arriver [arive] to arrive
art [a:r] *m.* art
article [artikl] *m.* article; **— de fond** editorial
aspect [aspɛ] *m.* aspect, appearance, looks, phase
assassin [asasɛ̃] *m.* assassin
asseoir (s') [s aswa:r] to sit down, be seated
assez (ase] *adv. n.* enough, sufficently
assiduité [asidɥite] *f.* assiduity, diligence, perseverance
assister (à) [asiste a] to be present at, to attend
athlétique [atletik] *adj.* athletic
attendre [atɑ̃:dr] to wait for, await; **s' — à** expect; **en attendant** — meanwhile
attente [atɑ̃:t] *f.* expectation, waiting; **salle d'—** *f.* waiting room
attentivement [atɑ̃tivmɑ̃] *adv.* attentively
attirer [atire] to attract, draw
attrayant [atrɛjɑ̃] *adj.* attractive
aucun, aucune [okœ̃, okyn] *adj., pron.* any, any one, any one at all, (*with negative*) no, none, no one
auditoire [oditwa:r] *m.* audience
aujourd'hui [ɔʒurdɥi] *adv.* today
auparavant [oparavɑ̃] *adv.* before
auprès de [oprɛ də] *prep.* near
aussi [osi] *adv.* also
aussitôt [osito] *adv.* immediately; **— que** as soon as
auteur [otœ:r] *m.* author
autobus [otɔbys] *m.* motor car
automne [otɔn] *m. f.* autumn; **en —** in autumn
automobile [otɔmɔbil] *m. f.* automobile
autre [otr] *adj.* other; **l'un et l'—** both; **l'un ou l'—** either one; **ni l'un ni l'—** neither one; **les uns les —s** each other, one another, both
autrefois [otrəfwa] *adv.* formerly
autrement [otrəmɑ̃] *adv.* otherwise
avance [avɑ̃:s] *f.* advance; **d'—** in advance; **en —** ahead of time
avant [avɑ̃] *prep.* before; **— de** (+ *infin.*) before
avarice [avaris] *f.* avarice
avec [avɛk] *prep.* with
avenir [avni:r] *m.* future
aventure [avɑ̃ty:r] *f.* adventure, experience
avocat [avɔka] *m.* lawyer
avoir [avwa:r] to have; **il y a** there is (are); **— besoin de** to need, have need of; **— faim** to be hungry; **— raison** to be right; **— soif** to be thirsty; **— tort** to be wrong; **— chaud, froid** to be warm, cold
avril [avril] *m.* April
ayant [ɛjɑ̃] *pres. partic. of* **avoir**

ayons [ejɔ̃] *pres. subj. 1st pers. plur. of* **avoir**

B

bagages [bagaʒ] *m. pl.* baggage; **salle des** — baggage room
baisser [bese] to lower
bal [bal] *m.* dance
banc [bɑ̃] *m.* seat, bench
bas [bɑ] **basse** [bɑs] *adj.* low
baseball [besbɔl] *m.* baseball; **jouer au** — to play baseball
bateau [bato] *m.* boat
bâtiment [bɑtimɑ̃] *m.* building
bâtir [bɑtiːr] to build
beau [bo] **bel, belle** [bel] *adj.* beautiful, handsome; **il fait** — (**temps**) it is fine weather
beaucoup [bokɑ] *adv. n.* much, many, a great deal; — **de monde** a great many people
bêche [bɛʃ] *f.* spade
bénéfice [benefis] *m.* profit
besoin [bezwɛ̃] *m.* need
betterave [betraːv] *f.* beet
beurre [bœːr] *m.* butter
bibliothèque [biblioteːk] *f.* library
bien [bjɛ̃] *adv.* well, very, very well; — **que** though, although; **eh** — well, well then
bientôt [bjɛ̃to] *adv.* soon; **à** — (*parting salutation*) good-bye for the present
bifteck [biftɛk] *m.* beefsteak
bijou [biʒu] *m.* jewel
billet [bije] *m.* ticket
blanc [blɑ̃] **blanche** [blɑ̃ʃ] *adj.* white
blé [ble] *m.* wheat
bœuf [bœf] *pl.* **bœufs** [bø] *m.* ox, beef
boire [bwaːr] to drink
bois [bwɑ] *m.* wood
boîte [bwaːt] *f.* box; — **aux lettres** letter box
bon [bɔ̃] **bonne** [bɔn] *adj.* good, kind
bonder [bɔ̃de] to crowd, to overflowing
bonne [bɔn] *f.* maid, servant
bonté [bɔ̃te] *f.* kindness, goodness
bord [boːr] *m.* shore, bank, edge; **le** — **de la mer** sea-shore; **à** — **de** on board (*of ship*)
boulevard [bulvaːr] *m.* boulevard
bourgeois [burʒwa] *m.* citizen of the middle class
bourse [burs] *f.* purse, stock exchange
bout [bu] *m.* end
boutique [butik] *f.* shop, store
boxe [bɔks] *f.* boxing
brebis [brəbi] *f.* sheep
brillant [brijɑ̃] *adj.* brilliant
brouillard [brujaːr] *m.* fog, mist
bruit [bruj] *m.* noise
bu [by] *past participle of* **boire**
buffet [byfɛ] *m.* refreshment room
bureau [byro] *m.* office; — **de poste** post office

C

ça [sa] *pron.* (*contracted and familiar form of* **cela**) that; **comme** — like that, so; **comme ci, comme** — so-so
cabine [kabin] *f.* (*on ship*) state-room, (*of telephone*) booth
cabinet [kabine] *m.* study, closet, office
cacher [kaʃe] to hide
cacheter [kaʃte] to seal
cadeau [kado] *m.* gift
café [kafe] *m.* coffee, coffee-house, restaurant; — **au lait** coffee with milk
cahier [kaje] *m.* notebook
caissier [kesje] *m.* cashier
calme [kalm] *adj.* calm, smooth
camp [kɔ̃] *m.* camp
campagne [kɔ̃pap] *f.* country; **à la** — in the country
canapé [kanape] *m.* sofa
canif [kanif] *m.* pen-knife
capitaine [kapitɛn] *m.* captain
caractère [karakteːr] *m.* character
carotte [karɔt] *f.* carrot
carte [kart] *f.* card, map; — **du jour** bill of fare; — **de visite** visiting card; — **à jouer** playing card
carte postale [kart postal] *f.* postal card
casque [kask] *m.* helmet
casquette [kasket] *f.* cap
causer [koze] to chat, talk
ce [sə] **cet** [set] **cette** [sɛt] *pl.* **ces** [se] *dem. adj.* this, that, these, those

ce [sə] *dem. pron.* this, that, these, those, he, she, it, they; — **qui** (**que**) that which, what; **c'est à lui** it belongs to him
ceci [səsi] *dem. pron.* this
cela [səla] *dem. pron.* that
cédille [sediːj] *f.* cedilla
ceindre [sɛ̃ːdr] to gird, gird on
célébration [selebrɑsjɔ̃] *f.* celebration
célèbre [selɛbr] *adj.* famous
célébrer [selebre] to celebrate
celle [sɛl] *dem. pron. f.* she, her, this, that
celui [səlɥi] *dem. pron. m.* this, that, he, him; — **qui** he who
cent [sɑ̃] *adj.* hundred
centaine [sɑ̃tɛn] *f.* about a hundred; **une — de fois** a hundred odd times
centime [sɑ̃tim] *m.* centime (*hundredth part of a franc*)
cependant [səpɑ̃dɑ̃] *adv.* nevertheless, however, meanwhile
certain [sɛrtɛ̃] *adj.* certain, sure
certainement [sɛrtɛnmɑ̃] *adv.* certainly
cesser [sese] to cease, leave off, discontinue
cerise [səriːz] *f.* cherry
ceux [sø] *dem. pron. plur.* of **celui**, these, those, they
chacun [ʃakœ̃] **chacune** [ʃakyn] *indef. pron.* each one, every one
chaise [ʃɛːz] *f.* chair
chaland [ʃalɑ̃] *m.* customer
chaleur [ʃalœːr] *f.* heat
chambre [ʃɑ̃ːbr] *f.* room
champ [ʃɑ̃] *m.* field
chanter [ʃɑ̃te] to sing
chapeau [ʃapo] *m.* hat
charger [ʃarʒe] to load, charge with
Charles [ʃarl] *m.* Charles
charmant [ʃarmɑ̃] *adj.* charming
charmer [ʃarme] to charm, enchant, delight
charrue [ʃary] *f.* plow
chat [ʃa] *m.* cat
chatte [ʃat] *f.* cat
chaud [ʃo] *adj.* warm, hot; **avoir —** to be warm (*of persons*); **il fait —** it is warm (*of weather*); **il est —** it is warm (*of inanimate object*)
chaudement [ʃodmɑ̃] *adv.* warmly
chauffeur [ʃofœːr] *m.* chauffeur, driver
chemin [ʃəmɛ̃] *m.* road; — **de fer** railroad; **en — de fer** by rail; by train; **avec, par le — de fer** by railroad
chemise [ʃəmiːz] *f.* shirt
chêne [ʃɛːn] *m.* oak
cher [ʃɛːr] *adj.* dear
chercher [ʃɛrʃe] to seek, look for, get
cheval [ʃəval] *m.* horse
cheveu, *pl.* **cheveux** [ʃəvø] *m.* hair
chez [ʃe] *prep.* in, at, to the house (*or* place) of; **il était — moi** he was at my house; **je vais — lui** I am going to his home
chien [ʃjɛ̃] *m.* dog
chocolat [ʃɔkɔla] *m.* chocolate
chose [ʃoːz] *f.* thing, object
chroniqueur [krɔnikœːr] *m.* chronicler, historian
cigare [sigaːr] *m.* cigar
cinéma [sinema] *m.* moving picture theatre
cinq [sɛ̃k] *adj.* five
cinquante [sɛ̃kɑ̃ːt] *adj.* fifty
cinquième [sɛ̃kjɛm] *adj.* fifth
circonscrire [sirkɔ̃skriːr] circumscribe, limit
citoyen [sitwajɛ̃] *m.* **citoyenne** [sitwajɛn] *f.* citizen
classe [klɑːs] *f.* class, schoolroom
classique [klasik] *adj.* classic, classical
clef [kle] *f.* key
clientèle [kliɑ̃tɛl] *f.* patronage, customers
coin [kwɛ̃] *m.* corner
colis [kɔli] *m.* package
coller [kɔle] to place, put on
combattre [kɔ̃batr] to fight
combien (de) [kɔ̃bjɛ̃ də] *adv.* how much, how many?
commander [kɔmɑ̃de] to order, command
comme [kɔm] *adv.* how, as, like
commencer [kɔmɑ̃se] to begin
comment [kɔmɑ̃] *adv.* how
commerce [kɔmɛrs] *m.* business, commerce
commis [kɔmi] *m.* clerk, salesman; — **voyageur** travelling salesman

commode [kɔmɔd] *adj.* convenient
communication [kɔmynikɑsjõ] *f.* communication
communiquer [kɔmynike] to communicate
compagnie [kõpaɲi] *f.* company; — **maritime** steamship company
compartiment [kõpartimã] *m.* compartment
complet [kõplɛ] *m.* suit of clothes
complet [kõplɛ] *adj.* full
compléter [kõplete] to complete
comprendre [kõprɑ̃:dr] to understand, include
compte [kõ:t] *m.* account, calculation; — **rendu** account, report, review
compter [kõte] to count, calculate, intend
comptoir [kõtwa:r] *m.* counter
comtesse [kõtɛs] *f.* countess
concert [kõsɛ:r] *m.* concert
concierge [kõsjɛrʒ] *m. f.* janitor, porter
concurrence [kõkyrã:s] *f.* competition; **faire** — to compete
concurrent [kõkyrã] *m.* competitor, rival
conduire [kõdɥi:r] to conduct, go to, lead to, drive
conférence [kõferã:s] *f.* lecture, conference
confortable [kõfɔrtabl] *adj.* comfortable (*applied to things only*)
confusion [kõfyzjõ] *f.* confusion
connaissance [kɔnɛsã:s] *f.* acquaintance, knowledge
connaître [kɔnɛ:tr] to be acquainted with, know
consacrer (à) [kõsakre a] to devote to
conseiller [kõseje] to advise
consentir [kõsãti:r] to consent
conséquence [kõsekã:s] *f.* consequence; **en** — consequently
conséquent [kõsekã] *m.* result; **par** — accordingly, consequently
conserver [kõserve] to keep, preserve
considérer [kõsidere] to consider
consister [kõsiste] (*with* **en**, *or* **dans** + *noun or* **à** + *infin.*) to consist in
consoler [kõsole] to console, comfort
constituer [kõstitɥe] to constitute
contenir [kõtni:r] to contain
content [kõtã] glad
contrôler [kõtrole] to inspect, verify (*of tickets*)
contrôleur [kõtrolœ:r] *m.* conductor (*on train*)
convaincre [kõvɛ̃:kr] to convince
convenable [kõvənabl] *adj.* fitting, suitable, proper
convenir [kõvni:r] to agree, suit, admit
conversation [kõvɛrsɑsjõ] *f.* conversation
convier [kõvje] to bid, invite
copier [kɔpje] to copy
coque [kɔk] *f.* shell; **œuf à la** — soft-boiled egg
corne [kɔrn] *f.* horn
corps [kɔ:r] *m.* body; — **de professeurs** faculty (*of university*)
cortège [kɔrtɛ:ʒ] *m.* procession, parade
côté [kote] *m.* side, direction; **de ce** — on this side; **à** — **de** beside, near; **de tous** —s in every direction
coudre [kudr] to sew
coup [ku] *m.* blow, stroke
courageux [kuraʒø] *adj.* brave
couramment [kuramã] *adv.* fluently
courir [kuri:r] to run
couronner [kurɔne] to crown
courrier [kurje] *m.* courier, mail
coucher [kuʃe] to put to bed; **se** — to go to bed
couleur [kulœ:r] *f.* color
couper [kupe] to cut
cours [ku:r] *m.* course
court [ku:r] *adj.* short
courtier [kurtje] *m.* broker, commission merchant, agent
cousin [kuzɛ̃] *m.* cousin
cousine [kuzin] *f.* cousin
couteau [kuto] *m.* knife
coûter [kute] to cost
coûteux [kutø] *adj.* costly, dear
couvert [kuvɛ:r] *m.* cover, place (*at table*)
couverture [kuvɛrty:r] *f.* cover, blanket; — **de voyage** steamer rug
couvrir [kuvri:r] to cover
crainte [krɛ̃:t] *f.* fear

crayon [krejõ] *m.* pencil
crier [krie] to cry, call out
croire [krwa:r] to believe
croissant [krwasã] *m.* crescent, crescent-shaped roll of bread
cruel [kryɛl] **cruelle** *adj.* cruel
cuire [kɥi:r] to cook
cuisine [kɥizin] *f.* kitchen
cultiver [kyltive] to cultivate
culte [kylt] *m.* devotion (to)

D

dame [dam] *f.* lady
danger [dãʒe] *m.* danger
dangereux [dãʒrø] *adj.* dangerous
dans [dã] *prep.* in, into
danser [dãse] to dance
danseur [dãsœ:r] *m.* dancer, dancing partner
date [dat] *f.* date
davantage [davãta:ʒ] *adv.* more, more so, further
de [də] *prep.* of, about, by, for, from, to, with; *with agent,* by; *with means or instrument,* by, with; *with cause,* for, of; *possessive,* of; *partitive,* some, any; *denoting separation,* from
débarquer [debarke] to disembark
décembre [desã:br] *m.* December
décider [deside] (*with* **de** + *infin.*) to decide
déclarer [deklare] to report, declare (*to customs official*)
décorations [dekɔrasjõ] *f. pl.* scenery (*in theatre*)
décor *m.* [dekɔ:r] stage, scenery
découvrir [dekuvri:r] to discover
décrire [dekri:r] to describe
décrocher [dekrɔʃe] to take down (*of telephone receiver*)
dedans [dədã] *adv.* within, in
dedans [dədã] *m.* interior, inside
défaut [defo] *m.* fault, defect, lack
défendre [defã:dr] to defend, forbid
déjà [deʒa] *adv.* already
déjeuner [deʒœne] *m.* luncheon; **petit** — breakfast
déjeuner [deʒœne] to breakfast, have luncheon
délicieux [delisjø] *adj.* good, delicious
demain [dəmɛ̃] *adv.* tomorrow; **après** — day after tomorrow
demander [dəmãde] to ask; — **des nouvelles de** to ask news of; **se** — to wonder
demeurer [dəmœre] to live, dwell
départ [depa:r] *m.* departure, setting out, sailing
dépêche [depɛ:ʃ] *f.* dispatch, telegram
déplaire (à) [deplɛ:r a] to displease
depuis [dəpɥi] *prep.* since
dernier [dɛrnje] *adj.* last
dernièrement [dɛrnjɛrmã] lately
désapprouver [dezapruve] to disapprove
dès [dɛ] *prep.* from, since; — **que** *conj.* when, as soon as
descendre [desã:dr] to descend, dismount, get off
désir [dezi:r] *m.* desire, wish
désirable [dezirabl] *adj.* desirable
désirer [dezire] to desire, wish for
dessert [dese:r] *m.* dessert
destination [dɛstinasjõ] *f.* destination
détail [deta:j] *m.* detail, trifle; **vendre au** — to sell at retail
détaillant [detajã] *m.* retailer
détenir [detni:r] to detain, imprison
détention [detãsjõ] *f.* confinement
dette [dɛt] *f.* debt, obligation
deux [dø] *adj.* two; **tous (les)** — both
deuxième [døzjɛm] *adj.* second
devant [dəvã] *prep.* (*of place*) before
devenir [dəvni:r] to become
devoir [dəvwa:r] to owe, be obliged
dévorer [devɔre] to devour
dévoué [devwe] *adj.* devoted
différent [difera] *adj.* different
difficilement [difisilmã] *adv.* with difficulty
diplôme [diplo:m] *m.* diploma
distingué [distɛ̃ge] *adj.* distinguished
diviser [divize] to divide
dollar [dɔla:r] *m.* dollar
dommage [dɔma:ʒ] *m.* injury, pity; **c'est** — it's a pity, it's too bad
dompter [dõte] to subdue, tame

donc [dõːk, dõ] *conj.* accordingly, therefore
donner [dɔne] to give, (*of trees*) bear; — **sur la rue** to face on the street
dont [dõ] *rel. pron.* whose, of whom, of which, of what
dormir [dɔrmiːr] to sleep
douane [dwan] *f.* custom-house
douanier [dwanje] *m.* custom-house officer
doucement [dusmã] *adv.* gently, softly, sweetly
doute [dut] *m.* doubt
douzaine [duzɛn] *f.* dozen
douze [duːz] *adj.* twelve
drapeau [drapo] *m.* flag
droite [drwat] *f.* right hand *or* side, right; **tourner à** — to turn to the right
durer [dyre] to endure, last

E

éclair [eklɛːr] *m.* lightning; **faire des —s** to lighten
éclaircir (s') [s eklɛrsiːr] to brighten, clear up
éclat [ekla] *m.* brilliancy, distinction
éclater [eklate] to burst forth
écouter [ekute] to listen, listen to
école [ekɔl] *f.* school
écran [ekrã] *m.* screen (*in moving pictures*)
écrire [ekriːr] to write; **avoir de quoi** — to have materials to write with
écrivain [ekrivɛ̃] *m. f.* writer, author
effet (en) [ãn efɛ] *adv.* indeed, in fact
édifice [edifis] *m.* building, edifice
effacer [efase] to rub out, efface, erase
effrayer (s') [s efrɛje] to be frightened
égard [egaːr] *m.* regard, consideration; **à l'—** de regarding, with respect to
égarer (s') [s egare] to lose the way, go astray
église [egliːz] *f.* church
éléphant [elefã] *m.* elephant
élevé [elve] *adj.* high, elevated
élève [elɛːv] *m. f.* pupil
elle [ɛl] *pers. pron.* she; — **même** she herself
émancipation [emãsipɑsjõ] *f.* deliverance, emancipation, liberation
embarquer (s') [s ãbarke] to embark
embellir [ãbɛliːr] to beautify
empêcher [ãpeʃe] to hinder, prevent; **s'—** de to keep from, abstain
emplette [ãplɛt] *f.* purchase; **faire des —s** to go shopping
employé [ãplwaje] *m.* clerk, official, employee
employer [ãplwaje] to employ, hire, use
emporter [ãpɔrte] to carry away
empressement [ãprɛsmã] *m.* eagerness, zeal
emprisonner [ãprizɔne] to imprison
emprunter [ãprœ̃te] to borrow; — **à** to borrow from
ému [emy] *adj.* moved, excited
en [ã] *adv.* hence, thence, away; **s'—** aller to go away
en [ã] *prep.* in, on, within, at, to; — **bas** downstairs; — **haut** up stairs; — **hiver** in winter; **aller — France** to go to France
en [ã] *pron.* some, any; *equivalent to pers. pron. in various prepositional relations, such as* of, by, with, concerning it *or* them
enchanter [ãʃãte] to enchant, charm
encore [ãkɔːr] *adv.* still, again; — **une fois** once more, again
encre [ãːkr] *f.* ink
encrier [ãkrie] *m.* inkstand
endormir [ãdɔrmiːr] to put to sleep; **s'—** to fall asleep
endroit [ãdrwa] *m.* place
énergie [enɛrʒi] *f.* energy
enfant [ãfã] *m. f.* child
enfin [ãfɛ̃] *adv.* finally, at last
énorme [enɔrm] *adj.* enormous
enregistrer [ãrəʒistre] to check, register
enseigner [ãsɛɲe] to teach
ensemble [ãsãːbl] *adv.* together
entendre [ãtãːdr] to hear, understand; **bien entendu** of course
entier [ãtje] *adj.* whole
entr'acte [ãtrakt] *m.* intermission (*between acts*)

entrée [ãtre] *f.* entrance, admission; **prix d'—** price of admission
entrer (dans) [ãtre dã] to enter
entretenir [ãtrətəniːr] to maintain, promote, foster, keep up
enveloppe [ãvlɔp] *f.* envelope, wrapper
envers [ãveːr] *prep.* towards
environ [ãvirɔ̃] *adv.* about, nearly
environs [ãvirɔ̃] *m. pl.* suburbs
envoyer [ãvwaje] to send
épanouir (s') [s epanwiːr] to open, bloom, expand
époque [epɔk] *f.* age, epoch, period
équipe [ekip] *f.* (*in games*) crew, team
escalier [ɛskalje] *m.* stairway
espace [ɛspɑs] *m.* space
espèce [ɛspɛs] *f.* kind, sort
espérer [ɛspere] to hope, hope for
essayer [eseje] to attempt, essay, try; **s'—** to try one's hand
essouffler (s') [s esufle] to lose one's breath, become breathless
estime [ɛstim] *f.* esteem, estimation
établir [etabliːr] to establish
étage [etaːʒ] *m.* floor, story (*of building*); **au troisième —** on the third floor
état [eta] *m.* state, government; **les États-Unis** the United States
été [ete] *m.* summer; **en —** in summer
éteindre [etɛ̃ːdr] to extinguish, put out; **s'—** to be extinguished, go out
étonner (s') [s etɔne] to be astonished, be amazed, wonder
étranger [etrãʒe] *m.* foreigner, stranger; **à l'—** abroad
être [ɛːtr] to be; **en — bien aise** to be glad of it; **je suis à vous** I am at your service
étroit [etrwɑ] *adj.* narrow
étudier [etydje] to study
européen [œrɔpeɛ̃] *adj.* European
eux [ø] *pers. pron.* they, them; **— mêmes** themselves
éveiller [eveje] to awaken
éviter [evite] to avoid, shun
examen [egzamɛ̃] *m.* examination
examiner [egzamine] to examine
excédent [ɛksedã] *m.* overweight
excellent [ɛksɛlã] *adj.* excellent, fine
excepté [ɛksɛpte] *prep.* except
exciter [ɛksite] to arouse, excite
excursion [ɛkskyrsjɔ̃] *f.* excursion
exemple [egzãːpl] *m.* example; **par —** for example
exercice [egzɛrsis] *m.* exercise
exiger [egziʒe] to require
existence [egzistãːs] *f.* existence
exister [egziste] to exist
expérience [ɛksperjãːs] *f.* experience, trial, experiment
expliquer [ɛksplike] to explain
exposer (s') [s ɛkspoze] to risk
exquis [ɛkski] *adj.* exquisite
extraordinaire [ɛkstraɔrdinɛːr] *adj.* extraordinary
extrêmement [ɛkstrɛmmã] *adv.* extremely

F

façade [fasad] *f.* front (*of building*), face, façade
fâché [faʃe] *adj.* angry, displeased; **être — de quelche chose** to be sorry for something
fâcher [faʃe] to anger, displease; **j'en suis fâché** I am sorry for it
facile [fasil] *adj.* easy
facilement [fasilmã] *adv.* easily
façon [fasɔ̃] *f.* fashion, manner, way; **de cette —** in this way
facteur [faktœːr] *m.* postman
facture [faktyːr] *f.* bill, statement
faculté [fakylte] *f.* faculty; **la faculté de droit** law faculty *or* school
faillir [fajiːr] to fail
faim [fɛ̃] *f.* hunger; **avoir —** to be hungry
faire [fɛːr] to do, make, (*of weather*) be; (*with infinitive*) cause, have (*something done*); **il fait bon** it is pleasant
falloir [falwaːr] to be necessary; **il faut** it is necessary; **s'en —** to lack, be wanting; **il s'en faut de beaucoup** very far from it; **il s'en fallut de peu que je ne fusse écrasé** I was very near being run over

fameux [famø] *adj.* famous
famille [fami:j] *f.* family
fatigué [fatige] *adj.* fatigued, tired
fatiguer (se) [sə fatige] to become tired
faute [fo:t] *f.* fault, mistake, error
favorable [favɔrabl] *adj.* favorable
félicitation [felisitɑsjõ] *f.* congratulation, felicitation
féliciter [felisite] to congratulate
femme [fam] *f.* woman, wife
fenêtre [fənɛ:tr] *f.* window
fer [fɛ:r] *m.* iron; **chemin de** — railroad
ferme [ferm] *f.* farm, farmhouse
ferme [ferm] *adv.* hard; **travailler** — to work hard
fermer [fɛrme] to close
fête [fɛ:t] *f.* festival, holiday
fêter [fete] to celebrate, observe a festival *or* holiday
feu [fø] *m.* fire
feuille [fœ:j] *f.* leaf, (*of paper*) sheet
février [fevrie] *m.* February
fidèle [fidɛl] *adj.* faithful
filer [file] (*of ships*) to sail, — **vingt nœuds à l'heure** to make twenty knots an hour
fille [fi:j] *f.* daughter, girl
film [film] *m.* moving picture
fils [fis] *m.* son
fin [fɛ̃] *f.* end
finir [fini:r] to finish, end
fixer [fikse] to set, appoint
flatteur [flatœ:r] *m.*, **flatteuse** [flatø:z] *f.* flatterer
flatter [flate] to flatter
fleur [flœ:r] *f.* flower
fleuve [flœ:v] *m.* river
fois [fwa] *f.* time (*in enumerations or multiplications*); **une** — once; **à la** — at one (and the same) time
fonctionnaire [fõksjɔnɛ:r] *m.* functionary, official
fond [fõ] *m.* bottom
fondateur [fõdatœ:r] *m.* founder
fonder [fõde] to found
football [futbal] *m.* football; **jouer au** — to play football
forêt [fɔrɛ] *f.* forest
former [fɔrme] to form
fort [fo:r] *adv.* very
fortune [fɔrtyn] *f.* chance, fortune
fou [fu] **folle**; *adj.* foolish
foule [ful] *f.* crowd
foyer [fwaje] *m.* hearth, (*of theater*) lobby
frais [frɛ] *m. pl.* expenses, cost
franc [frɑ̃] *m.* franc
français [frɑ̃se] *adj.* French
France [frɑ̃:s] *f.* France
frapper [frape] to strike, knock
frère [frɛ:r] *m.* brother
fréquemment [frekamɑ̃] *adv.* frequently
fréquenter [frekɑ̃te] to frequent, visit often
froid [frwɑ] *adj.* cold
froid [frwɑ] *m.* cold; **avoir** — to be cold
fromage [frɔmaːʒ] *m.* cheese
fruitier [frqitje] *adj.* fruit-bearing; **arbre** — fruit-tree
fumer [fyme] to smoke

G

gagner [gaɲe] to earn, gain
gant [gɑ̃] *m.* glove
garçon [garsõ] *m.* boy, waiter
gare [gaːr] *f.* railway station
gauche [goːʃ] *f.* left hand, left side; **tourner à** — to turn to the left
garder [garde] to keep, look after
geler [ʒəle] to freeze
généralement [ʒeneralmɑ̃] *adv.* generally, ordinarily
générosité [ʒenerozite] *f.* generosity
gentil [ʒɑ̃ti] *adj.* nice, amiable
gentilhomme [ʒɑ̃tijɔm] *m.* nobleman
genre [ʒɑ̃:r] *m.* sort, kind; — **de commerce** line of business
gloire [glwa:r] *f.* glory
golf [golf] *m.* golf
goût [gu] *m.* taste, fashion
goûter [gute] to taste, enjoy, relish
gouvernement [guvernəmɑ̃] *m.* government
grammaire [gramɛ:r] *f.* grammar
gramme [gram] *m.* gram

grand [grɑ̃] *adj.* great, tall, large
grandeur [grɑ̃dœːr] *f.* greatness
grand'mère [grɑ̃mɛːr] *f.* grandmother
gras [grɑ] **grasse** [grɑːs] *adj.* fat
greler [grəle] to hail
gros [gro] **grosse** [groːs] *adj.* big
gros [gro] *m.* bulk, mass; **vendre en —** to sell at wholesale
guerre [gɛːr] *f.* war
guichet [giʃɛ] *m.* ticket window
guide [gid] *m.* guide, guide book
gomme [gɔm] *f.* eraser

H

habile [abil] *adj.* clever, skilful, expert
habiller [abije] to dress; **s'—** to put on one's clothes
habitant [abitɑ̃] *m.* inhabitant
habiter [abite] to inhabit, dwell
habits [abi] *m. pl.* clothes
'haricots [ariko] *m. pl.* beans
'hasard [azaːr] *m.* chance, accident; **à tout —** at all events
'hasarder (se) [sə azarde] to chance, risk
'hasardeux [azardø] *adj.* dangerous, hazardous, risky
'haut [o] *adj.* high
hebdomadaire [ɛbdɔmadɛːr] *adj.* weekly
herbe [ɛrb] *f.* grass
'héros [ero] *m.* hero
hésiter [ezite] to hesitate
heure [œːr] *f.* hour; **être à l'—** to be on time; **de bonne —** early; **cinq francs par —** five francs an hour
heureux [œrø] **heureuse** [œrøːz] *adj.* happy
hier [jɛːr] *adv.* yesterday; **avant —** day before yesterday
histoire [istwaːr] *f.* history, story
hiver [ivɛːr] *m.* winter
homme [ɔm] *m.* man; **— d'affaires** business man
honneur [ɔnœːr] *m.* honor
horloge [ɔrlɔːʒ] *f.* clock
hôtel [otɛl] *m.* hotel
'houe [u] *f.* hoe
'huit [ɥit] *adj.* eight
'huitième [ɥitjɛm] *adj.* eighth

I

ici [isi] *adv.* here; **par —** this way
idée [ide] *f.* idea
ignorer [iɲɔre] nòt to know, be ignorant of
il [il] *pers. pron.* he
ils [il] *pers. pron.* they
illustré [ilystre] *adj.* illustrated
il y a [il j a] there is, there are
image [imaːʒ] *f.* image, likeness, picture
immatriculer [imatrikyle] to matriculate, register; **se faire —** to get enrolled *or* matriculated
immense [imɑ̃ːs] *adj.* immense
impatient [ɛ̃pasjɑ̃] *adj.* impatient
impériale [ɛ̃perjal] *f.* roof, top (*provided with seats*); **à l'—** on top (*of omnibus*)
important [ɛ̃pɔrtɑ̃] *adj.* important
impossible [ɛ̃pɔsibl] *adj.* impossible
importer [ɛ̃pɔrte] to import, matter, be of moment *or* concern; **n'importe** no matter, never mind, it makes no difference
impression [ɛ̃prɛsjɔ̃] *f.* impression
incertain [ɛ̃sɛrtɛ̃] *adj.* uncertain
indiquer [ɛ̃dike] to point out
indispensable [ɛ̃dispɑ̃sable] *adj.* indispensible
industrieux [ɛ̃dystriø] *adj.* diligent, industrious
inférieur [ɛ̃ferjœːr] *adj.* lower, inferior
influence [ɛ̃flyɑ̃ːs] *f.* influence
inscription [ɛ̃skripsjɔ̃] *f* inscription, sign
inscrire [ɛ̃skriːr] to inscribe, register; **s'—** to enroll, register
installer [ɛ̃stale] to install, establish, settle; **s'—** to install one's self, settle one's self, get settled
instant [ɛ̃stɑ̃] *m.* moment; **à l'—** at once
institution [ɛ̃stitysjɔ̃] *f.* institution
instrument [ɛ̃strymɑ̃] *m.* implement, tool

insupportable [ɛ̃syportabl] *adj.* intolerable, unendurable
intention [ɛ̃tɑ̃sjɔ̃] *f.* intention
intérieur [ɛ̃terjœːr] *m.* interior; **à l'—** on the inside, within
interrompre [ɛ̃terɔ̃ːpr] to interrupt, break, cut off
intervenir [ɛ̃tɛrvəniːr] to intervene
inutile [inytil] *adj.* useless
invitation [ɛ̃vitɑsjɔ̃] *f.* invitation
inviter [ɛ̃vite] to invite
irrégulier [iregylje] *adj.* irregular

J

jamais [ʒamɛ] *adv.* ever, never; **ne —** never; **à —** forever
janvier [ʒɑ̃vje] *m.* January
jardin [ʒardɛ̃] *m.* garden
jaune[ʒoːn] *adj.* yellow
je [ʒə] *pers. pron.* I
Jean [ʒɑ̃] *m.* John
jeter [ʒəte] to throw, drop
jeudi [ʒødi] *m.* Thursday
jeune [ʒœn] *adj.* young
joindre [ʒwɛ̃ːdr] to join
joli [ʒɔli] *adj.* pretty, pleasing
jouer [ʒwe] to play
jouir [ʒwiːr] to enjoy
jour [ʒuːr] *m.* day; **tous les —s,** every day
journal [ʒurnal] *m.* newspaper; **— du matin** morning newspaper; **— du soir** evening newspaper
journée [ʒurne] *f.* day (*as period of time*); **tout la —** all day long
juillet [ʒɥijɛ] *m.* July
jusqu'à [ʒyska] *prep.* until
jusqu'à ce que [ʒyskaskə] *conj.* until
juste [ʒyst] *adv.* just, exactly
justement [ʒystəmɑ̃] *adv.* precisely, exactly

K

kiosque [kjɔsk] *m.* small news stand

L

la [la] *art., pron.* the, her, it
là [la] *adv.* there
labourer [labure] to plow, till
lac [lak] *m.* lake
laisser [lɛse] to let, allow, leave; **— tomber** to let fall
lait [lɛ] *m.* milk
langue [lɑ̃ːg] *f.* tongue, language
large [larʒ] *adj.* wide
larme [larm] *f.* tear
latin [latɛ̃] *adj.* Latin
le [lə] *art., pers. pron.* the, him, it, so; **je — crois** I think so
lecture [lɛktyːr] *f.* reading
leçon [ləsɔ̃] *f.* lesson
légume [legym] *m.* vegetable
lendemain [lɑ̃dmɛ̃] *m.* the day following
lentement [lɑ̃tmɑ̃] *adv.* slowly
lequel [ləkɛl] **laquelle** [lakɛl] *pron.* who, whom, which
lettre [lɛtr] *f.* letter
leur (lœːr] *pers. pron.* to them
leur [lœːr] *poss. adj.* their
levée [ləve] *f.* raising, (*of mail*) collection
lever [ləve] to raise
lever (se) [sə ləve] to arise, get up
liberté [libɛrte] *f.* liberty
librairie [libreri] *f.* bookstore
lieu [ljø] *m.* place
ligne [liɲ] *f.* line
lire [liːr] to read
liste [list] *f.* list
lit [li] *m.* bed; **bois de —** bedstead
littérature [literatyːr] *f.* literature
livraison [livrɛzɔ̃] *f.* delivery (*of goods*)
livre [liːvr] *m.* book
livre [liːvr] *f.* pound
livrer [livre] to deliver
location [lɔkɑsjɔ̃] *f.* renting, letting; **bureau de —** box-office
loge [lɔːʒ] *f.* lodge, box (*in theater*)
loi [lwɑ] *f.* law
loin [lwɛ̃] *adv.* far
long [lɔ̃] *adj.* long
longtemps [lɔ̃tɑ̃] *adv.* a long time
longueur [lɔ̃gœːr] *f.* length
lorsque [lɔrskə] *conj.* when
louer [lwe] to rent, engage; **une chambre à —** a room for rent
loup [lu] *m.* wolf

Louvre [luːvr] *m.* Louvre, a museum in Paris
lui [lɥi] *pers. pron.* him, to him, to her; —-**même** himself
lumière [lymjɛːr] *f.* light
lundi [lœ̃di] *m.* Monday
lycée [lise] *m.* French secondary school combining work of high school and junior college

M

magasin [magazɛ̃] *m.* store
mai [mɛ] *m.* May
main [mɛ̃] *f.* hand
maintenant [mɛ̃tnɑ̃] *adv.* now
maintenir [mɛ̃tniːr] to maintain
mais [mɛ] *conj.* but
maïs [mais] *m.* maize, Indian corn
maison [mezɔ̃] *f.* house, home; **à la** — at home
maître [mɛːtr] *m.* teacher, master
maîtresse [mɛtrɛs] *f.* teacher, mistress
mal [mal] *m.* illness, evil, harm, pain; **faire — à quelqu'un** to hurt some one
malade [malad] *adj.* ill, sick, (*as noun*) patient
malheur [malœːr] *m.* misfortune
malice [malis] *f.* malice
malle [mal] *f.* trunk
Manche [mɑ̃ːʃ] *f.* English Channel
mandat [mɑ̃da] *m.* order; — **de poste** money order
manger [mɑ̃ʒe] to eat
manière [manjɛːr] *f.* manner, way
manquer [mɑ̃ke] to fail, miss
manteau [mɑ̃to] *m.* cloak
marchand [marʃɑ̃] *m.* merchant
marchandise [marʃɑ̃diːz] *f.* merchandise, goods
marché [marʃe] *m.* market; **à bon** — *adv.* cheaply
marcher [marʃe] to walk
mardi [mardi] *m.* Tuesday
mari [mari] *m.* husband
marin [marɛ̃] *m.* sailor; **avoir le pied** — to be a good sailor
masque [mask] *m.* mask
matelas [matlɑ] *m.* mattress
matière [matjɛːr] *f.* matter
matin [matɛ̃] *m.* morning
matinée [matine] *f.* morning, afternoon performance; **faire la grasse** — to get up late in the morning
mauvais [mɔvɛ] *adj.* bad
me [mə] *pers. pron.* me, to me, for me
méconnaître [mekɔnɛːtr] to fail to recognize
médecin [medsɛ̃ *or* mɛtsɛ̃] *m.* doctor, physician
meilleur [mɛjœːr] *adj.* better
même [mɛːm] *adv.* also, even; **de** — **que** in the same way as
même [mɛːm] *adj.* same
mentionner [mɑ̃sjɔne] to mention
mer [mɛːr] *f.* sea
merci [mɛrsi] *m.* thanks,
mercredi [mɛrkrədi] *m.* Wednesday
mère [mɛːr] *f.* mother
mérite [merit] *m.* merit
meriter [merite] to merit, deserve
merveille [mɛrvɛːj] *f.* marvel, wonder; **à** — wonderfully, marvelously
merveilleux [mɛrvɛjø] *adj.* marvelous, wonderful
mesurer [məzyre] to measure; **se** — **avec** to compete with
métier [metje] *m.* trade, occupation
mètre [mɛtr] *m.* meter
mettre [mɛtr] to place, put; **se** — **à** to begin
meuble [mœbl] *m.* furniture
meubler [mœble] to furnish
midi [midi] *m.* noon, 12 o'clock
mien [mjɛ̃] **mienne** [mjɛn] *poss. pron.* mine
mieux [mjø] *adv.* better
militaire [militɛːr] *adj.* military
mille [mil] *adj.* thousand
milliard [miljaːr] *m.* billion
millier [milje] *m.* thousand
million [miljɔ̃] *m.* million
minuit [minɥi] *m.* midnight
minute [minyt] *f.* minute
mite [mit] *f.* moth
mobilier [mɔbilje] *m.* furniture, furnishings
mode [mɔd] *f.* fashion, style
moi [mwa] *pers. pron.* I, me; —-**même** myself

moindre [mwẽːdr] *adj.* less; **le —** least
moins [mwẽ] *adv.* less; **à —** unless
mois [mwɑ] *m.* month
moisson [mwasõ] *f.* harvest
moitié [mwatje] *f.* half
môle [moːl] *m.* pier
moment [mɔmã] *m.* moment
mon [mõ] **ma** [ma] **mes** [me] *poss. adj.* my
monde [mõːd] *m.* world, society, people; **beaucoup de —** a great many people
monsieur [məsjø] *m.* Mr., sir, gentleman
monter [mõte] to mount, ascend, get into
montre [mõːtr] *f.* watch
montrer [mõtre] to show
mot [mo] *m.* word
mou [mu] **molle** [mol] *adj.* soft
mouchoir [muʃwaːr] *m.* handkerchief
mouiller [muje] to dampen, wet, soak
mourir [muriːr] to die
mourant [murã] *adj.* dying
mouvement [muvmã] *m.* movement
mouvoir [muvwaːr] to move
moyen [mwajẽ] *m.* means; **au —** by means of
munir [mыniːr] to provide
mûr [myːr] *adj.* ripe
mûrir [myriːr] to ripen
musée [myze] *m.* museum
musique [myzik] *f.* music — **militaire** military band

N

naissance [nɛsãːs] *f.* birth; **jour de —** birthday
naître [nɛːtr] to be born
natation [natɑsjõ] *f.* swimming
nation [nɑsjõ] *f.* nation
national [nasjɔnal] *adj.* national
nationalité [nasjɔnalite] *f.* nationality
nécessaire [neseseːr] *adj.* necessary
négociant [negɔsjã] *m.* merchant
neige [nɛːʒ] *f.* snow
neiger [nɛʒe] to snow
neuf [nœf] **neuve** [nœːv] *adj.* new
neuf [nœf] *adj.* nine
neuvième [nœvjɛm] *adj.* ninth
noir [nwaːr] *adj.* black
nœud [nø] *m.* knot
nom [nõ] *m.* name; **— de famille** family name; **petit —** given name
nombre [nõːbr] *m.* number
nombreux [nõbrø] *adj.* numerous
non [nõ] *adv.* no
notre [nɔtr] **nos** [no] *poss. adj.* our
nôtre [noːtr] *poss. pron.* ours
nous [nu] *pers. pron.* we
nouveau [nuvo] **nouvelle** [nuvɛl] *adj.* new
nouvelle [nuvɛl] *f.* news, rumor; **demander des — de quelqu'un** to ask about some one
novembre [nɔvãːbr] *m.* November
nuire (à) [nɥiːr] to harm, injure
nuit [nɥi] *f.* night
numéro [nymero] *m.* number; **— d'appel** call number

O

obéir (à) [ɔbeiːr a] to obey
obliger [ɔbliʒe] to oblige, compel
obstacle [ɔpstakl] *m.* obstacle
obtenir [ɔptəniːr] to get, procure, obtain
océan [ɔseã] *m.* ocean
occasion [ɔkɑzjõ] *f.* occasion
occuper (s') [s ɔkype] to be busy
occuper [ɔkype] to occupy; **être occupé à** to be busy at
octobre [ɔktɔbr] *m.* October
œil [œːj] *m.* **yeux** [jø] *pl.* eye
œuf [œf] *m.* **œufs** [ø] egg
œuvre [œːvr] *f.* work
offenser [ɔfãse] to offend
officiel [ɔfisjɛl] *adj.* official
officier [ɔfisje] *m.* officer
offrir [ɔfriːr] to offer
oiseau [wazo] *m.* bird
on [õ] *indef. pron.* one, we, they, people
oncle [õːkl] *m.* uncle
onze [õːz] *adj.* eleven
onzième [õzjɛm] *adj.* eleventh
orage [ɔraːʒ] *m.* storm
orange [ɔrãːʒ] *f.* orange
orchestre [ɔrkɛstr] *m.* orchestra

ordinaire [ɔrdinɛːr] *adj.* usual, regular
ordinairement [ɔrdinɛrmɑ̃] *adv.* ordinarily
oreille [ɔrɛːj] *f.* ear
orge [ɔrʒ] *f.* barley
originairement [ɔriʒinɛrmɑ̃] *adv.* originally
origine [ɔriʒin] *f.* origin
oser [oze] to dare
ôter [ote] to take off, take away from, remove
ou [u] *conj.* or
où [u] *adv.* where
où [u] (*in place of rel. pron.*) at which, in which, on which
oublier [ublie] to forget
oublieux [ubliø] *adj.* forgetful
ouvrage [uvraːʒ] *m.* work
ouvreuse [uvrøːz] *f.* usher (*in theater*)
ouvrir [uvriːr] to open

P

page [paːʒ] *f.* page
pain [pɛ̃] *m.* bread; **petit** — roll
paire [pɛːr] *f.* pair
pantalon [pɑ̃talɔ̃] *m.* trousers
papier [papje] *m.* paper; — **buvard** blotting paper
paquebot [pakbo] *m.* mail and passenger steamer, liner
paquet [pakɛ] *m.* package
par [par] *prep.* by, through, for; — **exemple,** for example
paraître [parɛːtr] to appear
parapluie [paraplɥi] *m.* umbrella
parc [park] *m.* park
parce que [pars kə] *conj.* because
pardessus [pardəsy] *m.* overcoat
pardon [pardɔ̃] *m.* pardon, forgiveness
pardonner [pardɔne] to forgive, excuse, pardon; — **quelque chose à quelqu'un** to forgive one for something
pareil [parɛːj] *adj.* such, similar
parent [parɑ̃] *m.* relative; —**s** *m. pl.* relatives, parents
paresseux [parɛsø] **paresseuse** [parɛsøːz] *adj.* idle, lazy
parfois [parfwa] *adv.* sometimes
parisien [parizjɛ̃] **parisienne** [parizjɛn] *adj. n.* Parisian
parler [parle] to speak
parmi [parmi] *prep.* among
part [paːr] *f.* share, part, portion
partie [parti] *f.* game, part
partir [partiːr] to leave, set out, sail
partout [partu] *adv.* everywhere
passager [pɑsaʒe] *m.* passenger (*on boat*)
passer [pɑse] to pass
passerelle [pɑsrɛl] *f.* gangway
passionner (se) [sə pɑsjɔne] to be deeply interested in, be fond of
patiner [patine] to skate
patte [pat] *f.* paw
pauvre [poːvr] *adj.* poor
paver [pave] to pave
payer [peje] to pay, pay for
pays [pei] *m.* country
paysage [peizaːʒ] *m.* landscape
paysan [peizɑ̃] *m.* peasant
paysanne [peizan] *f.* peasant woman
peindre [pɛ̃ːdr] to paint
peine [pɛn] *f.* pain, penalty; **à** — hardly
pendant [pɑ̃dɑ̃] *prep.* during
pendant que [pɑ̃dɑ̃ kə] *conj.* while (*of time*)
penser [pɑ̃se] to think; — **à** to think of *or* about; — **de** to have an opinion concerning
perdre [pɛrdr] to lose
père [pɛːr] *m.* father
péril [peril] *m.* peril
permettre [pɛrmɛtr] to permit
permission [pɛrmisjɔ̃] *f.* permission
persécuter [persekyte] to persecute
personnage [pɛrsɔnaːʒ] *m.* personage; (*of a play*) character
personne [pɛrsɔn] *f.* person
personne [pɛrsɔn] *indef. pron.* any one, anybody; (*with negative expressed or implied*) no one, nobody
personnel [pɛrsɔnɛl] *m.* staff
perte [pɛrt] *f.* loss
petit [pəti] *adj.* little, small
peu [pø] *adv.* little, not much, few (*when followed by* **de** *and a plural*); — **à** — little by little; **un** — **de** a little

peuple [pœpl] *m.* people, race
peur [pœːr] *f.* fear; **avoir —** be afraid; **de — de** (+ *infin.*) for fear of; **de — que** for fear that
peut-être [pøtɛːtr] *adv.* perhaps
philosophe [filɔzɔf] *m.* philosopher
philosophie [filɔzɔfi] *f.* philosophy
piano [pjano] *m.* piano; **jouer du —** to play on the piano; **jouer un morceau sur le —** to play a piece on the piano
pièce [pjɛs] *f.* room (*in a suite*), play (*in theatre*)
pied [pje] *m.* foot
piéton [pjetõ] *m.* pedestrian
pire [piːr] *adj.* worse
pis [pi] *adv.* worse
pitié [pitje] *f.* pity
place [plas] *f.* place, position, seat, public square
placer [plase] to place, put
plage [plaːʒ] *f.* beach
plaindre (se) [sə plɛ̃ːdr] to complain
plaire (à) [plɛːr a] to please; **se —à** to be pleased with, delight in; **s'il vous plaît** if you please; **il ne me plaît pas** I do not like him *or* it; **à Dieu ne plaise** God forbid
plaisir [plɛziːr] *m.* pleasure
planter [plãte] to plant
plein [plɛ̃] *adj.* full
pleurer [plœre] to weep
pleuvoir [plœvwaːr] to rain
plier [plie] to fold
pluie [plɥi] *f.* rain
plume [plym] *f.* pen
plupart [plypaːr] *f.* majority, the greater part
plus [ply] *adv.* more; **de — en —** more and more; **— . . . —** the more . . . the more
plusieurs [plyzjœːr] *adj.* several
plutôt [plyto] *adv.* rather
porte [pɔrt] *f.* door
poème [pɔɛːm] *m.* poem
poète [pɔɛːt] *m.* poet
poinçonner [pwɛ̃sɔne] to punch, stamp
point [pwɛ̃] *adv.* no, not, not at all; **— du tout** not at all
poire [pwaːr] *f.* pear
pois [pwɑ] *m. pl.* peas; **petits —** green peas
poisson [pwasõ] *m.* fish
poivre [pwaːvr] *m.* pepper
poli [pɔli] *adj.* courteous, polite
pomme [pɔm] *f.* apple; **— de terre** potato
pommier [pɔmje] *m.* apple tree
pont [põ] *m.* bridge, deck
populaire [pɔpylɛːr] *adj.* popular
port [pɔːr] *m.* postage
port [pɔːr] *m.* port; **arriver à bon —** arrive safely
porte [pɔrt] *f.* door
porte-plume [pɔrt plym] *m.* pen-holder
porter [pɔrte] to carry, bear, wear
portière [portjɛːr] *f.* window (*of car*)
poser [poze] to put, ask
position [pozisjõ] *f.* position
possible [pɔsibl] *adj.* possible
poste [pɔst] *f.* post; **grande —** general post office; **— restante** general delivery; **receveur des —s** postmaster
potage [pɔtaːʒ] *m.* soup
pour [pur] *prep.* for, in order to; **— que** *conj.* in order that
pourboire [purbwaːr] *m.* gratuity, tip
pourquoi [purkwa] *adv. conj.* why
pourvoir (de) [purvwaːr də] to provide with
pouvoir [puvwaːr] to be able
préférence [preferãːs] *f.* preference
préférer [prefere] to prefer
premier [prəmje] *adj.* first
prendre [prãːdr] to take, obtain, get
préparatif [preparatif] *m.* preparation; **—s de voyage,** preparations for a journey
préparer (se) [sə prepare] to prepare oneself, get ready
près (de) [prɛ də] *prep.* near
présent [prezã] *adj.* present; **à —** *adv.* at present
présenter [prezãte] to present; **se —** to appear
presque [prɛsk *or* prɛskə] *adv.* almost
presse [prɛs] *f.* press
presser [prɛse] to hasten, urge; **se —** to hurry; **être pressé** to be in a hurry
prêt [prɛ] *adj.* ready

prêter [prɛte] to lend
preuve [prœːv] *f.* proof
prévenir [prevniːr] to inform beforehand
prier [prie] to ask, beg, pray
principal [prẽsipal] *adj.* principal, chief
printemps [prẽtɑ̃] *m.* spring
prise [priːz] *f.* taking, capture
prison [prizɔ̃] *f.* prison
prisonnier [prizɔnje] *m.* prisoner
prix [pri] *m.* price; — **de la place** fare
problème [prɔbleːm] *m.* problem
prochain [prɔʃɛ̃] *adj.* next
procurer [prɔkyre] to procure, get, obtain; **se** — to get for one's self
produire [prɔdɥiːr] to produce
professeur [prɔfesœːr] *m.* professor, teacher
profiter [prɔfite] to profit, benefit
programme [prɔgram] *m.* program
projeter [prɔʒte] to plan, project
promenade [prɔmnad] *f.* walk
promener (se) [sə prɔmne] to promenade, walk
promenoir [prɔmnwaːr] *m.* walk, covered walk, promenade
promptement [prɔ̃tmɑ̃] *adv.* promptly
prononcer [prɔnɔ̃se] to pronounce
prophète [prɔfɛːt] *m.* prophet
propos [prɔpo] *m.* subject, proposal; **à** — **de** about, concerning
propre [prɔpr] *adj.* own, clean, neat
propriétaire [prɔprietɛːr] *m.* proprietor
proscrire [prɔskriːr] to proscribe
prospère [prɔspɛːr] *adj.* prosperous
protéger (se) [sə prɔteʒe] to protect oneself
provisions [prɔvizjɔ̃] *f. pl.* provisions, supplies; **aller aux** — to go marketing
prudemment [prydamɑ̃] *adv.* prudently, wisely
prudent [prydɑ̃] *adj.* prudent, wise
publiciste [pyblisist] *m.* publicist
publier [pyblie] to publish
puissant [pɥisɑ̃] *adj.* powerful
punir [pyniːr] to punish
pupitre [pypitr] *m.* desk
puis [pɥi] *adv.* then

Q

quand [kɑ̃] *conj.* when; — **-même** even if, even though
quantième [kɑ̃tjɛm] *m.* date, day of month; **quel** — **du mois sommes nous?** what day of the month is it?
quarante [karɑ̃ːt] *adj.* forty
quart [kaːr] *m.* quarter, fourth
quartier [kartje] *m.* district, quarter
quatorze [katɔrz] *adj.* fourteen
quatre [katr] *adj.* four
quatre-vingts [katrə vẽ] *adj.* eighty
quatre-vingt-dix [katrəvẽdis] *adj.* ninety
quatrième [katriɛm] *adj.* fourth
que [kə] *conj.* that, than
que [kə] *adv.* how
que [kə] *rel. pron.* that, which, whom
quel [kɛl] **quelle** [kɛl] *interrog. adj.* which, what sort of
quelque [kɛlkə] *adj.* some, any, few
quelquefois [kɛlkəfwa] sometimes
quelqu'un [kɛlkœ̃] **quelqu'une** [kɛlkyn] *indef. pron.* some one, any one, somebody, anybody
question [kɛstjɔ̃] *f.* question
queue [kø] *f.* tail, extremity, end; **faire** — to stand in line
qui [ki] *interrog. rel. pron.* who, which, whom
quinze [kẽːz] *adj.* fifteen
quitter [kite] to leave, quit
quoi [kwa] *interj.* what! how!
quoi [kwa] *interrog. rel. pron.* which, what
quoique [kwakə] *conj.* although
quotidien [kɔtidjẽ] *adj.* daily

R

raconter [rakɔ̃te] to tell, relate
rafraîchissements [rafrɛʃismɑ̃] *m. pl.* refreshments
raisin [rɛzẽ] *m.* grape, grapes
raison [rɛzɔ̃] *f.* reason; **avoir** — to be right
raisonnable [rɛzɔnabl] *adj.* reasonable
ramasser [ramɑse] to pick up
rang [rɑ̃] *m.* rank, row

rapide [rapid] *adj.* rapid, fast, swift
rappeler [raple] to recall; **se** — to remember
rarement [rarmɑ̃] *adv.* rarely
rasseoir (se) [sə raswaːr] to sit down again
ravissant [ravisɑ̃] *adj.* charming, delightful
récepteur [reseptœːr] *m.* receiver
réception [resepsjɔ̃] *f.* reception
receveur [rəsəvœːr] *m.* conductor (*on street-car or motor-bus*)
recevoir [rəsəvwaːr] to receive
réciter [resite] to recite
récolte [rekɔlt] *f.* crop
récolter [rekɔlte] to harvest a crop
recommander [rəkɔmɑ̃de] to recommend
reconnaître [rəkɔneːtr] to recognize
recoudre [rəkudr] to resew
récréation [rekreɑsjɔ̃] *f.* recreation, diversion, recess
récrire [rekriːr] to rewrite
rédacteur [redaktœːr] *m.* editor; — **en chef** editor in chief
réduire [redɥiːr] to reduce
regarder [rəgarde] to look, look at
règne [rɛɲ] *m.* reign
regret [rəgrɛ] *m.* regret
regretter [rəgrete] to regret, be sorry for
reine [rɛːn] *f.* queen
réjouir (se) [sə reʒwiːr] to rejoice
religion [rəliʒjɔ̃] *f.* religion
remarquer [rəmarke] to notice, observe
rembourrer [rɑ̃bure] to stuff, upholster
remercier [rəmɛrsje] to thank
remettre [rəmɛtr] to deliver, put back *or* up
remplacer [rɑ̃plase] to replace, take the place of
remplir [rɑ̃pliːr] to fill
remporter [rɑ̃porte] to carry *or* take back, carry away
rencontrer [rɑ̃kɔ̃tre] to meet, encounter
rendre [rɑ̃ːdr] to return, make, render; **se** — to go, proceed, repair
renfermer [rɑ̃fɛrme] to enclose, include, contain
renommé [rənɔme] *adj.* famous, celebrated, well-known, renowned
renseignement [rɑ̃sɛɲmɑ̃] *m.* information (*used in plural, except when meaning a piece of information*)
renseigner [rɑ̃sɛɲe] to inform; **se** — to get information, inform one's self
rente [rɑ̃ːt] *f.* income, revenue, rent; **vivre de ses** — to live on one's income
rentrer [rɑ̃tre] to re-enter, return home
repas [rəpɑ] *m.* meal, repast
répéter [repete] to repeat
répliquer [replike] to reply
répondre [repɔ̃ːdr] to answer, respond
reposer (se) [sə rəpoze] to rest
représentant [rəprezɑ̃tɑ̃] *m.* representative
représentation [rəprezɑ̃tɑsjɔ̃] *f.* performance, representation, show
réprimer [reprime] to repress, restrain, curb
réputation [repytɑsjɔ̃] *f.* reputation
requérir [rəkeriːr] to request, beg, demand, summon
réserver [rezɛrve] to reserve, save, put aside
respecter [rɛspɛkte] to respect
reste [rɛst] *m.* rest, remainder; **du** — however, moreover
rester [reste] to remain
retard [rətaːr] *m.* delay; **être en** — to be behind time, be late
retenir [rətniːr] to retain, secure, keep, engage
retirer (se) [sə rətire] to retire, withdraw
retour [rətuːr] *m.* return; **de** — back again
retourner [rəturne] to return, go back
retraite [rətrɛt] *f.* retreat, retirement, nook
réunion [reynjɔ̃] *f.* reunion, assembly, gathering, meeting
réussir [reysiːr] (**à** + *infin.*) to succeed
réveiller (se) [sə revɛje] to wake
revenir [rəvniːr] to come back, return
revoir [rəvwaːr] to see again; **au** — good-bye

révolution [revɔlysjɔ̃] *f.* revolution
riche [riʃ] *adj.* rich
rideau [rido] *m.* curtain
rien [rjɛ̃] *n. m. pron.* anything; (*with negative expressed or implied*) nothing, not anything; **cela ne fait —** that doesn't matter
risque [risk] *m.* risk, hazard, chance
risquer [riske] to risk, hazard, chance
robe [rɔb] *f.* dress
roi [rwa] *m.* king
rôle [roːl] *m.* rôle, part (*in a play*)
rompre [rɔ̃ːpr] to break
rond [rɔ̃] *adj.* round
rose [roːz] *f.* rose
rouge [ruːʒ] *adj.* red
route [rut] *f.* road, way; **en —** on the way
ruban [rybɑ̃] *m.* ribbon
rue [ry] *f.* street

S

sable [sɑːbl] *m.* sand
sage [saːʒ] *adj.* wise, good
sagement [saʒmɑ̃] *adv.* wisely
sagesse [saʒɛs] *f.* wisdom
sel [sɛl] *m.* salt
saint [sɛ̃] *m.* saint
saisir [sɛziːr] to seize
saison [sɛzɔ̃] *f.* season
salle [sal] *f.* room; **— à manger** dining room; **— d'attente** waiting room; **— des bagages** baggage room; **— de spectacle** playhouse
salon [salɔ̃] *m.* drawing-room, parlor
saluer [salɥe] to greet
samedi [samdi] *m.* Saturday
sans [sɑ̃] *prep.* without
santé [sɑ̃te] *f.* health
satisfaire [satisfɛːr] to satisfy
sauter [sote] to leap, jump
sauver [sove] to save; **se —** to run away
savant [savɑ̃] *adj.* learned
savoir [savwaːr] to know, be able (*of mental ability*)
savourer [savure] to relish, enjoy
scène [sɛn] *f.* stage, scenery, scene; **la mise en —** the staging of a play, stage setting
science [sjɑ̃ːs] *f.* science, knowledge
scolaire [skɔleːr] *adj.* of schools, academic
sec [sɛk] **sèche** [sɛʃ] *adj.* dry
sécher [seʃe] to dry, blot
second [səgɔ̃] *adj.* second
second [səgɔ̃] *m.* second
secret [səkrɛ] *m.* secret, secrecy, privacy
secret [səkrɛ] *adj.* secret, private
seize [sɛːz] *adj.* sixteen
séjour [seʒuːr] *m.* stay, abode, residence, sojourn
séjourner [seʒurne] to stay, sojourn
semaine [səmɛn] *f.* week
seoir [swaːr] to become, fit
sept [sɛt] *adj.* seven
septembre [septɑ̃ːbr] *m.* September
septième [sɛtjɛm] *adj.* seventh
sérieusement [serjøzmɑ̃] *adv.* seriously
sérieux [serjø] *adj.* serious, grave
sergent [sɛrʒɑ̃] *m.* sergeant; **— de ville** police officer, policeman
serrer [sɛre] to press, crowd together; **être serré** to be crowded
service [sɛrvis] *m.* service
serviette [sɛrvjɛt] *f.* napkin
servir [sɛrviːr] to serve; **se —** to use; **— de** to serve as; **— à** to be used as; **cette pièce me sert de cabinet de travail** this room serves as my study
servi [sɛrvi] *past partic.* served, ready
seul [sœl] *adj.* sole, only, alone
seulement [sœlmɑ̃] *adv.* only, merely
si [si] *conj.* if, whether
si [si] *adv.* so, such, so much, yes
siècle [sjɛkl] *m.* century
sien [sjɛ̃] **sienne** [sjɛn] *poss. pron.* his, hers
signe [siɲ] *m.* sign, signal
simple [sɛ̃ːpl] *adj.* simple, single, mere
simplement [sɛ̃pləmɑ̃] *adv.* simply, merely
sirène [sireːn] *f.* siren, whistle
situé [situe] *adj.* situated, lying
six [sis] *adj.* six
sixième [sizjɛm] *adj.* sixth
société [sɔsjete] *f.* society
sœur [sœːr] *f.* sister

soi [swa] *pers. pron.* one's self
soin [swɛ̃] *m.* care
soir [swaːr] *m.* evening
soirée [sware] *f.* evening (*as period of time*), evening party; **aller en** — to go to an evening party
soit . . . soit [swa . . . swa] either . . . or; — **que** whether
soixante [swasɑ̃ːt] *adj.* sixty
soixante-dix [swasɑ̃ːt dis] *adj.* seventy
soldat [sɔlda] *m.* soldier
soleil [sɔleːj] *m.* sun
solide [sɔlid] *adj.* solid
son [sɔ̃] **sa** [sa] **ses** [se] *poss. adj.* his, her, its
sortir [sɔrtiːr] to go out
sot [so] *adj.* foolish
sottise [sɔtiːz] *f.* folly
sou [su] *m.* cent
souffrir [sufriːr] to suffer, tolerate, endure
souhaiter [swɛte] to wish for
soulier [sulje] *m.* shoe
sourire [suriːr] *m.* smile
sous [su] *prep.* under
souscrire [suskriːr] to subscribe, sign, agree to
soutenir [sutniːr] to sustain
souvenir (se) de [sə suvniːr də] to remember
souvent [suvɑ̃] *adv.* often
spécialement [spesjalmɑ̃] *adv.* specially, especially
spectacle [spɛktakl] *m.* show, stage performance
spectateur [spɛktatœːr] *m.* spectator
sport [spɔːr] *m.* sport
stade [stad] *m.* stadium
statue [staty] *f.* statue
subvenir (à) [sybvəniːr] to help, relieve, assist
suite [sɥit] *f.* retinue, following; **de** — consecutively; **tout de** — at once
suivant [sɥivɑ̃] *prep.* according to
suivre [sɥiːvr] to follow, attend
sujet [syʒɛ] *m.* subject; **au** — **de** regarding
superbe [syperb] *adj.* splendid, superb, magnificent
supposer [sypoze] to suppose
sur [syr] *prep.* on, upon, over
sûrement [syrmɑ̃] *adv.* surely
sûreté [syrte] *f.* safety; **en** — in safety
surprendre [syrprɑ̃ːdr] to surprise
surpris [syrpri] *adj.* surprised, caught
surtout [syrtu] *adv.* specially, above all
survenant [syrvənɑ̃] *m.* newcomer, chance comer
survivre (à) [syrviːvr a] to survive
sympathie [sɛ̃pati] *f.* sympathy

T

tabac [taba] *m.* tobacco
table [tabl] *f.* table
tableau noir [tablo nwaːr] *m.* blackboard
tache [taʃ] *f.* blot, spot
tailler [taje] to cut, sharpen
taire (se) [sə tɛːr] to be silent, hush
talent [talɑ̃] *m.* talent
tandis que [tɑ̃di kə] *conj.* while, whereas
tant [tɑ̃] *adv. n.* so much, so many; — **que** as long as
tante [tɑ̃ːt] *f.* aunt
tapis [tapi] *m.* carpet
tard [taːr] *adv.* late
tasse [taːs] *f.* cup
taxer [takse] to tax
taxi [taksi] *m.* taxicab
télégramme [telegram] *m.* telegram
télégraphe [telegraf] *m.* telegraph
télégraphier [telegrafje] to telegraph
téléphone [telefɔn] *m.* telephone
téléphoner [telefɔne] to telephone
téléphonique [telefɔnik] telephonic; **cabine** — telephone booth
téléphoniste [telefɔnist] *m. f.* telephone operator, telephone girl
tel [tɛl] *adj.* such: — **que** such as
tempête [tɑ̃pɛːt] *f.* storm, tempest
temps [tɑ̃] *m.* time, weather
teneur de livres [tənœːr də liːvr] *m.* book-keeper
tenir [təniːr] to hold, have, keep; **tiens!** hello! indeed? — **des livres** to keep books; — **beaucoup à** to be very anxious to

tennis [tɛnis] *m.* tennis; **jouer au —** to play tennis
terminer [tɛrmine] to end, bring to a close, terminate; **se —** to end
terre [tɛːr] *f.* earth, world
théâtre [teɑːtr] *m.* theater
tien [tjɛ̃] **tienne** [tjɛn] *poss. pron.* thine, yours
timbre-poste [tɛ̃brə pɔst] *m.* postage stamp
titre [titr] *m.* title
toi [twa] *pers. pron.* thou, thee, you
tomber [tõbe] to fall; **— dedans,** to fall in
ton [tõ] **ta** [ta] **tes** [te] *poss. adj.* thy, your
tonner [tɔne] to thunder
torture [tɔrtyːr] *f.* torture, punishment
tôt [to] *adv.* soon
toucher [tuʃe] to touch
toujours [tuʒuːr] *adv.* always
tour [tuːr] *m.* turn
touriste [turist] *m. f.* tourist
tourner [turne] to turn
tout [tu] *adj.* all, every; **— à vous,** sincerely yours
traditionnel [tradisjɔnɛl] *adj.* traditional
traduire [tradɥiːr] to translate
tragédie [traʒedi] *f.* tragedy
train [trɛ̃] *m.* train
traîneau [trɛno] *m.* sleigh
tramway [tramwe] *m.* streetcar
tranquille [trãkil] *adj.* quiet, tranquil
tranquillement [trãkilmã] *adv.* quietly
transatlantique [trãzatlãtik] *adj.* transatlantic
transcrire [trãskriːr] to transcribe
travailler [travaje] to work
traversée [traverse] *f.* crossing, trip (*on water*)
traverser [traverse] to cross, pass through
treize [trɛːz] *adj.* thirteen
trembler [trãble] to tremble
trente [trãːt] *adj.* thirty
trentième [trãtjɛm] *adj.* thirtieth
très [trɛ] *adv.* very
trois [trwɑ] *adj.* three
troisième [trwɑzjɛm] *adj.* third
tromper [trõpe] to deceive
trop [trɔ] *adv.* too, too much, too many
trottoir [trɔtwaːr] *m.* sidewalk
troupe [trup] *f.* company
trouver [truve] to find, like; **comment trouvez-vous mon chapeau?** how do you like my hat?
tu [ty] *pers. pron.* you, thou
tuer [tɥe] to kill
tulipe [tylip] *f.* tulip
Turquie [tyrki] *f.* Turkey

U

un [œ̃] **une** [yn] *indef. art.* a, an
uniforme [yniform] *m.* uniform
université [yniversite] *f.* university
ustensile [ystãsil] *m.* utensil
utile [ytil] *adj.* useful

V

vacances [vakãːs] *f. pl.* vacation
vacant [vakã] *adj.* vacant
vache [vaʃ] *f.* cow
vaillant [vajã] *adj.* brave
vaincre [vɛ̃ːkr] to conquer
valeur [valœːr] *f.* value, worth
valoir [valwaːr] to be worth; **— mieux** to be better
varié [varje] *adj.* varied
varier [varje] to vary, change
veille [vɛːj] *f.* eve, day before
vendre [vãːdr] to sell; **à —** for sale
vendredi [vãdrədi] *m.* Friday
venir [vəniːr] to come
vente [vãːt] *f.* sale
vérité [verite] *f.* truth
vers [vɛːr] *prep.* toward, about
vers [vɛːr] *m.* verse
vert [vɛːr] *adj.* green
vertu [vɛrty] *f.* virtue
vestiaire [vɛstjɛːr] *m.* cloak-room
vestibule [vɛstibyl] *m.* hall, vestibule, lobby
vêtements [vɛtmã] *m. pl.* clothing
vêtir [vɛtiːr] to clothe, dress
victoire [viktwaːr] *f.* victory
vie [vi] *f.* life
vieillard [vjɛjaːr] old man

vieux [vjø], **vieil** [vjɛːj], (*before vowels*) **vieille** [vjɛːj] *adj.* old
vif [vif] **vive** [viːv] *adj.* live, lively
vilain [vilɛ̃] *adj.* ugly, disagreeable, wicked
village [vilaːʒ] *m.* village
ville [vil] *f.* town, city
vin [vɛ̃] *m.* wine
vingt [vɛ̃] *adj.* twenty
vingt-deuxième [vɛ̃t døzjɛm] *adj.* twenty-second
vingt et unième [vɛ̃t e ynjɛm] *adj.* twenty-first
vingtième [vɛ̃tjɛm] *adj.* twentieth
visite [vizit] *f.* visit; **rendre** — **à** to call on, visit
visiter [vizite] to visit, examine
vite [vit] *adv.* quickly, fast
vivant [vivɑ̃] *adj.* living
vivement [vivmɑ̃] *adv.* earnestly, eagerly, cordially
vivre [viːvr] to live
vogue [vɔg] *f.* fashion, style; **être en** — to be in style, fashionable
voile [vwal] *f.* sail; **faire** — to sail
voir [vwaːr] to see
voisin [vwazɛ̃] *m.* neighbor
voiture [vwatyːr] *f.* carriage
volaille [vɔlaːj] *f.* poultry, fowl
voleur [vɔlœːr] *m.* thief
volontiers [vɔlɔ̃tje] *adv.* willingly, gladly
votre [vɔtr] **vos** [vo] *poss. adj.* your
vôtre [voːtr] *poss. pron.* yours
vouloir [vulwaːr] to will, wish; — **dire** to mean, signify
vous [vu] *pers. pron.* you
voyage [vwajaːʒ] *m.* trip, journey
voyager [vwajaʒe] to travel
voyageur [vwajaʒœːr] *m.* traveller
vrai [vrɛ] *adj.* true
vraiment [vrɛmɑ̃] *adv.* truly
vu [vy] seen (*past particip. of* **voir**)
vue [vy] *f.* sight, scene, view

W

wagon [vagɔ̃] *m.* railroad coach, car; — **lit,** sleeping-car; — **restaurant,** dining-car; **en** —! all aboard!

Y

y [i] *adv.* there, thither
y (i) *pron.* to, at, on, concerning it (*or* them)

ENGLISH–FRENCH VOCABULARY

A

a, an *indef. art.* un *m.*, une *f.*; (= *each*) par *or def art.*; **once a week** une fois par semaine; **ten cents — pound** dix sous la livre
ability *n.* capacité *f.*, talent *m.*
able (to be) *v.* pouvoir
about *adv.* environ
about *prep.* à propos de, au sujet de, par, vers; (*with pers. pron.*) en, y; **he is speaking — it** il en parle; **he is thinking — it** il y pense; **— the streets** par les rues; **— two o'clock** vers les deux heures
abroad *adv.* à l'étranger
accident *n.* accident *m.*
accompany *v.* accompagner
according to *prep.* suivant, selon
accordingly *adv.* donc, par conséquent
account *n.* compte *m.*, (*in restaurant*) addition *f.*, (*bill, statement*) facture *f.*; **charge to one's —** porter à son compte
achieve *v.* accomplir
acquaintance *n.* connaissance *f.*
acquire *v.* acquérir
act *n.* (*of play*) acte *m.*
active *adj.* actif, active
actor *n.* acteur *m.*, comédien *m.*
actress *n.* actrice *f.*, comédienne *f.*
address *n.* adresse *f.*
address *v.* adresser
adept *n.* adepte *m.*
admirably *adv.* à merveille, admirablement
admire *v.* admirer
admission *n.* entrée *f.*; **price of —** prix d'entrée *m.*
advance *n.* avance *f.*; **in —** d'avance
advertisement *n.* annonce *f.*, réclame *f.*
advice *n.* conseil *m.*
advise *v.* conseiller
aeroplane *n.* aéroplane *m.*
afar *adv.* de loin
affection *n.* affection *f.*
afraid *adj.* effrayé; **to be —** avoir peur
after *conj.* après que
after *prep.* après, au bout de; **— eight o'clock** huit heures passées (sonnées)
afternoon *n.* après-midi *m. f.*
again *adv.* encore, encore une fois, de nouveau
against *prep.* contre
age *n.* âge *m.*; **for his —** pour son âge
aged *adj.* âgé
ago *adv.* il y a
agriculture *n.* agriculture *f.*
all, *adj.* tout, toute, tous; **not at —** point du tout
all *pron.* tout, tous
allow *v.* permettre, accorder
almost *adv.* presque, à peu près
alone *adj.* seul
also *adv.* aussi
although *conj.* quoique, bien que
always *adv.* toujours
amateur *n.* amateur *m.*
America *n.* Amérique *f.*
amiable *adj.* aimable
among *prep.* entre, parmi
amuse *v.* amuser
amusement *n.* divertissement *m.*, récréation *f.*, amusement *m.*
ancient *adj.* ancien, ancienne
and *conj.* et
animal *n.* animal *m.*
anniversary *n.* anniversaire *m.*
announce *v.* annoncer
another *pron.* un autre, encore un
answer *v.* répliquer, répondre
anxious (to be anxious to) *v.* tenir beaucoup à
any *adj.* aucun, quelque, (*partitive*) de

any one *indef. pron.* aucun, personne, quelqu'un
anything *n.* quelque chose *m.*, rien *m.*
apartment *n.* appartement *m.*
appear *v.* paraître, se présenter
applaud *v.* applaudir
apple *n.* pomme *f.*
apple-tree *n.* pommier *m.*
apply (to) *v.* s'adresser à
approach *v.* approcher, s'approcher de
approve *v.* approuver
April *n.* avril *m.*
armchair *n.* fauteuil *m.*
army *n.* armée *f.*
arrange *v.* arranger
arrival *n.* arrivée *f.*
arrive *v.* arriver
art *n.* art *m.*
article *n.* objet *m.*
as *adv.* comme; — **long** — tant . . . que, **as much . . . as** autant . . . que; — . . . — aussi . . . que; — **well** — ainsi que
ask, ask for *v.* demander; — **questions** poser des questions; — **some one for something** demander quelque chose à quelqu'un
aspect *n.* aspect *m.*
assassin *n.* assassin *m.*
astonish *v.* étonner; **to be —ed** s'étonner
at *prep.* à, chez, dans, en, de; (*manner*) à; (*place*) à; (*time*) à; (*value*) à; (= *about*) vers; — **home** à la maison, chez, en famille; — **his home** chez lui; — **least** au moins; — **sunrise** au lever du soleil; — **three francs a dozen** à trois francs la douzaine; **to laugh — any one** se moquer de quelqu'un; **to dine — home** dîner en famille
attend *v.* assister à, suivre
attract *v.* attirer
attractive *adj.* attrayant
audience *n.* auditoire *m.*; **a large —** beaucoup de monde
August *n.* août *m.*
author *n.* auteur *m.*
automobile *n.* automobile *m. f.*
autumn *n.* automne *m. f.*
avarice *n.* avarice *f.*
avoid *v.* éviter
away *adv.* en; **to go —** s'en aller, partir

B

bad *adj.* mauvais
badly *adv.* mal
ball *n.* bal *m.*
band *n.* musique *f.*; **military —** musique militaire *f.*
barber *n.* coiffeur *m.*
barley *n.* orge *f.*
baseball *n.* baseball *m.*; **play —** jouer au baseball
basket *n.* panier *m.*
be *v.* être, y avoir, (*with respect to health*) aller, se porter; (*with respect to position*) être, se trouver; (*of weather*) faire; (*of age*) avoir; **it may —** il se peut
beach *n.* plage *f.*
beans *n.* haricots *m. pl.*; **string —** haricots verts
beautiful *adj.* beau, bel, belle
because *conj.* parce que
become *v.* devenir
becoming *adj.* convenable, qui sied bien
bed *n.* lit *m.*; **to go to —** se coucher, aller se coucher
bedroom *n.* chambre à coucher *f.*
bedstead *n.* bois de lit *m.*
beefsteak *n.* bifteck *m.*
beet *n.* betterave *f.*
before *adv.* auparavant, avant
before *conj.* avant que
before *prep.* (*of time*) avant; (*of place*) devant; avant de + *infinitive;* au devant de *with verbs of motion* + *infinitive* = to meet
beforehand *adv.* d'avance
beg *v.* prier
begin *v.* commencer, se mettre à
behind *prep.* derrière, après; **to be —time** être en retard
believe *v.* croire
belong *v.* appartenir, être à; **this book —s to me** ce livre est à moi
bench *n.* banc *m.*
benefit *n.* bénéfice *m.*

besides *adv.* du reste, d'ailleurs
best *adj.* le meilleur
best *adv.* le mieux
better *adj.* meilleur
better *adv.* mieux; **it is —** il vaut mieux (*followed by infinitive or* **que** *clause*)
big *adj.* gros, grand
bill *n.* note *f.*, facture *f.*; **— of fare** carte *f.*, menu *f.*; (*account, statement*) facture *f.*; (*in restaurant*) addition *f.*
billion *n.* milliard *m.*
bird *n.* oiseau *m.*
birth *n.* naissance *f.*
birthday *n.* jour de naissance *m.*, fête *f.*, anniversaire *m.*
blackboard *n.* tableau noir *m.*
blossom *v.* s'épanouir
blot *v.* sécher
blot *n.* tache *f.*
blow *v.* venter, souffler; **the wind is —ing** le vent souffle, *or* il vente
board *n.* bord *m.*; **on —** (*of ship*) à bord de
book *n.* livre *m.*
book-keeper *n.* teneur de livres, *m.*, comptable *m.*
book-keeping *n.* tenue des livres *f.*, comptabilité *f.*
bookstore *n.* librairie *f.*
born (to be) *v.* naître
borrow *v.* emprunter
both *adj. pron.* tous les deux, tous deux, l'un et l'autre
boulevard *n.* boulevard *m.*
box *n.* (*at post-office*) casier *m.*
boxing *n.* boxe *f.*
boy *n.* garçon *m.*
brave *adj.* vaillant, courageux
bread *n.* pain *m.*
break *v.* rompre, casser, briser; **— forth** éclater
breakfast *n.* petit déjeuner *m.*
breakfast *v.* déjeuner
breath *n.* haleine *f.*; **get out of —** perdre haleine, s'essouffler
brilliantly *adv.* avec éclat
bring *v.* apporter
brother *n.* frère *m.*
build *v.* bâtir, construire
building *n.* bâtiment *m.*, édifice, *m.*
business *n.* affaires *f. pl.*, commerce *m.*, métier *m.*; **be in —** être dans le commerce *or* dans les affaires; **do —** faire des affaires; **do a good —** faire de bonnes affaires; **— house** maison de commerce *f.*; **— letter** lettre d'affaires *f.*; **— man** homme d'affaires *m.*; **— woman** femme d'affaires *f.*; **retire from —** se retirer des affaires; **— talent** aptitude aux affaires *f.*
busy *adj.* affairé, occupé; **to be — at** s'occuper à, être occupé à
butter *n.* beurre *m.*
buy *v.* acheter; **— a ticket** prendre un billet
by *prep.* à, de, par, en; (*with agent*) par de; (*with means or instrument*) par; (*with measure*) à; (*with gerund*) en; (*distributive*) par; **— automobile** en automobile; **to sell butter — the pound** vendre le beurre à la livre; **to be loved — everybody** être aimé de tout le monde; **to be struck — an enemy** être frappé par un ennemi; **— studying** en étudiant; **— this means,** par ce moyen

C

cabin *n.* (*on ship*) cabine *f.*
café *n.* (*restaurant*) café *m.*
call *v.* appeler; **to —** on rendre visite à; **to — out** crier
calling *n.* métier *m.*
calm *n.* calme *m.*
calm *adj.* calme
camp *n.* camp *m.*
Canada Canada *m.*; **in —** au Canada
capacity *n.* capacité *f.* **in the — of** en qualité de
captain *n.* capitaine *m.*
capture *n.* prise *f.*
car *n.* (*of railroad train*) wagon *m.*, voiture *f.*; **dining- —** wagon-restaurant *m.*
carpet *n.* tapis *m.*
carrier *n.* porteur *m.*; **letter —** facteur *m.*
carry *v.* porter; **— away** emporter

cashier *n.* caissier *m.*
cast *n.* (*in theater*) distribution des rôles *f.*
cat *n.* chat *m.*, chatte *f.*
caught *past partic.* surpris
cease *v.* cesser
celebrate *v.* célébrer
celebration *n.* célébration *f.*
cent *n.* sou *m.*
century *n.* siècle *m.*
certain *adj.* certain
chair *n.* chaise *f.*; **arm—** fauteuil *m.*; **steamer —** chaise de voyage *f.*
chalk *n.* craie *f.*
chance *n.* hasard *m.*; **by —** par hasard
change *v.* changer
character *n.* (*in a play*) personnage *m.*
charming *adj.* charmant
chat *v.* causer
cheap *adj.* à bon marché; **—ly** *adv.* à bon marché; **—er, more —ly** à meilleur marché
check *v.* (*of baggage*) enregistrer
cheese *n.* fromage *m.*
cherry *n.* cerise *f.*
child *n.* enfant *m. f.*
chocolate *n.* chocolat *m.*
choice *n.* (*preference*) préférence *f.*
chronicler *n.* chroniqueur *m.*
church *n.* église *f.*
cigar *n.* cigare *m.*
citizen *n.* citoyen *m.*, citoyenne *f.*
city *n.* ville *f.*
class *n.* (*in school*) classe *f.*
classical *adj.* classique
clear up *v.* s'éclaircir
clerk *n.* commis *m.*, employé *m.*
clever *adj.* habile
cloak *n.* manteau *m.*
cloak-room *n.* vestiaire *m.*
clock *n.* horloge *f.*, pendule *f.*; **six o'— six** heures
close *v.* fermer
clothes *n.* habits *m. pl.*, vêtements *m. pl.*
cloudy *adj.* couvert; **it is —** le temps est couvert
coach *n.* (*of a railroad train*) wagon *m.*, voiture *f.*
coffee *n.* café *m.*; **— with milk** café au lait
cold *n.* froid *m.*
cold *adj.* froid; **be intensely —** faire un froid de loup
color *n.* couleur *f.*
come *v.* venir; **to — back** revenir; **to — near** approcher, s'approcher de; **to — down** descendre; **to — up** monter; **to — in** entrer; **to — home** rentrer
comedy *n.* comédie *f.*
comfort *v.* consoler
comfortable *adj.* comfortable (*of things only*)
command *v.* ordonner, commander
communicate *v.* communiquer
company *n.* compagnie *f.*, troupe *f.*; **steamship —** compagnie maritime *f.*
compartment *n.* compartiment *m.*
compelled (to be) *v.* être obligé de
compete (with) *v.* faire concurrence (à), se mesurer avec
competitor *n.* concurrent *m.*
complete *v.* achever, compléter
compose *v.* composer; **to be —ed of** se composer de
conduct *v.* conduire
conductor *n.* (*on autobus or street car*) receveur *m.*; *on a train the employee who inspects the tickets is called* contrôleur
confess *v.* avouer, admettre
confine *v.* détenir
confinement *n.* détention *f.*
confusion *n.* confusion *f.*
congratulate *v.* féliciter; **— on** féliciter de
congratulation *n.* félicitation *f.*
conquer *v.* vaincre, conquérir
consent *v.* consentir
consequently *adv.* par conséquent
consider *v.* considérer
consist *v.* consister
contain *v.* renfermer, contenir
control *n.* direction *f.*
control *v.* (*inspect, verify*) contrôler
convenient *adj.* commode
conversation *n.* conversation *f.*
copy *v.* copier
cordially *adv.* cordialement
corner *n.* coin *m.*

cost *v.* coûter
costly *adj.* coûteux, coûteuse
count *v.* compter
counter *n.* (*in a store*) comptoir *m.*
countess *n.* comtesse *f.*
country *n.* pays *m.*
countryman *n.* paysan *m.*
country-side *n.* campagne *f.*; **in the country** à la campagne
courageous *adj.* courageux, courageuse
course *n.* cours *m.*
courteous *adj.* courtois, poli
cousin *n.* cousin *m.*, cousine *f.*
cover *n.* couverture *f.*, (*of utensil*) couvercle *m.*
cover *v.* couvrir
cow *n.* vache *f.*
crescent *n.* croissant *m.*
crop *n.* récolte *f.*
cross *v.* traverser
crowd *n.* foule *f.*
crowded *adj.* bondé, plein, serré
crown *v.* couronner
cruel *adj.* cruel, cruelle
cultivate *v.* cultiver
cultivation *n.* culture *f.*
cup *n.* tasse *f.*
curtain *n.* rideau *m.*
custom *n.* coutume *f.*; **——house** douane *f.*; **——house official** douanier *m.*
customer *n.* chaland *m.*, client *m.*
cut *v.* couper, tailler; **to — communication** couper la communication; **to — short** (*or* **off**) interrompre

D

daily *adj.* quotidien, quotidienne
daily *adv.* tous les jours
dance *v.* danser
dance *n.* danse *f.*
danger *n.* danger *m.*; **to be in — of** courir le danger de
dangerous *adj.* dangereux, dangereuse
dare *v.* oser
date *n.* date *f.*, (*of month*) quantième *m.*
date (from) *v.* dater (de)
daughter *n.* fille *f.*
day *n.* jour *m.*, journée *f.*; **— before** veille *f.*; **every —** tous les jours; **all —** toute la journée; **next —** le lendemain
deal *n.* (*quantity*) quantité *f.*; **a great — of** beaucoup de
dealer *n.* marchand *m.*
dear *adj.* cher, chère
debt *n.* dette *f.*
December *n.* décembre *m.*
decide *v.* décider
deck *n.* pont *m.*
declare *v.* déclarer
defect *n.* défaut *m.*
delicious *adj.* délicieux, délicieuse
delighted *adj.* charmé, enchanté
delightful *adj.* charmant
deliver *v.* distribuer, livrer, remettre, rendre
delivery *n.* (*of letters*) distribution *f.*, (*of merchandise*) livraison *f.*; **general —** poste restante *f.*
demand *v.* (*require*) exiger
depart *v.* partir
departure *n.* départ *m.*
depend *v.* dépendre
descend *v.* descendre, se baisser.
deserve *v.* mériter
deservedly *adv.* à juste titre
desirable *adj.* désirable
desire *n.* désir *m.*
desire *v.* désirer
desk *n.* pupitre *m.*, bureau *m.*
dessert *n.* dessert *m.*
destination *n.* destination *f.*
destroy *v.* détruire
devote *v.* consacrer
devoted *adj.* dévoué
die *v.* mourir
differ *v.* différer; **to — from** différer de
difference *n.* différence *f.*; **it makes no —** n'importe; **that makes no —** cela ne fait rien
different *adj.* divers, différent
difficult *adj.* difficile
difficulty (with) *adv.* difficilement
dig up *v.* (*of vegetables*) arracher
diligence *n.* assiduité *f.*
diligent *adj.* diligent
diligently *adv.* diligemment
dine *v.* dîner

dinner *n.* dîner *m.;* **for** — pour le dîner
diploma *n.* diplôme *m.*
disapprove *v.* désapprouver
discover *v.* découvrir
disembark *v.* débarquer
distinctly *adv.* distinctement
distinguished *adj.* distingué
divers *adj.* divers
diversion *n.* divertissement *m.*, récréation *f.*
divide *v.* diviser
division *n.* division *f.*
do *v.* faire
doctor *n.* (*physician*) médecin *m.*
dog *n.* chien *m.*, chienne *f.*
dollar *n.* dollar *m.*
door *n.* porte *f.*
doubt *n.* doute *m.*
doubtful *adj.* douteux
dozen *n.* douzaine *f.*
draw *v.* attirer; **to — near** s'approcher de
dress *n.* robe *f.*
dress *v.* habiller, s'habiller, vêtir, se vêtir
drink *v.* boire
driver *n.* chauffeur *m.*
drop *v.* laisser tomber, (*of letters*) jeter
dry *v.* sécher
during *prep.* pendant, durant
dwell *v.* demeurer, habiter
dying *adj.* mourant

E

each *pron., adj.* chaque; — **one** chacun
eager (to be) *v.* tenir beaucoup à
eagerly *adv.* avec empressement
ear *n.* oreille *f.*
early *adv.* de bonne heure, tôt; — **in the morning** de bon matin, de grand matin
earnestly *adv.* sérieusement, vivement
easy *adj.* facile
easily *adv.* facilement
eat *v.* manger
editorial *n.* article de fond *m.*
editor *n.* rédacteur *m.;* — **in chief** rédacteur en chef
egg *n.* œuf *m.;* **soft boiled** — œuf à la coque *m.*
eight *adj.* huit
eighteen *adj.* dix-huit
eighth *adj.* huitième
eighty *adj.* quatre-vingts
eighty-one *adj.* quatre-vingt-un
elegant *adj.* élégant
elephant *n.* éléphant *m.*
eleven *adj.* onze
eleventh *adj.* onzième
else *adj.* autre
embark *v.* s'embarquer
embellish *v.* embellir
employ *v.* employer
enable *v.* mettre à même de
end *n.* bout *m.*, fin *f.*
end *v.* terminer (*transitive*); se terminer (*intransitive*)
energy *n.* énergie *f.*
engage *v.* (*hire*) louer
engine *n.* machine *f.*
England *n.* Angleterre *f.*
English *n.* anglais *m.;* **in** — en anglais; — **Channel** La Manche
enjoy *v.* jouir de, savourer, goûter
enormous *adj.* énorme
enough *adj.* assez (de)
enroll *v.* se faire inscrire
enter *v.* entrer, entrer dans
enthusiasm *n.* ardeur *f.*, enthousiasme *m.*
entrance *n.* entrée *f.*
envelope *n.* enveloppe *f.*
eraser *n.* gomme *f.*
especially *adv.* surtout, spécialement, avant tout
establish *v.* fonder, installer; — **oneself** s'installer, s'établir
esteem *n.* estime *f.*
eve *n.* veille *f.*
even *adv.* même; — **if** quand même
evening *n.* soir *m.* soirée *f.;* **all** — toute la soirée; **every** — tous les soirs; **in the** — le soir
event *n.* événement *m.;* **at all** —**s** du moins, en tout cas
every *adj.* tout, toute, tous, toutes; — **one** chacun, tout le monde; — **day** tous les jours; — **month** tous les mois; — **year** tous les ans
everything *n.* tout

everywhere *adv.* partout
evil *n.* mal *m.*
examination *n.* examen *m.*
examine *v.* (*inspect*) visiter
example *n.* exemple *m.*; **for —** par exemple
excellent *adj.* excellent
excited *adj.* ému, agité
excursion *n.* excursion *f.*; **to go on —s** faire des excursions
excuse *v.* pardonner, excuser
exercise *n.* exercice *m.*
exercise *v.* s'exercer
expect *v.* attendre; **to — something** s'attendre à quelque chose
expense *n.* frais *m. pl.*
expensive *adj.* coûteux, coûteuse, cher
experience *n.* expérience *f.*
explain *v.* expliquer
exquisite *adj.* exquis
extinguish *v.* éteindre
extraordinary *adj.* extraordinaire
eye *n.* œil *m.* (*pl.* yeux)

F

face *v.* donner sur; **— on the street** donner sur la rue
fact *n.* fait *m.*; **in —** en effet
faculty *n.* (*of university*) corps de professeurs *m.*
fail *v.* faillir; **without —** sans faute
faithful *adj.* fidèle
fall *v.* tomber; **to — in** tomber dedans
family *n.* famille *f.*
famous *adj.* célèbre, fameux, renommé
far *adv.* loin; **— from** loin de
fare *n.* prix de la place *m.*
farewell *n.* adieu *m.*
farmer *n.* fermier *m.*, paysan *m.*
farming *n.* agriculture *f.*
fashion *n.* façon *f.*, mode *f.*, vogue *f.*
fashionable *adj.* à la mode
fast *adj.* rapide
father *n.* père *m.*
fatigued *adj.* fatigué
fault *n.* faute *f.*
favorable *adj.* favorable
favorite *n.* favori *m.*, favorite *f.*
fear *v.* craindre
February *n.* février *m.*
feel *v.* sentir
festival *n.* fête *f.*
few *adj.* peu de, quelques
field *n.* champ *m.*
fifteen *adj.* quinze
fifth *adj.* cinquième
fifty *adj.* cinquante
fight *v.* combattre, se battre
fill *v.* remplir
film *n.* film *m.*
finally *adv.* enfin; **to do something —** finir par *with infinitive*
find *v.* trouver
fine *adj.* beau, élégant, excellent, superbe
finish *v.* achever, finir, terminer
fire *n.* feu *m.*
first *adj.* premier; **at —** d'abord
fish *n.* poisson *m.*
fit *v.* aller, seoir; **— well** aller bien, seoir bien
fitting *adj.* convenable
five *adj.* cinq; **there are — of us** nous sommes cinq
fix *v.* (*fasten*) fixer, arranger
flag *n.* drapeau *m.*
flatter *v.* flatter
flatterer *n.* flatteur *m.*, flatteuse *f.*
flattering *adj.* flatteur, flatteuse
floor *n.* (*story*) étage *m.*
flower *n.* fleur *f.*
fluently *adv.* couramment
fog *n.* brouillard *m.*; **to be —gy** faire du brouillard
fold *v.* plier
follow *v.* suivre; **as —s** comme il suit
fond (to be) *v.* aimer; **to be very — of** se passionner pour
fool *n.* insensé, sot *m.*, sotte *f.*
foolish *adj.* ridicule, bête
football *n.* football *m.*; **to play —** jouer au football
for *conj.* car
for *prep.* pour, de, pendant, par; **— me** pour moi; **to thank one — his services** remercier quelqu'un de ses services; (= *during*) pendant; **— his age** pour son âge; **— example** par exemple; (*purpose*) pour; (*destina-*

tion) pour; **to leave — Paris** partir pour Paris; (= *since*) depuis; **I have been studying French — two years** j'étudie le français depuis deux ans
forbid *v.* défendre
foreigner *n.* étranger, étrangère *f.*
forest *n.* forêt *f.*
forget *v.* oublier
forgetful *adj.* oublieux, oublieuse
form *v.* former
fortnight *n.* quinzaine *f.*, quinze jours
fortune *n.* fortune *f.*
forty *adj.* quarante
found *v.* fonder
founder *n.* fondateur *m.*, fondatrice *f.*
four *adj.* quatre
fourteen *adj.* quatorze
fourth *adj.* quatrième
franc *n.* franc *m.*
France *n.* France *f.*
freedom *n.* liberté *f.*, franchise *f.*
freeze *v.* geler
French *adj.* français
French (language) *n.* le français; **in —** en français
frequently *adv.* souvent, fréquemment
Friday *n.* vendredi *m.*
friend *n.* ami *m.*, amie *f.*
friendship *n.* amitié *f.*
from *prep.* de, à, dès; **— Paris to London** de Paris à Londres; **to take a ring — any one** ôter une bague à quelqu'un; **— the cradle** dès le berceau
front *n.* (*of building*) façade *f.*
frugal *adj.* frugal
fruit *n.* fruit *m.*; **— and vegetable peddler** marchand des quatre saisons *m.*
full *adj.* complet, complète, plein, bondé
furnish *v.* meubler
furnishings *n.* (*furniture*) mobilier *m.*
furniture *n.* meubles *m. pl.*; **set of —** mobilier *m.*; **— dealer** marchand de meubles *m.*
further *adv.* davantage

G

gain *v.* gagner
gallery *n.* galerie *f.*
game *n.* jeu *m.*, partie *f.*
gangway *n.* passerelle *f.*
garden *n.* jardin *m.*
gather *v.* (*harvest*) récolter
gathering *n.* réunion *f.*
generally *adv.* généralement
generosity *n.* générosité *f.*
get *v.* obtenir, prendre, se procurer; **to — off** descendre; **to — ready** se préparer; **to — up** se lever
gift *n.* cadeau *m.*
girl *n.* fille *f.*, jeune fille, *f.*
give *v.* donner
glad *adj.* content; **be — of** être bien aise de
gladly *adv.* volontiers
glory *n.* gloire *f.*
glove *n.* gant *m.*
go *v.* aller, se rendre; **to — away** s'en aller; **to — down** descendre; **to — for** aller chercher; **to — out** sortir; **to — up** (*of curtain*) se lever; **to — to meet** aller au devant de, aller à la rencontre de; **to — for a walk** se promener
God *n.* Dieu *m.*
golf *n.* golf *m.*
good *adj.* bon, bonne
goodbye *n.* adieu, au revoir
goodness *n.* bonté *f.*
goods *n.* marchandises *f. pl.*
government *n.* gouvernement *m.*
grammar *n.* grammaire *f.*
gram *n.* gramme *m.*
grape *n.* raisin *m.*
grass *n.* herbe *f.*
gratuity *n.* (*tip*) pourboire *m.*
greatness *n.* grandeur *f.*
greet *v.* saluer
guest *n.* invité *m.*
guide *n.* guide *m.*

H

hail *v.* greler
hair *n.* cheveux *m. pl.*
half *adj.* demi, demie; **— an hour** une demi-heure; **an hour and a —** une heure et demie; **— the time** la moitié du temps
half *n.* moitié *f.*

hall (entrance) vestibule *m.*
hand *n.* main *f.*
handkerchief *n.* mouchoir *m.*
happen *v.* arriver, se trouver
happy *adj.* heureux, heureuse
harbor *n.* port *m.*
hard *adj.* difficile
hardly *adv.* à peine; (*negative*) ne . . . guère
harvest *n.* moisson *f.*
harvest *v.* récolter, faire la moisson
hat *n.* chapeau *m.*
have *v.* avoir, être à; **this book is mine** ce livre est à moi
he *pers. pron.* il; — **who** celui qui
health *n.* santé *f.;* **to be in good** — être bien portant
hear *v.* entendre; — **something spoken of** entendre parler de
heat *n.* chaleur *f.*
helmet casque *m.*
her *pers. pron.* la; **to** (*or* **for**) — lui, à elle
here *adv.* ici; — **is** (**are**) voici
hero *n.* héros *m.*
hers *poss. pron.* sien, sienne
hesitate *v.* hésiter
high *adj.* élevé, haut
him *pers. pron.* le; **to** (*or* **for**) — lui, à lui
hire *v.* louer, employer
his *poss. adj.* son, sa, ses
his *poss. pron.* sien, sienne
history *n.* histoire *f.*
hoe *n.* 'houe *f.*
hold *v.* tenir
holiday *n.* fête *f.*
home (**at**) chez soi, à la maison; **at your** — chez vous; **to dine at** — dîner en famille
honest *adj.* honnête
honor *n.* honneur *m.*
hope *v.* espérer
horn *n.* (*of animal*) corne *f.*
horse *n.* cheval *m.*
hotel *n.* hôtel *m.*
hour *n.* heure *f.*
house *n.* maison *f.*
how *adv.* comment, que, comme, combien
however *conj.* cependant, pourtant
hundred *adj.* cent
hundred *n.* centaine *f.*
hunger *n.* faim *f.*
hurried *adj.* pressé
hurry *n.* 'hâte *f.;* **be in a** — être pressé
hurt *v.* blesser
husband *n.* mari *m.*

I

I *pers. pron.* je
idea *n.* idée *f.*
if *conj.* si
ignorant *adj.* ignorant; **to be** — **of** ignorer
ill *adj.* malade
immediately *adv.* tout de suite, sur le champ, aussitôt, immédiatement
impatient *adj.* impatient
implement *n.* instrument *m.;* **agricultural** —**s** outillage agricole *m.*
important *adj.* important; **it is** — **that** il importe que
impossible *adj.* impossible
impression *n.* impression *f.*
imprison *v.* emprisonner
in *prep.* en, à, dans; **he did it** — **an hour** il l'a fait en une heure; **he will start** — **an hour** il partira dans une heure; *not translated in certain expressions of time;* — **the evening** le soir; (*with pers. pron.*) y; **here is a box, put the pencils in it** voici une boîte, mettez-y les crayons; (*with most countries*) en; (*with the seasons*) en, (*exception* — **the spring** au printemps); — **fashion** à la mode; — **the country** à la campagne; — **the United States** aux États-Unis; — **North America** dans l'Amérique du nord
into *prep.* dans, en
include *v.* comprendre
income *n.* rente *f.;* **live on one's** — vivre de ses rentes
indeed *adv.* en effet
indicate *v.* indiquer
indispensable *adj.* indispensable
industrious *adj.* diligent, industrieux

information *n.* renseignements, *m. pl.*; **to obtain** — prendre des renseignements
ink *n.* encre *f.*
inkstand *n.* encrier *m.*
inside *n.* intérieur *m.*; (= *in, within*) à l'intérieur
institution *n.* institution *f.*
intelligent *adj.* intelligent
intend *v.* avoir l'intention de, compter
intention *n.* intention *f.*
interest *v.* intéresser; **to be —ed in** s'intéresser à
interesting *adj.* intéressant
intermission *n.* entr'acte *m.*
introduce *v.* présenter
invitation *n.* invitation *f.*
invite *v.* inviter
irregular *adj.* irrégulier, irrégulière
it *pers. pron.* il, elle, le, la, ce, cela; (*in preposition phrases*) en, y

J

January *n.* janvier *m.*
Japan *n.* Japon *m.*; **in** *or* **to —** au Japon
jewel *n.* bijou *m.*
John *n.* Jean *m.*
journey *n.* voyage *m.*
journey *v.* faire un voyage, voyager
July *n.* juillet *m.*
jump *v.* sauter
June *n.* juin *m.*
just *adv.* (*hardly*) à peine, (*exactly*) justement, précisément; **to have — done something** venir de (+ *infinitive*)
justly *adv.* à juste titre

K

keep *v.* tenir, garder, conserver; **to — books** tenir des livres; **to — from, forbear, abstain** s'empêcher (de); **to — up, maintain** entretenir
key *n.* clef *f.*
kind *n.* espèce *f.*, sorte *f.*
kindly *adv.* ayez la bonté, veuillez
kindness *n.* bonté *f.*
king *n.* roi *m.*
kitchen *n.* cuisine *f.*
knife *n.* couteau *m.*; **penknife** canif *m.*
knock *v.* frapper
knot *n.* (*nautical*) nœud *m.*; **to make 20 —s an hour** filer (faire) vingt nœuds à l'heure
know *v.* connaître, savoir
knowledge *n.* science *f.*, connaissance *f.*

L

lady *n.* dame *f.*
lake *n.* lac *m.*
land *v.* débarquer
landscape *n.* paysage *m.*
language *n.* langue *f.*
large *adj.* grand, gros, grosse
last *adj.* dernier, dernière, passé, passée; **at —** *adv.* enfin
last *v.* durer
late *adv.* tard; **to be —** être en retard
later *adv.* plus tard
Latin *adj.* latin
law *n.* loi *f.*
lawyer *n.* avocat *m.*
lazy *adj.* paresseux, paresseuse
lead (to) *v.* conduire
leaf *n.* feuille *f.*
learn *v.* apprendre
learned *adj.* savant
least *adj.* le moindre
leave *v.* (*depart from*) quitter; (*deliver*), livrer; (*set out*) partir
lecture *n.* conférence *f.*
left *n.* gauche *m.*; **to the —** à gauche
lend *v.* prêter
less *adv.* moins; **— . . . than** moins . . . que
less *adj.* moindre
lesson *n.* leçon *f.*
let *v.* laisser; **— fall** laisser tomber; **— down** baisser
letter *n.* lettre *f.*; **— box** boîte aux lettres; **— paper** papier à lettre
letting *n.* location *f.*
liable (to be) *v.* être sujet à
liberation *n.* émancipation *f.*
liberty *n.* liberté *f.*
library *n.* bibliothèque *f.*
life *n.* vie *f.*

light *n.* lumière *f.*
lighten *v.* faire des éclairs
like *adj.* (*similar*) pareil, pareille
like *v.* aimer, trouver, vouloir; **how do you — it?** comment le trouvez-vous? **I should — to go there** je voudrais y aller
line *n.* ligne *f.*; **— of business** genre de commerce *m.*
list *n.* liste *f.*
listen, listen to *v.* écouter
literature *n.* littérature *f.*
little *adj.* petit
little *adv.* peu, peu de; **— by —** peu à peu
live *v.* vivre, (*dwell*) demeurer, habiter
lively *adj.* vif, vive
living *adj.* vivant
lobby *n.* foyer *m.*
long *v.* tarder de; **I — to see them** il me tarde de les voir
long *adj.* long, longue; **how —?** combien de temps?
look (at) *v.* regarder, **— for** chercher
lose *v.* perdre; **— the way** s'égarer
loss *n.* perte *f.*; **to sell at —** vendre à perte
Louvre *n.* Louvre *m.* (*a museum in Paris*)
low *adj.* bas
lower *adj.* inférieur
lower *v.* baisser
luncheon *n.* déjeuner *m.*; **to have — déjeuner**

M

mail *n.* courrier *m.*, poste *f.*; **by —** par la poste
mail *v.* mettre à la poste
maintain *v.* entretenir
majority *n.* plupart *f.*, majorité *f.*
make *v.* faire, former, (*gain*) gagner; **to — money** gagner de l'argent; **to — up** constituer
malice *n.* malice *f.*
many *adj.* beaucoup de, nombreux, nombreuse; **how — ?** combien de?
maid *n.* bonne *f.*
manner *n.* manière *f.*
March *n.* mars *m.*
market *n.* marché *m.*; **to go —ing** aller aux provisions
matinée *n.* matinée *f.*
matriculate *v.* se faire immatriculer
mattress *n.* matelas *m.*
May *n.* mai *m.*
me *pers. pron.* moi, me
mean *v.* vouloir dire, signifier
meantime (in the) en attendant
meanwhile *adv.* en attendant, dans l'intervalle
meet *v.* rencontrer; **to go to —** aller au devant de
mention *v.* mentionner; **don't — it** il n'y a pas de quoi
merchandise *n.* marchandise *f.*
merchant *n.* marchand *m.*, négociant *m.*
mercy *n.* miséricorde *f.*, merci *m.*
merely *adv.* seulement, simplement
merit *n.* mérite *m.*
meter *n.* mètre *m.*
Mexico *n.* (*the country*) le Mexique; **in** *or* **to —** au Mexique
midnight *n.* minuit *m.*
milk *n.* lait *m.*
million *n.* million *m.*; **a — men** un million d'hommes
mine *poss. pron.* mien, mienne
minute *n.* minute *f.*
misfortune *n.* malheur *m.*, mal *m.*, maux *pl.*
miss *v.* manquer
mistaken (to be) *v.* se tromper
mode *n.* (*fashion*) mode *f.*
mood *n.* mode *m.*
moment *n.* instant *m.*, moment *m.*
Monday *n.* lundi *m.*
money *n.* argent *m.*
month *n.* mois *m.*; **by the —** au mois; **$100 a —** cent dollars par mois
more *adv.* davantage, plus; **— than** plus . . . que; **the — . . . the —** plus . . . plus; **no — ne . . . plus**
more *adj.* plus de
moreover *adv.* d'ailleurs, du reste, de plus
morning *n.* matin *m.*, matinée *f.*
most *adj.* la plupart de
most *adv.* le plus

mother *n.* mère *f.*
movement *n.* mouvement *m.*
much *adj.* beaucoup de, bien de; **how** —? combien de?
museum *n.* musée *m.*
music *n.* musique *f.;* — **of military band** la musique militaire
must *v.* devoir, falloir
my *poss. adj.* mon, ma, mes

N

name *n.* nom *m.;* **family** — nom de famille; **given** — petit nom, prénom
name *v.* appeler, nommer; **to be** —**d** s'appeler, se nommer
narrow *adj.* étroit
national *adj.* national
nationality *n.* nationalité *f.*
near *prep.* près de, auprès de
nearly *adv.* presque
necessary *adj.* nécessaire
necessary (to be) *v.* falloir (*impers.*), devoir
need *n.* besoin *m.*
need *v.* avoir besoin de
neglect *v.* négliger
neighbor *n.* voisin *m.*, voisine *f.*
never *adv.* ne . . . jamais
nevertheless *adv.* cependant, néanmoins, pourtant, toutefois
new *adj.* neuf, neuve, nouveau, nouvelle
newcomer *n.* nouveau venu *m.*
news *n.* nouvelles *f. pl.;* — **stand** *n.* kiosque *m.;* **what is the** —? qu'y a-t-il de nouveau?
newspaper *n.* journal *m.;* **morning** — journal du matin; **evening** — journal du soir
next *adj.* prochain, suivant
nice *adj.* gentil, gentille
night *n.* nuit *f.;* **last** — hier soir
nine *adj.* neuf
nineteen *adj.* dix-neuf
ninety *adj.* quatre-vingt-dix
ninth *adj.* neuvième
no *adv.* non; **why** — mais non
nobody *n.* personne (*with verbs must be accompanied by* ne *placed before the verb*)
noise *n.* bruit *m.*
none *pron.* (*with negative*) en, aucun, nul, pas un; **I have** — je n'en ai pas
nook *n.* retraite *f.*
noon *n.* midi *m.*
not *adv.* ne . . . pas, (*emphatic*) ne . . . point
nothing *n.* rien (*when used with verbs, must be accompanied by* ne *placed before the verb*)
notice *n.* (*posted up*) affiche *f.*
notice *v.* remarquer, apercevoir, s'apercevoir
notify *v.* prévenir
novel *n.* roman *m.*
November *n.* novembre *m.*
now *adv.* maintenant, à présent
number *n.* nombre *m.*, numéro *m.;* **call** — numéro d'appel

O

oak *n.* chêne *m.*
oblige *v.* obliger
observe *v.* remarquer, observer
obstacle *n.* obstacle *m.*
obtain *v.* obtenir, procurer; — **for one's self** se procurer
occasion *n.* occasion *f.;* **on the** — **of** à l'occasion de
occupy *v.* occuper
occur *v.* (*of a date*) tomber
ocean *n.* océan *m.*
October *n.* octobre *m.*
of *prep.* de, à, à propos de; (*with pers. pron.*) en; (*denoting possession*) de; (*partitive*)de; (*after superlatives*) de; (= *about with certain verbs*) à; **I am thinking about it** j'y pense; **I have some** — it j'en ai
offend *v.* offenser
office *n.* bureau *m.* cabinet *m.;* **box** — bureau de location *m.*
official *adj.* officiel, officielle
often *adv.* bien des fois, souvent
old *adj.* âgé, ancien, ancienne, vieux, vieille; — **man** vieux, vieillard *m.;*

how — are you? quel âge avez-vous? **to be 30 years —** avoir trente ans
omit *v.* omettre, négliger, oublier
on *prep.* à, en, sur, de; **to be — time** être à l'heure; **— foot** à pied; **to play — the piano** jouer du piano; **— Monday** lundi
once *adv.* autrefois, une fois; **at —** tout de suite
one *adj.* un *m.*, une *f.*
one *indef. pron.* on; **no —** personne . . . ne, pas un, nul, aucun . . . ne; **the — who** celui (celle) qui; **—self** se, soi
only *adj.* seul
only *adv.* ne . . . que, seulement
open *v.* ouvrir, (*blossom*) s'épanouir
operator *n.* (*of telephone*) téléphoniste *m. f.*
opportunity *n.* occasion *f.*; **to take advantage of an —** profiter d'une occasion
or *conj.* ou
orange *n.* orange *f.*
orchestra *n.* orchestre *m.*
order *n.* ordre *m.*, commande *f.*; **in —** to pour; **in — that** afin que, pour que
order *v.* commander
ordinarily *adv.* ordinairement
origin *n.* origine *f.*
originally *adv.* originalment, d'abord
other *adj.* autre
otherwise *adv.* autrement
our *poss. adj.* notre, nos
ours *poss. pron.* nôtre
out *adv.* dehors; **— of the house** hors de la maison, **— of the window** par la fenêtre
outside *n.* dehors *m.*
outside *adv.* en dehors
over *adj.* fini, passé
overcoat *n.* pardessus *m.*
overweight *n.* excédent *m.*
owe *v.* devoir
own *adj.* propre
owner *n.* propriétaire *m.*
ox *n.* bœuf *m.*

P

package *n.* colis *m.* paquet *m.*
page *n.* page *f.*
pair *n.* paire *f.*
paper *n.* papier *m.*; **blotting —** *n.* papier buvard *m.*; **letter —** papier à lettre *m.*
parade *n.* (*procession*) parade *f.*, cortège *m.*
pardon *n.* pardon *m.*
pardon *v.* pardonner; **I — him** je lui pardonne; **I — him for it** je le lui pardonne
parents *n.* père et mère
Paris *n.* Paris *m.*
Parisian *adj.* parisien, parisienne
park *n.* parc *m.*, jardin *m.*
parlor *n.* salon *m.*
part *n.* partie *f.*, (*in a play*) rôle *m.*
partner *n.* (*in dancing*) danseur *m.*, danseuse *f.*
party *n.* réunion *f.*; **evening —** *n.* soirée *f.*
pass *v.* passer
passenger *n.* voyageur *m.*, voyageuse *f.*, (*on boat*) passager *m.*
pave *v.* paver
pay *v.* acquitter, payer; **— cash** payer (argent) comptant; **— for** payer
peas (green) *n.* petits pois *m. pl.*
peasant *n.* paysan *m.*, paysanne *f.*
pedestrian *n.* piéton *m.*
pen *n.* plume *f.*
pencil *n.* crayon *m.*
penholder *n.* porte-plume *m.*
people *n.* gens *m. f. pl.*, monde *m.*, peuple *m.*; *indef. pron.* on; **a great many —** beaucoup de monde
pepper *n.* poivre *m.*
perform *v.* (*play*) jouer
performance *n.* représentation *f.*; **afternoon —** (*at theater*) matinée *f.*
perhaps *adv.* peut-être
peril *n.* péril *m.*
period *n.* époque *f.*
permit *v.* permettre
persecute *v.* persécuter
person *n.* personne *f.*
personal *adj.* personnel, personnelle
phase *n.* aspect *m.*
philosopher *n.* philosophe *m.*
philosophy *n.* philosophie *f.*

piano *n.* piano *m.;* **grand** — piano à queue; **to play the** — jouer du piano
pick (up) *v.* ramasser
picture *n.* image *f.;* — **post card** carte postale illustrée *f.*
piece *n.* morceau *m.*, (*of money*) pièce *f.*
pier *n.* môle *m.*
pitch *v.* (*a camp*) établir
pity *n.* pitié *f.;* **it is a** — c'est dommage
placard *n.* affiche *f.*
place *n.* place *f.*, endroit *m.*, lieu *m.;* — **at table** couvert *m.*
place *v.* mettre, placer, poser; (*of stamps*) coller
plant *v.* planter
play *n.* (*in theatre*) pièce *f.*, spectacle *m.*
play *v.* jouer
player *n.* joueur *m.*, joueuse *f.*
pleasant *adj.* agréable, charmant; **to be** — (*impers.*) faire bon; **to make** — rendre agréable
please *v.* plaire (à), (*imperative*) veuillez; **if you** — s'il vous plaît
pleasure *n.* plaisir *m.*
plow *n.* charrue *f.*
plow *v.* labourer
pocket *n.* poche *f.*
poem *n.* poème *m.*, poésie *f.*
poet *n.* poète *m.*
policeman *n.* sergent de ville *m.*
polite *adj.* poli
poor *adj.* pauvre
popular *adj.* en vogue, populaire
porter *n.* concierge *m. f.*
position *n.* situation *f.*, place *f.;* **to get a** — obtenir une place, une situation
possible *adj.* possible
post *n.* poste *f.;* **parcel** — service des colis postaux *m.*
postage *n.* port *m.;* — **stamp** timbre-poste *m.*
postman *n.* facteur *m.*
postmaster *n.* receveur des postes *m.*
post-office *n.* poste *f.;* **bureau de poste** *m.;* **general** — la grande poste *f.*
potato *n.* pomme de terre *f.*
pound *n.* livre *f.;* **by the** — à la livre; **two francs a** — deux francs la livre
powerful *adj.* puissant
practice *v.* s'exercer
prefer *v.* préférer, aimer mieux
preference *n.* préférence *f.*
preparation *n.* préparatif *m.*
prepare (oneself) *v.* se préparer
present (at) *adv.* à présent
present (oneself) *v.* se présenter
press *n.* presse *f.*
pretty *adj.* joli
prevent *v.* empêcher
price *n.* prix *m.*
principal *adj.* principal
prison *n.* prison *f.*
prisoner *n.* prisonnier *m.*
problem *n.* problème *m.*
procure *v.* procurer; — **for oneself** se procurer
profession *n.* profession *f.*
professor *n.* professeur *m.*
profit *n.* bénéfice *m.;* **sell at a** — vendre à bénéfice
profit *v.* profiter
program *n.* programme *m.*
progress *n.* progrès *m.*
promptly *adv.* promptement
pronounce *v.* prononcer
proof *n.* preuve *f.*
proper *adj.* convenable; **it is** — il convient
property *n.* (*one's own*) le sien,
proprietor *n.* propriétaire *m.*
prosperous *adj.* prospère
protect *v.* protéger
provide (with) *v.* munir de, pourvoir de
publicist *n.* publiciste *m.*
publish *v.* publier
punch *v.* poinçonner
punish *v.* punir
punishment *n.* torture *f.*
pupil *n.* élève *m. f.*
purchase *n.* achat *m.*
purse *n.* bourse *f.*
put *v.* mettre, placer, poser; — **back** (*or* **up**) remettre; — **off** retarder, remettre; — **questions** poser des questions

Q

quantity *n.* quantité *f.*, masse *f.*
quarter *n.* (*district*) quartier *m.*, (*frac-*

tion) quart *m.*; **a — of an hour** un quart d'heure; **a — past nine** neuf heures et un quart; **a — of nine** neuf heures moins le quart
queen *n.* reine *f.*
question *n.* question *f.*
quickly *adv.* vite
quiet *adj.* tranquille

R

railroad *n.* chemin de fer *m.*; **— station** gare *f.*
rain *n.* pluie *f.*
rain *v.* pleuvoir
raise *v.* lever
rank *n.* rang *m.*
rapid *adj.* rapide
rapidly *adv.* vite, rapidement; **to sail — filer** vite
reach *v.* arriver à
read *v.* lire
reading *n.* lecture *f.*
ready *adj.* prêt, (*of meals*) servi
reason *n.* raison *f.*
reasonable *adj.* raisonnable
recall *v.* rappeler, (*remember*) se souvenir de, se rappeler
receive *v.* recevoir
receiver récepteur *m.*
reception *n.* réception *f.*
recite *v.* réciter
recommendation *n.* recommandation *f.*
recreation *n.* récréation *f.*
red *adj.* rouge
re-enter *v.* rentrer
refreshments *n.* rafraîchissements *m. pl.*
regarding *prep.* à l'égard de, au sujet de
register *v.* (*check*) enregistrer; **to — in a school** se faire inscrire
regret *n.* regret *m.*
regret *v.* regretter
regular *adj.* ordinaire, régulier, régulière
reign *n.* règne *m.*
rejoice *v.* se réjouir
relate *v.* raconter
relative *n.* parent *m.*
religion *n.* religion *f.*
relish *v.* savourer
remain *v.* rester
render *v.* rendre
rent *v.* louer
repeat *v.* répéter
replace *v.* remplacer
reply *v.* répliquer, répondre
report *n.* compte rendu *m.*
representative *n.* représentant
repress *v.* réprimer
reputation *n.* réputation *f.*
require *v.* exiger
reservations (to make) *v.* retenir des places
reserved *adj.* réservé
respect *v.* respecter
responsible for (to be) *v.* être chargé de
rest *v.* se reposer
retail (at) *adv.* au détail
retailler *n.* détaillant *m.*
retain *v.* retenir
return *v.* rendre (*trans.*), rentrer (*intrans.*), (*go back*) retourner, (*come back*) revenir; **on —ing** en rentrant
review *n.* compte rendu *m.*
revolution *n.* révolution *f.*
ribbon *n.* ruban *m.*
rich *adj.* riche
ride *v.* se promener, aller (*with phrase denoting manner of riding*); **— in an automobile** se promener en automobile; **— to town in an automobile** aller en ville en automobile
right *adj.* (*of direction*) droit; **on** *or* **to the —** à droite
right *n.* droit *m.*; **to be —** avoir raison
ripen *v.* mûrir
rise *v.* se lever
rising *n.* lever *m.*
risk *n.* risque *m.*, hasard *m.*
risk *v.* risquer, hasarder
river *n.* fleuve *m.*
road *n.* chemin *m.*, route *f.*; **on the —** en route
roll *n.* (*of bread*) croissant *m.*, petit pain *m.*
roof *n.* toit *m.*
room *n.* chambre *f.*, pièce *f.*; **baggage — salle des bagages** *f.*; **class — salle de classe** *f.*; **dining-— salle à manger** *f.*; **drawing-— salon** *m.*; **refreshment — buffet** *m.*

rose *n.* rose *f.*
round *adj.* rond
row *n.* rang *m.*
rub (out) *v.* effacer
rug *n.* tapis *m.;* **steamer —** couverture de voyage *f.*
rumor *n.* bruit *m.*, nouvelle *f.*
run *v.* courir
running *n.* course *f.*

S

safety *n.* sûreté *f.;* **in —** *adj.* sain et sauf
sail *v.* faire voile, partir
sailor *n.* matelot *m.;* **to be a good —** avoir le pied marin
saint *adj.* saint
sale *n.* vente *f.;* **for —** à vendre; **on —** en vente
salesman *n.* commis *m.;* **travelling —** commis-voyageur, voyageur de commerce
salt *n.* sel *m.*
sand *n.* sable *m.*
Saturday *n.* samedi *m.*
save *v.* (*rescue*) sauver
say *v.* dire
scene *n.* scène *f.*
scenery *n.* (*of theatre*) décorations *f. pl.*, décors *m. pl.*
school *adj.* scolaire
school *n.* école *f.*
science *n.* science *f.*
screen *n.* écran *m.*
sea *n.* mer *f.;* **— sickness** mal de mer *m.*
seal *v.* (*of letter or parcel*) cacheter
sea-shore *n.* bord de la mer *m.*
seasick (to be) *v.* avoir le mal de mer
season *n.* saison *f.*
seat *v.* asseoir; **to be —ed** être assis
seat *n.* place *f.*, banc *m.;* **box —** loge *f.*
second *adj.* deuxième, second
secret *n.* secret *m.*
secure *v.* retenir
see *v.* voir
seek *v.* chercher
seize *v.* saisir
seldom *adv.* peu souvent, rarement
self *pron.* se, soi, même; **one—** soi, soi-même; **my—** moi-même
sell *v.* vendre
senate *n.* sénat *m.*
send *v.* envoyer
September *n.* septembre *m.*
seriously *adv.* sérieusement
serve *v.* servir; **— as** servir de, **— for** servir à
service *n.* service *m.*
set *v.* (*of a date*) fixer
set out *v.* partir
seven *adj.* sept
seventeen *adj.* dix-sept
seventh *adj.* septième
seventy *adj.* soixante-dix
several *adj.* plusieurs
sew *v.* coudre
share *n.* part *f.*
sharpen *v.* tailler
she *pers. pron.* elle; **— who** celle qui
sheep *n.* brebis *f.*
sheet *n.* (*of paper*) feuille *f.*
shine *v.* briller
shirt *n.* chemise *f.*
shoe *n.* soulier *m.*
shop *n.* boutique *f.*
shop *v.* faire des emplettes
shout *v.* crier
show *n.* représentation *f.*
show *v.* montrer, faire voir
sick *adj.* malade
side *n.* côté *m.*
sidewalk *n.* trottoir *m.*
sight *n.* vue *f.*
sign *n.* signe *m.*
signify *v.* vouloir dire
since *prep., adv.* depuis
sing *v.* chanter
sir *n.* monsieur *m.*
siren *n.* sirène *f.*
situated *adj.* situé
six *adj.* six
sixteen *adj.* seize
sixth *adj.* sixième
sixty *adj.* soixante
skate *v.* patiner
sleep *v.* dormir; **to go to —** s'endormir; **to — late** faire la grasse matinée
sleigh *n.* traîneau *m.;* **go — riding**

faire une partie de traîneau, se promener en traîneau
slowly *adv.* lentement
small *adj.* petit
smile *n.* sourire *m.*
smoke *v.* fumer
smooth *adj.* lisse, uni, (*of the sea*) calme
snow *n.* neige *f.*
snow ball *n.* boule de neige *f.*
snow *v.* neiger
so *adv.* ainsi, aussi, si, tellement; — **that** de sorte que; **to do** — le faire
society *n.* monde *m.*, société *f.*
sofa *n.* canapé *m.*
soft *adj.* mou, molle, doux, douce
softly *adv.* doucement
soldier *n.* soldat *m.*
solid *adj.* solide
some *adj.* (*partitive*) de + *article*, quelque, un peu de
someone *indef. pron.* quelqu'un
something *n.* quelque chose *m.*
sometimes *adv.* parfois, quelquefois
son *n.* fils *m.*
soon *adv.* bientôt, tôt; **as** — **as** aussitôt que, dès que; **too** — trop tôt
sooner *adv.* plutôt
sorry (to be) *v.* regretter
sort *n.* espèce *f.*, sorte *f.*
soup *n.* potage *m.*
south *n.* sud *m.*; **South America** l'Amérique du sud *f.*
space *n.* espace *f.*
spade *n.* bêche *f.*
speak *v.* parler, causer
spectacle *n.* spectacle *m.*
spectator *n.* spectateur *m.*, assistant *m.*
spend *v.* dépenser, (*of time*) passer; **to** — **time in doing something,** passer du temps à faire quelque chose
spirit *n.* (*courage*) cœur *m.*
sport *n.* sport *m.*
spring *n.* printemps *m.*
stadium *n.* stade *m.*
staff *n.* (*of employees*) personnel
stage *n.* scène *f.*
stairway *n.* escalier *m.*
stamp *v.* affranchir
stamp *n.* timbre-poste *m.*
state *n.* état *m.*
statesman *n.* homme d'état *m.*
statue *n.* statue *f.*
stay *n.* séjour *m.*
stay *v.* rester, séjourner
steamship *n.* paquebot *m.*; — **company** compagnie maritime *f.*
steward *n.* maître d'hôtel *m.*
still *adv.* encore
stop *v.* cesser, arrêter (*trans.*), s'arrêter (*intrans.*)
stopping place *n.* (*of motor bus*) arrêt *m.*
store *n.* magasin *m.*
storm *n.* orage *m.*, tempête *f.*
story *n.* histoire *f.*, (*of building*) étage *m.*
straight *adv.* droit; **go** — **ahead** aller tout droit
stranger *n.* étranger *m.*, étrangère *f.*
street *n.* rue *f.*; **about the** —s par les rues
street car *n.* tramway *m.*; **to ride on the** — se promener en tramway; **to ride down town on the** — aller en ville en tramway
stroke *n.* coup *m.*
student *n.* étudiant *m.*
study *n.* étude *f.*
study *v.* étudier
stupidity *n.* sottise *f.*, stupidité *f.*
style *n.* goût *m.*, mode *f.*
subject *n.* sujet *m.*
subscribe *v.* s'abonner
subscriber *n.* abonné *m.*
subscription *n.* abonnement *m.*
suburbs *n.* environs (*pl.*) *m.*, banlieue *f.*
succeed *v.* réussir; — **in** réussir à
such *adj.* pareil, pareille, tel, telle
such *adv.* (*so*) si, tellement
suit *n.* (*of clothes*) complet *m.*
sun *n.* soleil *m.*; **be** —**ny** faire du soleil
Sunday *n.* dimanche *m.*
summer *n.* été *m.*; **in** — en été
support *v.* entretenir
suppose *v.* supposer
sure *adj.* certain
surprised *adj.* surpris, étonné
surroundings *n.* environs *m. pl.*
sustain *v.* soutenir
swiftly *adv.* vite, rapidement

swimming *n.* nage *f.* natation *f.*
sympathy *n.* sympathie *f.*

T

table *n.* table *f.*
take *v.* prendre, (*conduct*) conduire; to — care avoir soin de; to — down (*of telephone receiver*) décrocher; to — place of remplacer; to — off ôter
taking *n.* prise *f.*
talent *n.* (*aptitude*) aptitude *f.*, talent *m.*; — for business aptitude aux affaires
tall *adj.* grand
talk *v.* parler, causer
tame *v.* dompter
taste *n.* goût *m.*
taxi *n.* taxi *m.*
teach *v.* enseigner
teacher *n.* professeur *m.*, maître *m.*, maîtresse *f.*
team *n.* (*in games*) équipe *f.*
telegram *n.* télégramme *m.*
telegraph *n.* télégraphe *m.*; — office bureau télégraphique
telephone *n.* téléphone *m.*; — booth cabine téléphonique *f.*; — office *n.* bureau téléphonique *m.*; — girl *n.* téléphoniste *f.*; to talk over the — parler par téléphone
telephone *v.* téléphoner
tell *v.* raconter, dire
ten *adj.* dix
tennis *n.* tennis *m.*; to play — jouer au tennis
tense *n.* temps *m.*
than *conj.* que, de (*see* **253**)
thank *v.* remercier
that *conj.* que
that *dem. adj.* ce, cet, cette, ce . . . ci, ce . . . là (*when emphatic* ci *or* là *follow the noun they modify*).
that *dem. pron.* ce, cela
that *rel. pron.* qui, que
thaw *v.* dégeler
the *def. art.* le, la, les
theatre *n.* salle de spectacle *f.*; moving picture — cinéma *m.*
their *poss. adj.* leur
theirs *poss. pron.* le leur
them *pers. pron.* (*object*) les (*atonic accusative*); leur (*atonic dative*); eux, elles (*tonic*)
then *adv.* puis, alors
there *adv.* là, y; — is, are, il y a, voilà
therefore *adv.* ainsi, donc, aussi
these *dem. adj.* ces, ces . . . ci, ces . . . là
they *pers. pron.* ils, elles, eux; (*indef.*) on
thief *n.* voleur *m.*
thine *poss. pron.* tien, tienne
thing *n.* chose *f.*, object *m.*
think *v.* croire, penser; did you — of me? avez-vous pensé à moi? what do you — of me? Que pensez-vous de moi?
third *adj.* troisième, (*fraction*) tiers *m.*
thirteen *adj.* treize
thirty *adj.* trente
this *dem. adj.* ce, cet, cette
this *dem. pron.* ceci
those *dem. pron.* ceux, celles; — who ceux (celles) qui
thou *pers. pron.* tu
though *conj.* bien que, quoique
thousand *n.* millier *m.*
thousand *adj.* mille
three *adj.* trois
through *prep.* par, à travers, au travers de
throw *v.* (*on screen*) projeter
thunder *v.* tonner
Thursday *n.* jeudi *m.*
thus *adv.* ainsi
ticket *n.* billet *m.*; — window guichet *m.*; obtain a — prendre un billet
time *n.* temps *m.*, (*in multiplication or reiteration*) fois *f.*; have a good — s'amuser; on — à l'heure; at one (and the same) — à la fois, en même temps; behind — en retard; by this — déjà; long — longtemps; it is — il est temps
tip *n.* pourboire *m.*
tired *adj.* fatigué
title *n.* titre *m.*
to *prep.* à, de, en, pour; *implied in indirect object of conjunctive pronouns; with other indirect obj.* à; *with infinitives* à, de (*or not translated*); *with names of places* à, en;

denoting possession à; *denoting purpose* pour; — **our house** chez nous
tobacco *n.* tabac *m.*
today *adv.* aujourd'hui
together *adv.* ensemble
tomorrow *adv.* demain
too *adv.* trop
tool *n.* instrument *m.*
top *n.* (*of omnibus*) impériale *f.*; **on** — à l'impériale
torture *n.* torture *f.*
touch *v.* toucher
tourist *n.* touriste *m., f.*
toward *prep.* vers, envers
town *n.* ville *f.*
traditional *adj.* traditionnel, traditionnelle
tragedy *n.* tragédie *f.*
train *n.* train *m.*
transatlantic *adj.* transatlantique
travel *v.* voyager
traveler *n.* voyageur *m.*, voyageuse *f.*
tree *n.* arbre *m.*; **fruit** — arbre fruitier *m.*
tremble *v.* trembler
trial *n.* épreuve *f.*
trousers *n.* pantalon *m.*
true *adj.* vrai
truly *adv.* vraiment
trunk *n.* malle *f.*
truth *n.* vérité *f.*
try *v.* essayer, tâcher
Tuesday *n.* mardi *m.*
tulip *n.* tulipe *f.*
Turkey *n.* Turquie *f.*
turn *n.* tour *m.*
turn *v.* tourner
twelve *adj.* douze
twenty *adj.* vingt
twice *adv.* deux fois
two *adj.* deux
typewriter *n.* machine à écrire *f.*

U

ugly *adj.* laid, vilain
umbrella *n.* parapluie *m.*
unbearable *adj.* insupportable
uncertain *adj.* incertain
uncle *n.* oncle *m.*
under *prep.* sous
understand *v.* comprendre
unhappy *adj.* malheureux, malheureuse
uniform *n.* uniforme *m.*
United States *n.* États-Unis *m. pl.*
university *n.* université *f.*
unless *conj.* à moins que . . . ne
until *conj.* jusqu'à ce que
until *prep.* jusque, jusqu'à
upholstered *adj.* rembourré
upon *prep.* sur, (*with gerund*) en
us *pers. pron.* nous
use *v.* se servir de, employer; **to be** —**d as** servir de; **to be** —**d for** servir à
useful *adj.* utile
useless *adj.* inutile
usher *n.* (*in theatre*) ouvreuse *f.*
usual *adj.* ordinaire; **as** — comme d'ordinaire
usually *adv.* ordinairement
utensil *n.* ustensile *m.*

V

vacancy *n.* une place vacante *f.*
vacation *n.* vacances *f.*
valise *n.* valise *f.*
value *n.* valeur *f.*
varied *adj.* varié
vegetable *n.* légume *m.*
verb *n.* verbe *m.*
verify *v.* contrôler
very *adv.* très, fort, bien
vestibule *n.* vestibule *m.*
village *n.* village *m.*
virtue *n.* vertu *f.*
visit *n.* visite *f.*
visit *v.* visiter; **to make a** — rendre (faire) visite
vote *v.* voter
voyage *n.* voyage *m.*, (*by sea*) traversée *f.*

W

wait, wait for *v.* attendre; —**ing room** salle d'attente *f.*
waiter *n.* garçon *m.*
wake (up) *v.* s'éveiller
walk *v.* marcher, se promener
walk *n.* promenade *f.*, allée *f.*
wall *n.* mur *m.*
war *n.* guerre *f.*
warm *adj.* chaud

warmly *adv.* chaudement
watch *n.* montre *f.*
water *n.* eau *f.*
way *n.* (*road*) chemin *m.*, (*manner*) manière *f.*, façon *f.*
we *pers. pron.* nous, (*indef.*) on
wear *v.* porter
weather *n.* temps *m.*
Wednesday *n.* mercredi *m.*
week *n.* semaine *f.*; **a — from today** d'aujourd'hui en huit; **two —s from today** d'aujourd'hui en quinze; **two —s ago** il y a quinze jours
weekly *adj.* hebdomadaire
weep *v.* pleurer; **— bitterly** pleurer à chaudes larmes
well *adv.* bien; **to be —** se porter bien, aller bien
well *interj.* eh bien
wet *adj.* mouillé
what *interrog. pron.* qui, que, quoi, lequel
what *rel. pron.* ce que, ce qui, quoi
what *adj.* quel, quelle
wheat *n.* blé *m.*
when *adv.* quand, lorsque
when *interr. adv.* quand
where *adv.* où
whereas *conj.* tandis que
whether *conj.* si, que; **— . . . or** soit . . . soit; (*with verbs*) soit que . . . , soit que
which *rel. pron.* qui, que, lequel; **of —, about —** dont; **that which** (*nominative*) ce qui, (*accusative*) ce que; **that of which** ce dont; **that to which** ce à quoi
while *conj.* pendant que, (*whereas*) tandis que
whistle *n.* sirène *f.*, sifflet *m.*
white *adj.* blanc, blanche
who *interrog. rel. pron.* qui, lequel
whole *adj.* entier, entière, tout
wholesale (at) en gros
wholesaler *n.* négociant *m.*
whom *interrog., rel. pron.* que, lequel; **of —** dont
why *adv.* pourquoi
wide *adj.* large
wife *n.* femme *f.*
will *v.* (*wish*) vouloir
win *v.* remporter; **to — the victory** remporter la victoire
window *n.* fenêtre *f.*, (*of trains, etc.*) portière *f.*, (*in post office*) guichet
wine *n.* vin *m.*
winter *n.* hiver *m.*; **in —** en hiver
wisdom *n.* sagesse *f.*
wise *adj.* sage
wisely *adv.* sagement
wish *n.* désir *m.*
wish *v.* souhaiter, vouloir
with *prep.* avec, à, de; **a man — white beard** un homme à la barbe blanche; **to cover —** couvrir de; **satisfied —** content de
without *prep.* sans
woman *n.* femme *f.*
wonder *v.* se demander
wonderful *adj.* merveilleux, merveilleuse
wonderfully *adv.* à merveille
wood *n.* bois *m.*
word *n.* mot *m.*, parole *f.*
work *n.* œuvre *f.*, ouvrage *m.*
work *v.* travailler; **— hard** travailler ferme
world *n.* monde *m.*
worse *adj.* pire, plus mauvais
worse *adv.* pis, plus mal
worst *adj.* le pire, le plus mauvais
worst *adv.* le pis, le plus mal
worship *v.* adorer
worth (to be) *v.* valoir; **to be — while** valoir la peine
write *v.* écrire; **to have materials to — with** avoir de quoi écrire
writer *n.* écrivain *m. f.*

Y

year *n.* an *m.*, année *f.*
yellow *adj.* jaune
yes *adv.* oui, si
yesterday *adv.* hier
yet *adv.*, encore; **not —** pas encore
you *pers. pron.* tu, vous, (*indef.*) on
your *poss. adj.* ton, votre
yours *poss. pron.* le tien, la tienne, le vôtre
young *adj.* jeune

INDEX

(The numbers refer to pages)

a, vowel
  medial, 2
  velar, 2
  words for practice, 4
  nasal velar, 7
à, preposition
  with definite article, 25
  denoting indirect object, 26
  denoting ownership, 89
  before place names, 59
  in distributive time phrases, 73
  with possessive pronouns, 110
Accent
  meaning of, 17
  as affecting vowels, 8
  on words and word groups, 17
  effect on stem vowel, 140
  so-called accents, 16
acquérir, inflection of, 158, 211
Adjectives
  plural of, 37
  gender of, 38, 188
  agreement of, 38
  position of, 38
  comparison of, 76
  comparatives, 76
  superlatives, 76
  comparison of equality, 77
  irregular comparison, 77
  comparative followed by **de**, 77
  possessive, 27
  demonstrative, 41
  indefinite pronominal, 105
  participial, 105
Adverbs
  position of, 52, 144, 189
  comparison of, 77
  of assent, 187
  of negation, 27, 75, 187
  ending in **-ment**, 190
  classes of, 192
Agency
  distinguished from means, instrument, etc., 161
  expressed by **par** or **de**, 160
ai
  sound of, 5
  words for practice, 6
  nasalized, 7
Alphabet
  French compared with English, 1
  phonetic, 12
Article
  definite, 23
  indefinite, 23
  repetition of, 23
  with inclusive nouns, 31
  distributive, 32
  with partitives, 35
  omitted after **parler de**, 57
  omitted with name of language after **parler**, 146
  with **on**, 138
  with **million** and **milliard**, 166
Assent, expressed by **oui** and **si**, 187
au
  sound of, 5
  words for practice, 6
aucun
  as pronoun, 103
  as adjective, 105
Auxiliaries
  use of **avoir**, 45
  être with certain verbs, 48
  être with reflexive verbs, 51
avoir
  in present indicative, 24
  in imperative, 25
  as auxiliary, 45
  past descriptive, 54
  future, 73
  past absolute, 58
  conditional and second future, 97
  present participle, 105

present subjunctive, 128
past subjunctive, 132
in past infinitive, 61, 155
in past active participle, 155
inflected throughout, 202
il y a, 25, 136
ay
sound of, 5
words for practice, 6

b, sound of, 9
boire, inflection of, 174, 216

c, sound of, 9
Capitals, rules for using, 16
Ch, sound of, 9
Clauses
of purpose, 123
of result, 124
substantive, 128
relative, 132
of time, 137
Conditional
formation of, 97
of **parler, finir, vendre,** 97
of **avoir** and **être,** 97
in independent clauses, 98
in dependent clauses, 98
referring to past, 98
Conditions
conditional sentences, 118
present condition contrary to fact, 119
past contrary to fact, 119
in least vivid future, 119
conduire, inflection of, 169, 217
Conjugations
of regular verbs, 18
of irregular verbs, 139
Conjunctives, see Personal Pronouns
connaître, inflection of, 179, 218
coudre, inflection of, 179, 218
Consonants
sounds of, 9
phonetic symbols of, 12
final, 9
words for practice, 11
craindre, inflection of, 185, 219

d, sound of, 9
dans, with names of countries, 59
Dates
rules for dating, 93
cardinal numerals in dates and titles, 177
Dative
case of indirect object, 26
dative of reference, 83
davantage, 191
de
with definite article, 25
with nouns to denote possession, 26
after comparatives, 77
with possessive pronouns, 110
after **million** and **milliard,** 166
de qui for **dont,** 89
Demonstrative Adjectives
forms of **ce,** 41
–ci and **–là,** 41
Demonstrative Pronouns
ceci and **cela,** 84
uses of **ce,** 84
celui, as antecedent, 99
celui, as pronoun of reference, 99
depuis, as preposition, 48
devoir
inflection of, 147, 227
used alone, 148
with infinitive, 149
denoting necessity, 155
denoting probability, 155
Discourse, indirect, 98
Disjunctives, see Personal Pronouns
douter, followed by subjunctive, 181

e
open, 2
close, 2
neutral, 3
words for practice, 4
nasalized, 7
spellings of nasal e, 7
eau
sound of, 5
words for practice, 6
écrire, inflection of, 169, 220
ei,
sound of, 5
words for practice, 6
nasalized, 7

en
as adverb, 65
as pronoun, 36, 65
as preposition, 32
être
present indicative, 24
imperative, 25
auxiliary with certain verbs, 48
auxiliary with reflexive verbs, 51
past descriptive, 54
future, 73
past absolute, 58
conditional and second future, 97
present participle, 105
past participle, 45
present subjunctive, 128
past subjunctive, 132
in past infinitive, 155
in past active participle, 155
inflected throughout, 205
eu
close, 5
open, 5
words for practice, 6
nasalized, 7
ey
sound of, 5
words for practice, 6

f, sound of, 9
faillir, inflection of, 164, 212
falloir
inflection of, 228
construction with **il faut**, 137
faire
present indicative of, 63
with infinitive, 63, 176
inflection of, 174, 221
Fractions, how expressed, 171
Future
meaning and use, 73
formation of, 73
of **parler, finir, vendre**, 72
of **avoir** and **être**, 73
past future, 98
intention expressed by **aller** with infinitive, 73

g, sound of, 9
Gender
of nouns, 22
of adjectives, 38
of names of places, 59
of names of months, 94
of French nouns compared with Latin, 22
Genitive, case of possession, 26
Gerund, form and meaning, 105
Glides
in English, 3
absence of in French, 2
gn, spelling of palatal **n**, 10

h, silent, 9
Hyphen
in compounds of **demi**, 171
in compound numerals, 166

i
as vowel, 3
words for practice, 4
as semi-consonant, 8
il
as subject pronoun, 21
with so-called impersonals, 136
referring to preceding person or things, 21
Imperative
of regular verbs, 22
of **avoir** and **être**, 25
replaced by subjunctive, 115
Impersonals
true impersonals, 136
so-called impersonals, 136
with infinitive, 136
with subjunctive, 136
Indefinite Pronouns
personne and **rien**, affirmative, 99
personne and **rien**, negative, 99
aucun, affirmative, 103
aucun, negative, 104
nul . . . ne, 104
pas un, 104
quelqu'un, 104
chacun, 104
Indicative
general use of, 18
in result clauses, 124
in relative clauses, 132
Infinitive

of regular verbs, 61
principal uses of, 62
after que in comparisons, 62
with pour after assez and trop, 63
with faire, 63, 176
denoting purpose, 124
with verbs of motion, 62
compound, 155
Inflexion, defined, 18
Interrogation
with personal pronoun subject, 29
with t in third singular, 29
with est-ce que, 30
with qui est-ce qui, 93
position of subject pronoun, 93
Interrogative Pronouns
list of, 89
qui? 89
que? and quoi? 89
quel? 90
lequel? 90
Irregular Verbs
endings of infinitive, 140
variations in form, 140
changes in stems, 140
principal parts, 141
inflection of aller and asseoir, 142
inflection of devoir, pouvoir, vouloir, 147
inflection of savoir, valoir, voir, 153
inflection of acquérir and ouvrir, 158
inflection of tenir and faillir, 163, 164, 212
inflection of conduire, écrire, plaire, 169
inflection of boire, dire, faire, 174
inflection of connaître, coudre, vivre, 179–80
inflection of craindre, mettre, vaincre, 185
synopses of, 210
list of, 231
notes on, 238
j, sound of, 10

k, sound of, 10

l
initial, and final, 10
mouillée, 10

Language, origin of French, 19
Letters
in relation to sounds, 1
of French alphabet, 13
Liaison
defined, 15
rules for using, 15

m, sound of, 10
Marks
so-called accents, 16
cedilla, 16
diæresis, 16
apostrophe, 16
hyphen, 16
même
intensive, 85
with article, 85
as substantive, 85
as adverb, 86
followed by que, 86
mettre, inflection of, 185, 222
Months
names of, 94
gender of, 94
Moods
French and English usage, 18
imperative, 22, 25, 115
infinitive, 61
conditional, 97
indicative, 18, 124, 132
subjunctive, 114, 123, 124, 128, 129, 133, 137, 181

n, dental and palatal, 10
Nasals
how formed, 6
words for practice, 7
ne, redundant, 128, 181
Negatives
ne . . . pas, 27
ne omitted, 75
non required, 187
Nouns
case relations of, 25
plural of, 26
inclusive, 31
participial, 105
Numerals
cardinal, 42, 165

notes on, 165
ordinal, 170
second and deuxième, 171
premier and second in compounds, 171

o
open, 3
close, 4
words for practice, 4
nasalized, 7
as semi-consonant, 8
Object
direct, 55
indirect, 26, 55
on
indefinite subject pronoun, 67
replaces passive, 67
repeated by vous, 67
Or, in negative sentences, 75
ou
sound of, 5
words for practice, 6
as semi-consonant, 8
oui, in assent, 187
ouvrir, inflection of, 158, 214

p, sound of, 10
par
in distributive phrases, 73
denoting agency, 160
Participles
past, 45
present, 105
past active, 155
Partitives
construction defined, 35
in English, 35
in French, 35
some or *any* = en, 36
Passive Voice
how formed, 159
replaced by reflexive, 160
replaced by active with on, 160
Past Absolute
of parler, finir, vendre, 58
of avoir and être, 58
sphere and function of, 59
Past Descriptive
of parler, finir, vendre, 54
of avoir and être, 54
meaning and use, 54
Past Participle
form of in regular verbs, 45
of avoir and être, 45
gender of, 45
number of, 45
agreement of, 45, 48, 51
Past Perfect, use of, 144
penser, followed by à or de, 66
Personal Pronouns
as subjects, 21
as objects, 41, 48, 55, 68
agreement, 21
position, 41, 55, 93
vous correlative of on, 67
conjunctive, 68
disjunctive, 68
Phonetics
phonetic spelling, 11,
words for practice, 13
Place
denoting *where*, 59
gender of place names, 59
Possessive Pronouns
list of, 109
agreement, 110
for emphasis, 110
as substantives, 110
pour, with infinitive of purpose, 124
pouvoir
inflection of, 147, 229
with infinitive, 149
negative of, 149
il se peut with subjunctive, 181
Prepositions, with names of countries and places, 59
Present Participle
formation of, 105
when invariable, 105
as adjective or noun, 105
Present Perfect
of parler, finir, vendre, 44
with auxiliary être, 47
uses of, 45
Pronunciation, theory and practice of, 1
Pronouns
personal, 21, 41, 48, 55
relative, 80

demonstrative, 84
interrogative, 89
indefinite, 99, 103
possessive, 109
Punctuation, marks of, 17

q, sound of, 10
que
before infinitive in comparisons, 62
after comparatives, 77
with independent subjunctive, 115
for jusqu'à ce que, 137
quelqu'un, indefinite pronoun, 104
quelque, pronominal adjective, 105
Questions, indirect, 98

r, sound of, 10
Reflexive Pronouns
with reflexive verbs, 51
position with imperative, 51
in reciprocal sense, 52
use of soi, 69
Reflexive Verbs
present indicative, 50
inflection of, 51
compound tenses, 51
used for passive, 52, 160
Relative Clauses
relation to antecedent, 132
determinative and characteristic, 132
mood of, 132–33
Relative Pronouns
list of, 80
qui, 80
que, 80
quoi, 81
lequel, 81
dont, origin of, 81
qui and lequel after prepositions, 81

s, sound of, 10
savoir
with infinitive, 149
inflection of, 153, 229
Past Future
of parler, finir, vendre, 97
of avoir and être, 97
relation to conditional, 98
Semi-consonants
defined, 7
words for practice, 8
si, in assent, 187
Stress, see Accent
Sounds
practice of, 1
indicated by letters, 1
indicated by phonetic symbols, 11
treatment of, 1–15
Subjunctive
meaning of, 114, 115
translation of, 114
present of parler, finir, vendre, 113
present of avoir and être, 128
past of parler, finir, vendre, 122
past of avoir and être, 132
denoting wish and will, 114
in purpose clauses, 123
in result clauses, 124
after verbs of fearing, 128
after verbs of emotion, 128
after verbs of approval, 129
in relative clauses, 133
in time clauses, 137
after il est douteux, 181
after il se peut, 181
implying possiblity or doubt, 181
Syllables
syllabic division, 14
words for practice, 14
syllabic stress, 17

t
sound of, 10
in interrogative verbs, 29
in vingt, 165
tenir, inflection of, 163, 214
Tenses
French and English usage, 18
formation of, 20
interrogative form, 29
present indicative, 20, 24
past descriptive, 54
past absolute, 58
future, 72
second future, 97, 98
present subjunctive, 113, 128
past subjunctive, 122, 132
compound, 144
present perfect, 44, 45
past perfect, 144

second past perfect, 144
future perfect, 144
sequence of, 123
Time
interval of, 48
of day, 149

u
sound of, 4
words for practice 5
as semiconsonant, 8

v, sound of, 11
vaincre, inflection of, 185, 225
valoir, inflection of, 153, 230
venir de + infinitive, 134
Verbs
regular and irregular, 19
principal parts, 141
reflexives, 51
of desiring, commanding, etc., 115
of fearing, 128
of rejoicing, regretting, etc., 128
of approval and disapproval, 129
impersonals, 136
verb stems affected by accent, 140
vivre, inflection of, 179, 226
voici, with personal pronouns, 42
voilà, with personal pronouns, 42
voir, inflection of, 153, 230
vouloir
inflection of, 147, 231
with infinitive, 149
with subjunctive, 115
imperative of, 149, 231
Vowels
in ordinary spelling, 2–8
phonetic spelling of, 11
open and close, 2
quantity of, 8

w, sound of, 11
Week, days of, 90

x
sound of, 11
equals **z**, 165

y
as vowel, 4
words for practice, 5
as semiconsonant, 8
equivalent to **ii**, 5
as adverb, 65
as pronoun, 66

z, sound of, 11

Borzoi French Texts

A FRENCH GRAMMAR FOR HIGH SCHOOLS AND COLLEGES

by Oliver M. Johnston *and* Jefferson Elmore

Admirably adapted to the requirements either of first-year college work, or of the first two years of high school, this grammar rides no hobbies, nor does it advocate or apply any newfangled method. Still it has distinctive features which will commend themselves to progressive teachers who are on the lookout for a new and thoroly practical beginner's book.

AN OUTLINE HISTORY OF FRENCH LITERATURE

by H. Stanley Schwarz

A general survey, in syllabus form, of French literature from the ninth century to the present day. Planned originally for use in survey courses, it has also proved its value in courses limited to special periods of French literature, or in courses on the development of the French drama, novel, poetry, etc.

CONTEMPORARY FRENCH STORIES OF MYSTERY AND FANTASY

edited by H. Stanley Schwarz

Eighteen lively, as the title suggests, stories of strictly present-day interest. Included are six stories by Pierre Mille and five by Anatole Le Braz; of the balance, two are taken from *Les Nouvelles Littéraires* and five from *Le Figaro*. Up-to-date and original reading material for second-year students.

A PROGRESSIVE COURSE IN FRENCH COMPOSITION AND CONVERSATION

by Gino A. Ratti

A practical intermediate text which aims to bridge the gap between translation and composition, and which adapts itself readily to both the Direct Method and the older Grammar-Translation Method. Besides informal grammar review, the student is offered every facility toward increasing his vocabulary and knowledge of idiomatic forms.

Borzoi French Texts

LA BECQUÉE

by René Boylesve; *edited by* Aaron Schaffer

A truly delightful story, far from the beaten track of the "standard texts," which has already won recognition from teachers and students who appreciate the subtle qualities of French prose at its best.

AN ANTHOLOGY OF MODERN FRENCH POETRY

by Gustave L. Van Roosbroeck

This volume, which includes the most representative work of Verlaine, Paul Fort, De Régnier, and other French poets of the last half-century, with biographical and bibliographical notices, is addressed to teachers and advanced students who are aware that French poetry did not end with Hugo or Lamartine.

A FRENCH READER FOR BEGINNERS

by Laurence Pumpelly

A carefully prepared collection of stories, poems, riddles, proverbs, games, and songs, supplemented by written chapters on French schools, history, literature, and culture; illustrated with numerous photographs taken by the author. The material is carefully graded and supplies a particularly full vocabulary.

DES HISTOIRES DRÔLES POUR LA JEUNESSE

by Max *and* Alex Fischer; *edited by* Gino A. Ratti

Another reading text which avoids the conventional, this collection of delightfully amusing tales, satirically illustrated by the famous French cartoonist, A. Kern, is as informative as it is entertaining. For second-year students of French in preparatory schools and colleges.

MADAME CORENTINE

by René Bazin; *edited by* Edwin B. Place

A novel which affords a vivid picture of middle-class life in Brittany, reasonably optimistic and with a happy ending. Bazin's clear and simple style is particularly suited for second-year reading.